

ETSI TS 129 513 V18.8.0 (2025-01)



**5G;
5G System;
Policy and Charging Control signalling flows and QoS
parameter mapping;
Stage 3
(3GPP TS 29.513 version 18.8.0 Release 18)**



Reference

RTS/TSGC-0329513vi80

Keywords

5G

ETSI

650 Route des Lucioles
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - APE 7112B
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° w061004871

Important notice

The present document can be downloaded from the
[ETSI Search & Browse Standards application](#).

The present document may be made available in electronic versions and/or in print. The content of any electronic and/or print versions of the present document shall not be modified without the prior written authorization of ETSI. In case of any existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions and/or in print, the prevailing version of an ETSI deliverable is the one made publicly available in PDF format on [ETSI deliver repository](#).

Users should be aware that the present document may be revised or have its status changed, this information is available in the [Milestones listing](#).

If you find errors in the present document, please send your comments to the relevant service listed under [Committee Support Staff](#).

If you find a security vulnerability in the present document, please report it through our [Coordinated Vulnerability Disclosure \(CVD\)](#) program.

Notice of disclaimer & limitation of liability

The information provided in the present deliverable is directed solely to professionals who have the appropriate degree of experience to understand and interpret its content in accordance with generally accepted engineering or other professional standard and applicable regulations.

No recommendation as to products and services or vendors is made or should be implied.

No representation or warranty is made that this deliverable is technically accurate or sufficient or conforms to any law and/or governmental rule and/or regulation and further, no representation or warranty is made of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose or against infringement of intellectual property rights.

In no event shall ETSI be held liable for loss of profits or any other incidental or consequential damages.

Any software contained in this deliverable is provided "AS IS" with no warranties, express or implied, including but not limited to, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement of intellectual property rights and ETSI shall not be held liable in any event for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of profits, business interruption, loss of information, or any other pecuniary loss) arising out of or related to the use of or inability to use the software.

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm except as authorized by written permission of ETSI.

The content of the PDF version shall not be modified without the written authorization of ETSI.

The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© ETSI 2025.
All rights reserved.

Intellectual Property Rights

Essential patents

IPRs essential or potentially essential to normative deliverables may have been declared to ETSI. The declarations pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, are publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "*Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards*", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the [ETSI IPR online database](#).

Pursuant to the ETSI Directives including the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation regarding the essentiality of IPRs, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Trademarks

The present document may include trademarks and/or tradenames which are asserted and/or registered by their owners. ETSI claims no ownership of these except for any which are indicated as being the property of ETSI, and conveys no right to use or reproduce any trademark and/or tradename. Mention of those trademarks in the present document does not constitute an endorsement by ETSI of products, services or organizations associated with those trademarks.

DECT™, **PLUGTESTS™**, **UMTS™** and the ETSI logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members. **3GPP™**, **LTE™** and **5G™** logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners. **oneM2M™** logo is a trademark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the oneM2M Partners. **GSM®** and the GSM logo are trademarks registered and owned by the GSM Association.

Legal Notice

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by ETSI 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document may refer to technical specifications or reports using their 3GPP identities. These shall be interpreted as being references to the corresponding ETSI deliverables.

The cross reference between 3GPP and ETSI identities can be found at [3GPP to ETSI numbering cross-referencing](#).

Modal verbs terminology

In the present document "**shall**", "**shall not**", "**should**", "**should not**", "**may**", "**need not**", "**will**", "**will not**", "**can**" and "**cannot**" are to be interpreted as described in clause 3.2 of the [ETSI Drafting Rules](#) (Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

"**must**" and "**must not**" are **NOT** allowed in ETSI deliverables except when used in direct citation.

Contents

Intellectual Property Rights	2
Legal Notice	2
Modal verbs terminology.....	2
Foreword.....	8
1 Scope	9
2 References	9
3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations	12
3.1 Definitions	12
3.2 Abbreviations	12
4 Reference architecture.....	13
5 Signalling Flows for the Policy Framework.....	18
5.0 General	18
5.1 AM Policy Association Management.....	18
5.1.1 AM Policy Association Establishment	18
5.1.2 AM Policy Association Modification	21
5.1.2.1 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF	21
5.1.2.1.1 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF without AMF relocation	21
5.1.2.1.2 AM Policy Association Modification with old PCF during AMF relocation	22
5.1.2.2 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF.....	23
5.1.3 AM Policy Association Termination	25
5.1.3.1 AM Policy Association Termination initiated by the AMF	25
5.1.3.2 AM Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF.....	26
5.2 SM Policy Association Management	28
5.2.1 SM Policy Association Establishment	28
5.2.2 SM Policy Association Modification	32
5.2.2.1 General	32
5.2.2.2 SM Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF	32
5.2.2.2.1 Interactions between SMF, PCF and CHF.....	32
5.2.2.2.2 Interactions between PCF, AF and UDR.....	34
5.2.2.2.2.1 AF Session Establishment.....	34
5.2.2.2.2.2 AF Session Modification	36
5.2.2.2.2.3 AF Session Termination	38
5.2.2.2.2.4 AF Request of application detection exposure.....	39
5.2.2.2.2.5 AF Request termination of application detection exposure	40
5.2.2.3 SM Policy Association Modification initiated by the SMF	41
5.2.3 SM Policy Association Termination	46
5.2.3.1 SM Policy Association Termination initiated by the SMF.....	46
5.2.3.2 SM Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF	50
5.3 Spending Limit Procedures	50
5.3.1 General.....	50
5.3.2 Initial Spending Limit Report Request	50
5.3.3 Intermediate Spending Limit Report Request.....	51
5.3.4 Final Spending Limit Report Request.....	52
5.3.5 Spending Limit Report.....	53
5.3.6 Subscription termination request by CHF.....	53
5.4 Network Data Analytics Procedures	54
5.4.1 General.....	54
5.4.2 NWDAF Discovery and Selection by the PCF.....	54
5.4.3 Policy decisions based on Network Analytics	54
5.5 Service Capability Exposure Procedures.....	57
5.5.1 General.....	57
5.5.2 Management of Packet Flow Descriptions	58
5.5.2.1 AF-initiated PFD management procedure.....	58

5.5.2.1A	PFD management based on NWDAF analytics	59
5.5.2.2	PFD management towards SMF	60
5.5.2.2.1	PFD retrieval	60
5.5.2.2.2	PFD management	61
5.5.3	Traffic influence procedures	62
5.5.3.1	General	62
5.5.3.2	AF requests targeting an individual UE address	64
5.5.3.3	AF requests targeting PDU Sessions not identified by an UE address.....	66
5.5.3.4	AF requests to influence traffic routing for HR-SBO session.....	70
5.5.4	Negotiation for future background data transfer procedure	72
5.5.4A	Modification of BDT warning notification request indication procedure.....	74
5.5.5	BDT warning notification procedure	75
5.5.6	Background data transfer policy applying procedure	78
5.5.7	IPTV configuration provisioning	80
5.5.8	AF-based service parameter provisioning.....	81
5.5.8.1	AF-based service parameter provisioning to HPLMN	81
5.5.8.2	AF-based service parameter provisioning to VPLMN	84
5.5.8.3	AF-based service parameter provisioning for TNAP ID.....	86
5.5.9	QoS monitoring procedure.....	88
5.5.10	AF-triggered dynamically changing AM policies.....	91
5.5.10.1	General	91
5.5.10.2	Access and Mobility policy authorization requests targeting an individual UE.....	91
5.5.10.3	AF requests to influence AM policies.....	95
5.5.11	Procedures for Time Synchronization Exposure.....	97
5.5.11.1	General	97
5.5.11.2	Exposure of UE availability and capabilities for Time Synchronization service	98
5.5.11.3	Time Synchronization service activation, modification, and deactivation.....	101
5.5.11.4	Management of 5G Access Stratum Time distribution	106
5.5.11.5	Management of network timing synchronization status monitoring	110
5.5.12	Deterministic Networking specific parameter provisioning	112
5.5.12.1	General	112
5.5.12.2	5GS DetNet node information reporting	112
5.5.12.3	5GS DetNet node configuration	115
5.5.12.4	QoS parameter mapping functions at TSCTSF.....	116
5.5.13	Negotiation for planned data transfer with QoS requirements.....	118
5.5.13A	Modification of PDTQ warning notification request indication procedure	120
5.5.14	PDTQ warning notification procedure.....	121
5.6	UE Policy Association Management.....	122
5.6.1	UE Policy Association Establishment	122
5.6.1.1	General	122
5.6.1.2	Non-roaming	123
5.6.1.3	Roaming.....	127
5.6.2	UE Policy Association Modification	130
5.6.2.1	UE Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF	130
5.6.2.1.1	General	130
5.6.2.1.2	Non-roaming	131
5.6.2.1.3	Roaming	132
5.6.2.2	UE Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF.....	134
5.6.2.2.1	General	134
5.6.2.2.2	Non-roaming	135
5.6.2.2.3	Roaming	136
5.6.3	UE Policy Association Termination	138
5.6.3.1	UE Policy Association Termination initiated by the AMF	138
5.6.3.1.1	General	138
5.6.3.1.2	Non-roaming	139
5.6.3.1.3	Roaming	140
5.6.3.2	UE Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF.....	141
5.6.3.2.1	General	141
5.6.3.2.2	Non-roaming	142
5.6.3.2.3	Roaming	143
5.7	MBS Policy Association Management.....	144
5.7.1	General.....	144

5.7.2	MBS Policy Association Establishment	144
5.7.3	MBS Policy Association Modification	147
5.7.3.1	General	147
5.7.3.2	MBS Policy Association Modification initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF	147
5.7.4	MBS Policy Association Termination	149
5.7.4.1	General	149
5.7.4.2	MBS Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF	149
5.7.4.3	MBS Policy Association Termination initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF	149
5.8	Awareness of URSP Rule Enforcement	150
5.8.1	General	150
5.8.2	Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (non-roaming and Home Routed roaming)	151
5.8.3	Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (LBO roaming)	153
6	Binding Mechanism	154
6.1	Overview	154
6.2	Session Binding	155
6.3	PCC rule Authorization	156
6.4	QoS flow binding	157
6.5	Binding mechanism in MBS deployments	159
6.5.1	MBS Session Binding	159
6.5.2	MBS PCC rule Authorization for an MBS session	159
6.5.3	MBS QoS flow binding within an MBS session	159
7	QoS Parameters Mapping	160
7.1	Overview	160
7.2	QoS parameter mapping Functions at AF	162
7.2.1	Introduction	162
7.2.2	AF supporting Rx interface	162
7.2.3	AF supporting N5 interface	162
7.3	QoS parameter mapping Functions at PCF	175
7.3.1	Introduction	175
7.3.2	PCF Interworking with an AF supporting Rx interface	175
7.3.3	PCF Interworking with an AF supporting N5 interface	184
7.4	QoS parameter mapping Functions at SMF	194
7.4.1	QoS parameter mapping Functions in 5GC	194
7.4.2	QoS parameter mapping Functions at SMF+PGW-C for interworking scenario	195
7.5	QoS Parameters Mapping in MBS deployments	195
7.5.1	Introduction	195
7.5.2	QoS parameter mapping Functions at PCF	195
7.5.3	QoS parameter mapping Functions at MB-SMF	199
8	PCF addressing	200
8.1	General	200
8.2	PCF discovery and selection by the AMF	200
8.3	PCF discovery and selection by the SMF	202
8.4	PCF discovery and selection by the AF	203
8.4.1	General	203
8.4.2	Binding Support Function (BSF)	203
8.4.3	Void	205
8.4A	PCF for a PDU session discovery and selection by the PCF for a UE	205
8.4B	PCF for a UE discovery and selection by the PCF for a PDU session	205
8.5	BSF procedures	206
8.5.1	General	206
8.5.2	Binding information Creation	206
8.5.3	Binding information Deletion	206
8.5.4	Binding information Retrieval	207
8.5.5	Proxy BSF	207
8.5.5.1	General	207
8.5.5.2	Rx Session Establishment	208
8.5.5.3	Rx Session Modification	208
8.5.5.3.1	AF-initiated	208
8.5.5.3.2	PCF-initiated	209
8.5.5.4	Rx Session Termination	209

8.5.5.4.1	AF-initiated	209
8.5.5.4.2	PCF-initiated	210
8.5.6	Redirect BSF	210
8.5.6.1	General	210
8.5.6.2	Rx Session Establishment	211
8.5.7	Binding information Update	211
8.5.8	Binding information Subscription	212
8.5.9	Binding information Unsubscription	212
8.5.10	Binding information Notification	213
8.6	PCF discovery and selection procedures in MBS deployments	213
8.6.1	PCF discovery and selection by the MB-SMF	213
8.6.2	PCF discovery and selection by the AF/NEF/MBSF	213
8.6.2.1	General	213
8.6.2.2	Binding Support Function (BSF)	214
8.6.3	BSF procedures	214
8.6.3.1	General	214
8.6.3.2	Binding information Creation	215
8.6.3.3	Binding information Update	215
8.6.3.4	Binding information Deletion	216
8.6.3.5	Binding information Retrieval	216
9	Race condition handling	216
9.1	Overview	216
9.2	Procedures	217
Annex A (informative): DRA and BSF coexistence		219
Annex B (normative): Signalling Flows for IMS		220
B.1	General	220
B.2	IMS Session Establishment	220
B.2.1	Provisioning of service information at Originating P-CSCF and PCF	220
B.2.2	Provisioning of service information at terminating P-CSCF and PCF	225
B.3	IMS Session Modification	230
B.3.1	Provisioning of service information	230
B.3.2	Enabling of IP Flows	236
B.3.3	Disabling of IP Flows	237
B.3.4	Media Component Removal	238
B.4	IMS Session Termination	239
B.4.1	Mobile initiated session release / Network initiated session release	239
B.4.2	QoS Flow Release/Loss	241
B.5	Subscription to Notification of Signalling Path Status at IMS Registration	241
B.6	Provisioning of SIP signalling flow information at IMS Registration	243
B.7	Subscription to Notification of Change of Access Type at IMS Registration	244
B.8	Subscription to Notification of Change of PLMN Identifier at IMS Registration	245
B.9	P-CSCF Restoration	246
B.10	IMS Restricted Local Operator Services	247
B.11	Retrieval of Network Provided Location Information for SMS over IP at Originating side	247
B.12	Retrieval of Network Provided Location Information for SMS over IP at Terminating side	249
Annex C (informative): Guidance for underlay network to support QoS differentiation for User Plane IPsec Child SA		251
C.1	Access to PLMN services via SNPN and access to SNPN services via PLMN	251
C.2	QoS differentiation support in the underlay network for overlay services	251

C.3	Guidelines for QoS requirements to/from DSCP mapping	251
C.4	Network initiated QoS modification	252
C.5	UE initiated QoS modification	254
Annex D (informative):	Change history	257
History		265

Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
 - 1 presented to TSG for information;
 - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
 - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document specifies detailed call flows of Policy and Charging Control (PCC) over the Npcf, Nsmf, Namf, Nudr, Nnef, Nchf, Nbsf, Nnwdaf and Nmbsmf service-based interfaces and their relationship with the flow level signalling in 5G system.

NOTE: The call flows depicted in this Technical Specification do not cover all traffic cases.

The stage 2 definition and procedures of PCC are contained in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3] and 3GPP TS 23.503 [4]. The 5G System Architecture is defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

The stage 2 definition and procedures for PCC specific for wireless and wireline convergence are contained in 3GPP TS 23.316 [70].

The stage 2 definition and procedures of PCC for 5G multicast/broadcast services are contained in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54].

Detailed stage 3 procedures are provided in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7], 3GPP TS 29.508 [8], 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], 3GPP TS 29.520 [11], 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], 3GPP TS 29.521 [22], 3GPP TS 29.594 [23], 3GPP TS 29.522 [24], 3GPP TS 29.551 [25], 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], 3GPP TS 29.554 [26] and 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].

The Technical Realization of the Service Based Architecture and the Principles and Guidelines for Services Definition of the 5G System are specified in 3GPP TS 29.500 [5] and 3GPP TS 29.501 [6].

The present specification also describes the PCC reference architectures for non-roaming and roaming scenarios in 5G system.

The present specification also describes the mapping of QoS parameters at AF, PCF, SMF and MB-SMF.

The present specification also describes the session binding at PCF, and the QoS flow binding at SMF and MB-SMF.

The present specification also describes the PCF addressing.

The present specification also describes the Race condition handling.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

- [1] 3GPP TR 21.905: "Vocabulary for 3GPP Specifications".
- [2] 3GPP TS 23.501: "System Architecture for the 5G System; Stage 2".
- [3] 3GPP TS 23.502: "Procedures for the 5G System; Stage 2".
- [4] 3GPP TS 23.503: "Policy and Charging Control Framework for the 5G System; Stage 2".
- [5] 3GPP TS 29.500: "5G System; Technical Realization of Service Based Architecture; Stage 3".
- [6] 3GPP TS 29.501: "5G System; Principles and Guidelines for Services Definition; Stage 3".
- [7] 3GPP TS 29.507: "5G System; Access and Mobility Policy Control Service; Stage 3".
- [8] 3GPP TS 29.508: "5G System; Session Management Event Exposure Service; Stage 3".

- [9] 3GPP TS 29.512: "5G System; Session Management Policy Control Service; Stage 3".
- [10] 3GPP TS 29.514: "5G System; Policy Authorization Service; Stage 3".
- [11] 3GPP TS 29.520: "5G System; Network Data Analytics Services; Stage 3".
- [12] 3GPP TS 29.519: "5G System; Usage of the Unified Data Repository Service for Policy Data, Application Data and Structured Data for Exposure; Stage 3".
- [13] Void
- [14] 3GPP TS 26.114: "IP Multimedia Subsystem (IMS); Multimedia Telephony; Media handling and interaction".
- [15] 3GPP TS 29.201: "Representational State Transfer (REST) reference point between Application Function (AF) and Protocol Converter (PC)".
- [16] IETF RFC 4566: "SDP: Session Description Protocol".
- [17] 3GPP TS 26.247: "Transparent end-to-end Packet-switched Streaming Service (PSS) Progressive Download and Dynamic Adaptive Streaming over HTTP (3GP-DASH)".
- [18] 3GPP TS 29.214: "Policy and Charging Control over Rx reference point".
- [19] 3GPP TS 26.234: "End-to-end transparent streaming service; Protocols and codecs".
- [20] 3GPP2 C.S0046-0 v1.0: "3G Multimedia Streaming Services".
- [21] 3GPP2 C.S0055-A v1.0: "Packet Switched Video Telephony Services (PSVT/MCS)".
- [22] 3GPP TS 29.521: "5G System; Binding Support Management Service; Stage 3".
- [23] 3GPP TS 29.594: "5G System; Spending Limit Control Service; Stage 3".
- [24] 3GPP TS 29.522: "5G System; Network Exposure Function Northbound APIs; Stage 3".
- [25] 3GPP TS 29.551: "5G System; Packet Flow Description Management Service; Stage 3".
- [26] 3GPP TS 29.554: "5G System; Background Data Transfer Policy Control Service; Stage 3".
- [27] 3GPP TS 29.504: "5G System; Unified Data Repository Services; Stage 3".
- [28] 3GPP TS 32.240: "Charging management; Charging architecture and principles".
- [29] IETF RFC 6733: "Diameter Base Protocol".
- [30] 3GPP TS 29.213: "Policy and charging control signalling flows and Quality of Service (QoS) parameter mapping".
- [31] 3GPP TS 29.525: "UE Policy Control Service; Stage 3".
- [32] 3GPP TS 29.518: "Access and Mobility Management Services; Stage 3".
- [33] 3GPP TS 24.501: "Non-Access-Stratum (NAS) protocol for 5G System (5GS); Stage 3".
- [34] 3GPP TS 29.122: "T8 reference point for northbound Application Programming Interfaces (APIs)". Non-Access-Stratum (NAS) protocol for 5G System (5GS); Stage 3".
- [35] 3GPP TS 24.292: "IP Multimedia (IM) Core Network (CN) subsystem Centralized Services (ICS); Stage 3".
- [36] IETF RFC 3556: "Session Description Protocol (SDP) Bandwidth Modifiers for RTP Control Protocol (RTCP) Bandwidth".
- [37] IETF RFC 3890: "A Transport Independent Bandwidth Modifier for the Session Description Protocol (SDP)".
- [38] IETF RFC 5761: "Multiplexing RTP Data and Control Packets on a Single Port".

- [39] IETF RFC 4145: "TCP-Based Media Transport in the Session Description Protocol (SDP)".
- [40] IETF RFC 4975: "The Message Session Relay Protocol (MSRP)".
- [41] 3GPP TS 24.229: "IP multimedia call control protocol based on Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) and Session Description Protocol (SDP); Stage 3".
- [42] IETF RFC 4412: "Communications Resource Priority for the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)".
- [43] IETF RFC 3264: "An Offer/Answer model with the Session Description Protocol (SDP)".
- [44] 3GPP TS 23.216: "Single Radio Voice Call Continuity (SRVCC); Stage 2".
- [45] 3GPP TS 23.380: "IMS Restoration Procedures".
- [46] 3GPP TS 23.221: "Architectural requirements".
- [47] 3GPP TS 29.505: "5G System; Usage of the Unified Data Repository Service for Subscription Data; Stage 3".
- [48] 3GPP TS 29.552: "5G System; Network Data Analytics signalling follows; Stage 3".
- [49] 3GPP TS 29.523: "5G System; Policy Control Event Exposure Service; Stage 3".
- [50] 3GPP TS 29.534: "5G System; Access and Mobility Policy Authorization Service; Stage 3".
- [51] 3GPP TS 29.510: "5G System; Network function repository services; Stage 3".
- [52] 3GPP TS 29.502: "5G System; Session Management Services; Stage 3".
- [53] 3GPP TS 29.212: "Policy and Charging Control (PCC); Reference points".
- [54] 3GPP TS 23.247: "Architectural enhancements for 5G multicast-broadcast services; Stage 2".
- [55] 3GPP TS 29.537: "5G System; Multicast/Broadcast Policy Control Services; Stage 3".
- [56] 3GPP TS 29.564: "5G System; User Plane Function Services; Stage 3".
- [57] 3GPP TS 23.548: "5G System Enhancements for Edge Computing; Stage 2".
- [58] 3GPP TS 29.532: "5G System; 5G Multicast-Broadcast Session Management Services; Stage 3".
- [59] 3GPP TS 29.244: "Interface between the Control Plane and the User Plane of EPC Nodes".
- [60] 3GPP TS 29.565: "5G System; Time Sensitive Communication and Time Synchronization Function services; Stage 3".
- [61] 3GPP TS 29.503: "5G System; Unified Data Management services; Stage 3".
- [62] 3GPP TS 38.413: "NG-RAN; NG Application Protocol (NGAP)".
- [63] IETF RFC 8655: "Deterministic Networking Architecture".
- [64] IETF RFC 9633: "Deterministic Networking (DetNet) YANG Data Model".
- [65] IETF RFC 6241: "Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)".
- [66] IETF RFC 8040: "RESTCONF Protocol".
- [67] 3GPP TS 29.591: "5G System; Network Exposure Function Southbound Services; Stage 3".
- [68] 3GPP TS 29.543: "5G System; Data Transfer Policy Control Services; Stage 3".
- [69] IETF RFC 8864: "Negotiation Data Channels Using the Session Description Protocol (SDP)".
- [70] 3GPP TS 23.316: "Wireless and wireline convergence access support for the 5G System (5GS)".

3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the terms and definitions given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. A term defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same term, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions given in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 3.1 apply:

Onboarding Standalone Non-Public Network

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the abbreviations given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. An abbreviation defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same abbreviation, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

5GC	5G Core Network
5G DDNMF	5G Direct Discovery Name Management Function
5QI	5G QoS Identifier
5G VN	5G Virtual Network
A2X	Aircraft-to-Everything
A2XP	Aircraft-to-Everything Policy
AF	Application Function
AMBR	Aggregate Maximum Bit Rate
AMF	Access and Mobility Management Function
ARP	Allocation and Retention Priority
AW	Average Window
BDT	Background Data Transfer
BSF	Binding Support Function
CHEM	Coverage and Handoff Enhancements using Multimedia error robustness feature
CHF	Charging Function
DetNet	Deterministic Networking
DSCP	Differentiated Services Code Point
DN-AAA	Data Network Authentication, Authorization and Accounting
DTS	Data Transport Service
EPC	Evolved Packet Core
EPS	Evolved Packet System
E-UTRAN	Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio-Access Network
HR-SBO	Home Routed-Session BreakOut
LBO	Local Breakout
MBR	Maximum Bitrate
MBS	Multicast/Broadcast Service
MBSF	Multicast/Broadcast Service Function
MB-SMF	Multicast/Broadcast Session Management Function
MCS	Mission Critical Service
MME	Mobility Management Entity
MPD	Media Presentation Description
MPS	Multimedia Priority Service
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NEF	Network Exposure Function
NID	Network Identifier
NPLI	Network Provided Location Information
NRF	Network Repository Function
NSSAI	Network Slice Selection Assistance Information
NWDAF	Network Data Analytics Function
ON-SNPN	Onboarding Standalone Non-Public Network

PCC	Policy and Charging Control
PCF	Policy Control Function
PDB	Packet Delay Budget
PDTQ	Planned Data Transfer with QoS requirements
PDUID	ProSe Discovery UE ID
PER	Packet Error Rate
PFD	Packet Flow Description
PFDF	Packet Flow Description Function
PMIC	Port Management Information Container
PL	Priority Level
ProSe	Proximity Services
ProSeP	5G ProSe Policy
PSA	PDU Session Anchor
PSAP	Public Safety Access Point
P-CSCF	Proxy Call Session Control Function
QFI	QoS Flow Identifier
QNC	QoS Notification Control
QoS	Quality of Service
RSLPP	Ranging and Sidelink Positioning Policy
SCP	Service Communication Proxy
SDP	Session Description Protocol
SEPP	Security Edge Protection Proxy
SFC	Service Function Chain
SL	Sidelink
SMF	Session Management Function
S-NSSAI	Single Network Slice Selection Assistance Information
SNPN	Stand-alone Non-Public Network
SPI	Security Parameter Index
TNAP	Trusted Network Access Point
TA	Tracking Area
TSC	Time Sensitive Communication
TSCAI	Time Sensitive Communication Assistance Information
TSN	Time Sensitive Networking
UDR	Unified Data Repository
UL CL	UpLink Classifier
UMIC	User plane node Management Information Container
UPF	User Plane Function
UPSI	UE policy section identifier
URSP	UE Route Selection Policy
V2X	Vehicle-to-Everything
V2XP	Vehicle-to-Everything Policy

4 Reference architecture

The policy framework functionality in 5G is comprised of the functions of the Policy Control Function (PCF), the policy and charging enforcement functionality supported by the SMF and UPF, the access and mobility policy enforcement functionality supported by the AMF, the Network Data Analytics Function (NWDAF), the Network Exposure Function (NEF), the Charging Function (CHF), the Unified Data Repository (UDR), the Time Sensitive Communication and Time Synchronization Function (TSCTSF), the Application Function (AF) and the 5G Direct Discovery Name Management Function (5G DDNMF).

The policy framework functionality for multicast-broadcast services in 5G is comprised of the functions of the Policy Control Function (PCF), the Multicast/Broadcast Service Function (MBSF), the Multicast-Broadcast Session Management Function (MB-SMF), the Network Exposure Function (NEF), the Unified Data Repository (UDR) and the Application Function (AF).

For the roaming scenario, the Security Edge Protection Proxy (SEPP) is deployed between the V-PCF and H-PCF. 3GPP TS 23.503 [4] specifies the 5G policy framework stage 2 functionality.

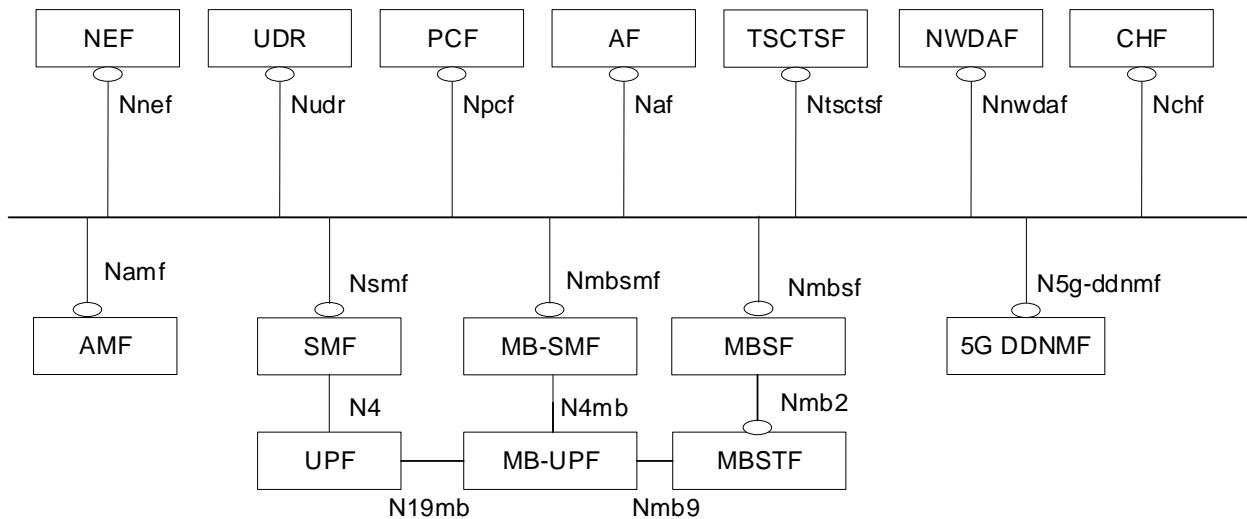


Figure 4.1-1a: Overall non-roaming 5G Policy framework architecture (service based representation)

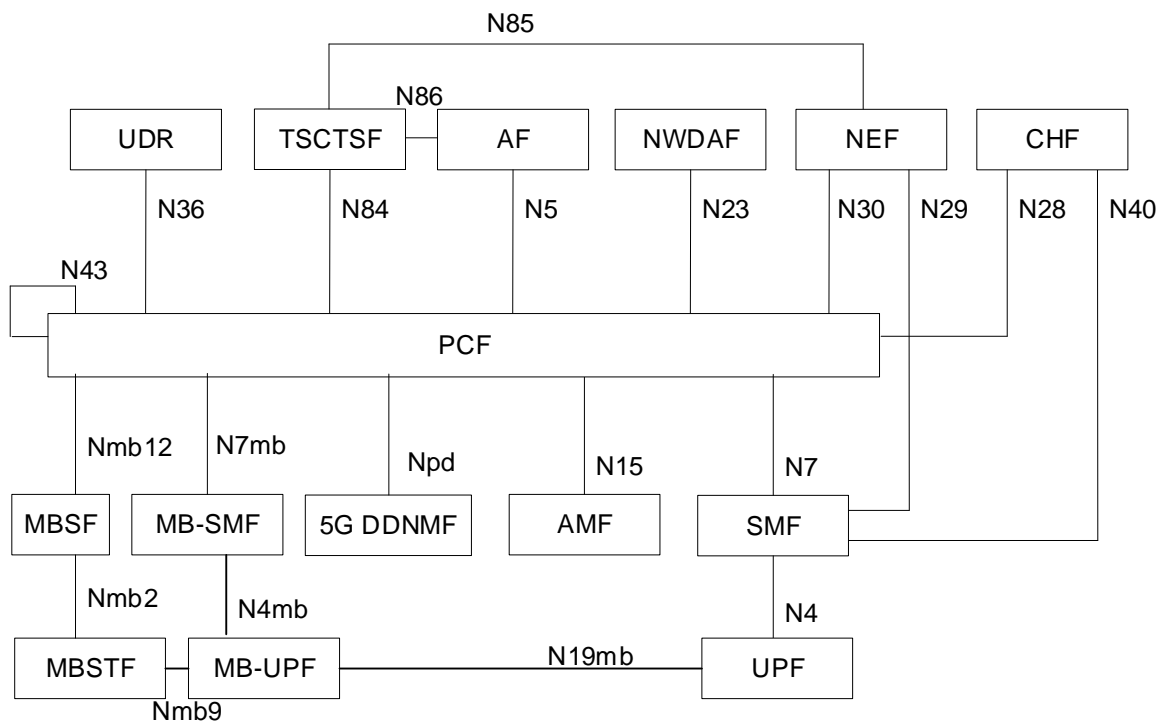


Figure 4.1-1b: Overall non-roaming 5G Policy framework architecture (reference point representation)

NOTE 1: The N4, N4mb, Nmb2, Nmb9 and N19mb interfaces are not part of the Policy Framework architecture but shown in the figures for completeness.

NOTE 2: If an SCP is deployed it can be used for indirect communication between NFs and NF services as described in Annex E of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

NOTE 3: MB-SMF, MBSTF, MB-UPF and MBSF apply only when the MBS PCC Architecture as described in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54] is deployed. In this case only the entities shown in that architecture are applicable.

The AF trusted by the operator interacts with the PCF via the N5 reference point. In the case of an untrusted AF, the AF interacts with the PCF via the NEF. The NEF interacts with the PCF via the N30 reference point in the same way that the AF interacts with the PCF via the N5 reference point.

The Nchf service for online and offline charging consumed by the SMF is defined in 3GPP TS 32.240 [28].

The Nchf service for Spending Limit Control consumed by the PCF is defined in 3GPP TS 29.594 [23].

The PCF providing session management policy control for a UE (i.e. PCF for the PDU Session) and the PCF providing non-session management policy control for that UE (i.e. PCF for the UE) may be different PCF instances and the communication between the PCF for the UE and the PCF for the PDU Session is performed over the N43 reference point.

NOTE 3: The roaming scenarios for SNPNs are not supported in this Release.

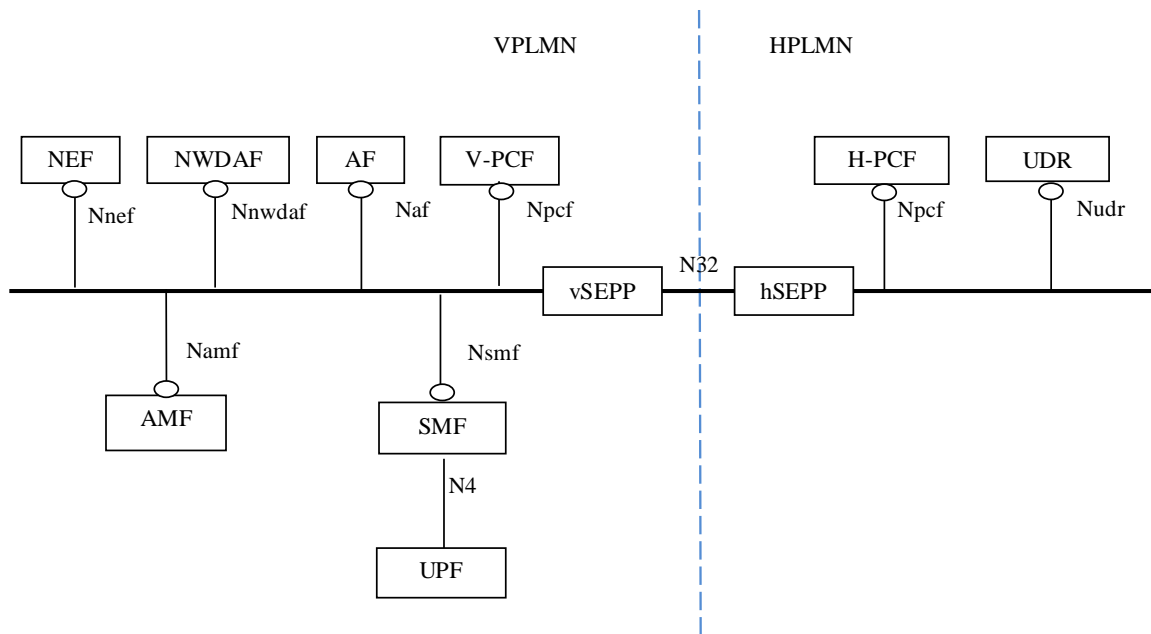


Figure 4.1-2a: Overall roaming policy framework architecture - LBO (service based representation)

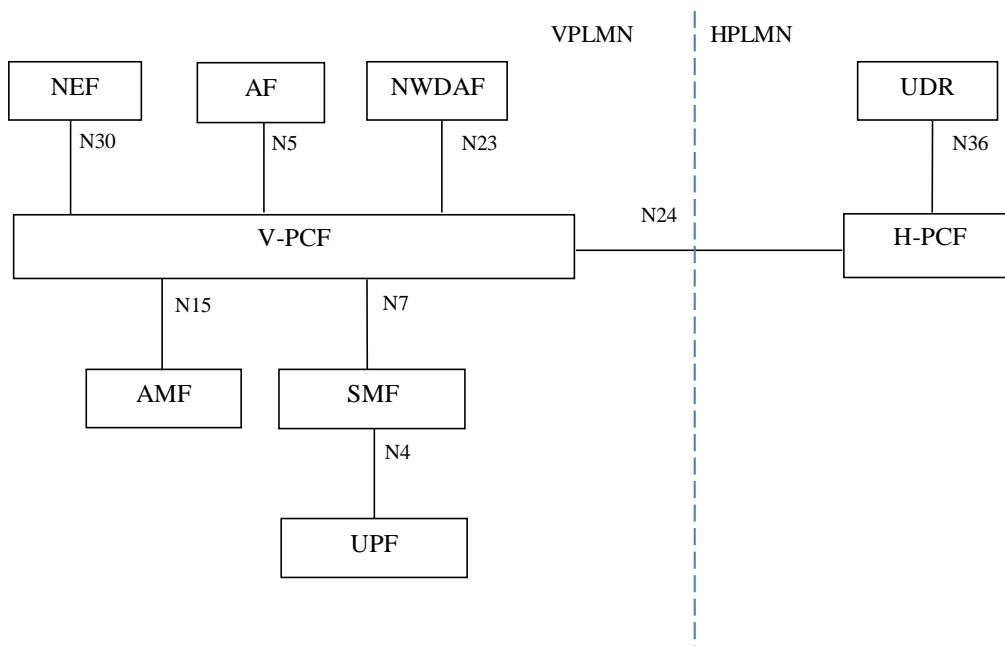


Figure 4.1-2b: Overall roaming policy framework architecture - LBO (reference point representation)

NOTE 4: In the LBO scenario, the PCF in the VPLMN may interact with the AF in order to generate PCC rules for services delivered via the VPLMN. The PCF in the VPLMN uses locally configured policies according to the roaming agreement with the HPLMN operator as input for PCC rule generation. The PCF in VPLMN has no access to subscriber policy information from the HPLMN nor to session management policy data for the UE in the VPLMN to retrieve input for PCC Rule generation. The interactions between the PCF in the VPLMN and the PCF in the HPLMN through the Npcf service based interface enables the PCF in the HPLMN to provision UE policies to the PCF in the VPLMN, as described in clause 5.3.4 of 3GPP TS 23.503 [4].

NOTE 5: In the LBO scenario, AF requests targeting a DNN (and slice) and / or a group of UEs are stored in the UDR by the NEF. The PCF in the VPLMN subscribes to and get notification from the UDR in the VPLMN for those AF requests. Details are defined in clause 5.6.7 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

NOTE 6: For the sake of clarity, SEPPs are not depicted in the roaming reference point architecture figures.

NOTE 7: N4 and N32 are not service based interfaces.

NOTE 8: The Home Routed PDU sessions are not supported for TSC networks in this Release.

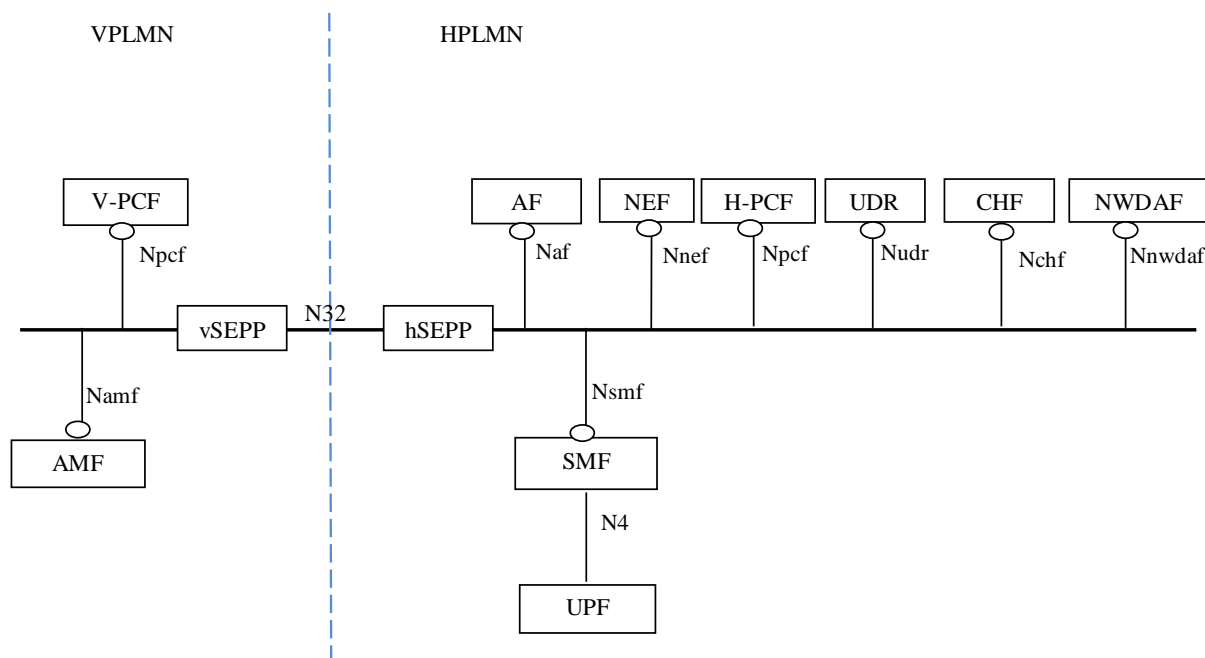


Figure 4.1-3a: Overall roaming policy framework architecture - home routed scenario (service based representation)

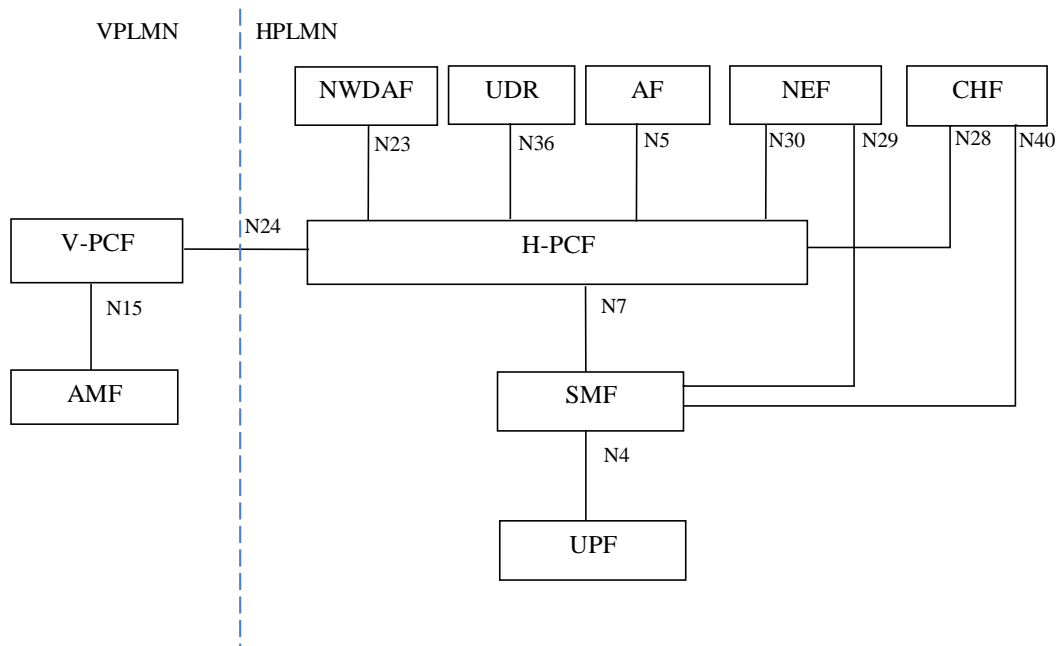


Figure 4.1-3b: Overall roaming policy framework architecture - home routed scenario (reference point representation)

NOTE 9: For the sake of clarity, SEPPs are not depicted in the roaming reference point architecture figures.

NOTE 10: N4 and N32 are not service based interfaces.

NOTE 11: An SCP can be used for indirect communication between NFs and NF services within the VPLMN, within the HPLMN, or in within both VPLMN and HPLMN. For simplicity, the SCP is not shown in the roaming architecture.

NOTE 12: Non-roaming architecture, local breakout roaming architecture and home-routed roaming architecture for interworking between 5GS and EPS are defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]. The signalling flows described in clause 5 apply to this scenario by replacing SMF by the SMF+PGW-C and with the differences applicable to EPC as described in Annex B.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

To allow the 5G system to interwork with AFs related to existing services, e.g. IMS based services, Mission Critical Push To Talk services, the PCF shall support the corresponding Rx procedures and requirements defined in 3GPP TS 29.214 [18]. This facilitates the migration from EPC to 5GC without requiring these AFs to upgrade to support the N5 interface.

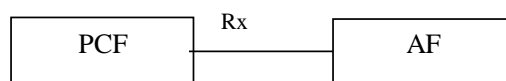


Figure 4.1-4: Interworking between 5G Policy framework and AFs supporting Rx interface

To support Deterministic Networking, the TSCTSFS offers RESTCONF (IETF RFC 8040 [66]) and/or NETCONF (IETF RFC 6241 [65]) interfaces to access to the schema defined by the 3GPP Extended Deterministic Networking (DetNet) YANG Model specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60] (extension of IETF RFC 9633 [64]), to enable the provisioning of configuration and operation data for DetNet flows. The 5G System is integrated with the Deterministic Network as defined in IETF RFC 8655[63] as a logical DetNet transit router (see 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 4.4.8.4). The TSCTSFS performs mapping in the control plane between the 5GS internal functions and the DetNet controller.

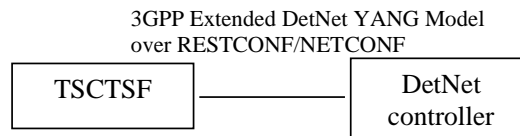


Figure 4.1-5: Interworking between TSCTS and DetNet controller to support Deterministic Networking.

5 Signalling Flows for the Policy Framework

5.0 General

This clause specifies the detailed call flows for the 5G Policy and Charging Control (PCC).

Clauses from 5.1 to 5.6 specify the call flows for PCC with no support of 5G multicast-broadcast services. They include the detailed call flows over Npcf, Nsmf; Namf, Nudr, Nnef; Nchf, Nbsf and Nnwdaf service based interfaces and their relationship with the flow level signalling in the 5G system.

NOTE: Interactions related with Nnwdaf service are not shown in the flows for readability purposes. The PCF can still make policy decisions taking into account network analytics in the applicable flows as described in clause 5.4.3.

Specific call flows for PCC with support of 5G multicast broadcast services are specified in clause 5.7.

5.1 AM Policy Association Management

5.1.1 AM Policy Association Establishment

This procedure concerns the following scenarios:

1. UE initial registration with the network.
2. The AMF re-allocation with PCF change in handover procedure and registration procedure.
3. UE registers with 5GS during the UE moving from EPS to 5GS when there is no existing AM Policy Association.

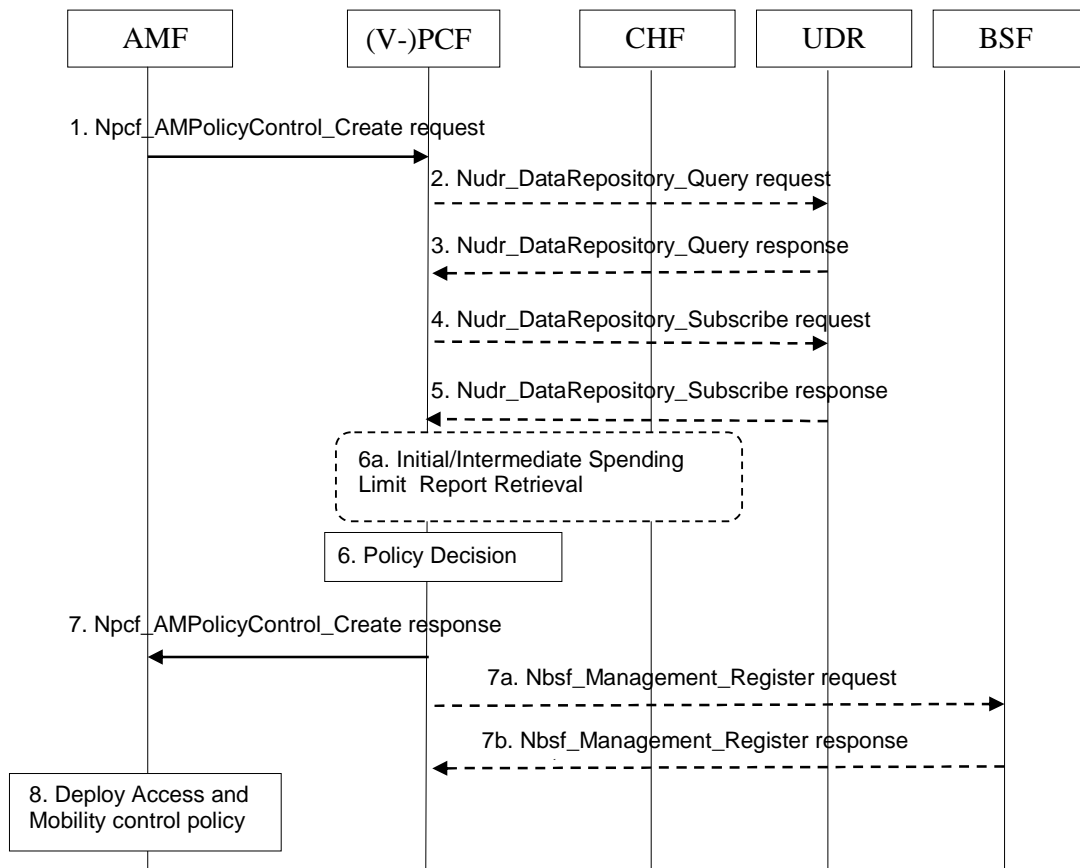


Figure 5.1.1-1: AM Policy Association Establishment procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

Step 2 - step 5 are not executed in the roaming case.

1. The AMF receives the registration request from the AN. Based on local policy, the AMF selects to contact the (V-) PCF to create the policy association with the (V-) PCF and to retrieve Access and Mobility control policy. The AMF selects the PCF as described in clause 8.2 and invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "AM Policy Associations" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2 and clause 5.3.2.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7]. The request operation provides, but is not limited to, the SUPI and the allowed NSSAI if applicable, and if received from the UDM, the Service Area Restrictions, RFSP index, UE-AMBR, a list of UE-Slice-MBR (s), GPSI and a list of Internal Group Identifiers, and may provide the applicable access type(s), the PEI if received in the AMF, the User Location Information if available, the UE Time Zone if available, Serving Network, the applicable RAT type(s), GUAMI of AMF, alternative or backup address(es) or FQDNs of AMF, trace control and configuration parameters information, etc., as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7]. The request includes a Notification URI to indicate to the PCF where to send a notification when the policy is updated.
2. If the PCF does not have the subscription data, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request to the "AccessAndMobilityPolicyData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].
3. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the requested subscription data and/or application data in the response message body.
4. The PCF may request notifications from the UDR on changes in the subscription information by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PolicyDataSubscriptions" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

Additionally, if the PCF and the UDR support dynamically changing AM policies, the PCF may subscribe to the UDR using the `Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe` service operation for notifications about AM Influence data changes by sending an HTTP POST request to the "ApplicationDataSubscriptions" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

5. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription from the PCF. If the PCF subscribed to notifications about AM Influence data with the immediate reporting indication set to "true" and matching AM Influence data exists in the UDR, the UDR includes them in the response as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].
- 6a. In non-roaming case, based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF, and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF determines that the status of additional policy counters is required, the PCF initiates an Intermediate Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.3.
6. The (V-)PCF makes the requested policy decision including Access and Mobility control policy information, and may determine applicable Policy Control Request Trigger(s).
7. The (V-)PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the AMF with the determined policies as described in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7], e.g.:
 - Access and Mobility Control Policy including Service Area Restrictions, and/or a RAT Frequency Selection Priority (RFSP) Index; and/or
 - Policy Control Request Triggers and related policy information.;
- 7a. The PCF may register to the BSF as the PCF for the UE (i.e. as the PCF that handles the AM Policy Association of this UE) by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PCF for a UE Bindings" resource of the `Nbsf_Management_Register` service as described in clause 4.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
- 7b. The BSF responds with "201 Created" if the registration of the PCF for the UE was successful.
8. The AMF deploys the Access and Mobility control policy information if received which includes, e.g. storing the Service Area Restrictions, provisioning the Service Area Restrictions to the UE and/or choosing the RFSP index in use and provisioning the chosen RFSP index and Service Area Restrictions to the NG-RAN, if applicable, when the UE is registered in the 3GPP access.

NOTE 1: The AMF can decide that the RFSP Index in use is the same as the RFSP index authorized by the PCF or can also use configured operator policies, the Allowed NSSAI, the Partially Allowed NSSAI and the UE related context information available at the AMF in its derivation.

When the feature "RFSPValidityTime" is supported, the PCF provided the RFSP Index value that indicates the EPC/E-UTRAN access is prioritized over 5GS access and a validity time associated to the provided RFSP Index as specified in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7], if the AMF decides to use the RFSP Index received from the PCF, then the AMF provides to the MME both, the received RFSP Index and the received validity time. The validity time indicates the time for which the RFSP Index will be used in the MME after 5GS to EPS mobility.

NOTE 2: The RFSP validity time indicated by the PCF when the feature "RFSPValidityTime" is supported is used by the MME to allow the UE to stay in EPS during the period of time indicated by the "rfspValTime" attribute as specified in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7] and avoid the potential ping-pong issue between 5GS and EPS (i.e., 5GS keeps sending the UE to EPS based on authorized RFSP Index from PCF, and the EPS keeps sending the UE back to 5GS immediately based on the subscribed RFSP Index). If due to UE mobility the AMF receives from the MME a validity time associated to the RFSP Index in use, the AMF will ignore validity time received from the MME.

NOTE 3: The PCF can reject the AM Policy Association establishment, e.g. the PCF cannot obtain the subscription-related information from the UDR and the PCF cannot make the policy decisions, as described in 3GPP TS 29. 519 [12]. In this case, the AMF deploys the Access and Mobility control policy information based on the policy retrieved from the UDM if available or the local configuration. In order to choose the RFSP Index in use, the Allowed NSSAI, the Partially Allowed NSSAI and the UE related context information available at the AMF can also be used.

5.1.2 AM Policy Association Modification

5.1.2.1 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF

5.1.2.1.1 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF without AMF relocation

This procedure is performed when a Policy Control Request Trigger condition is met.

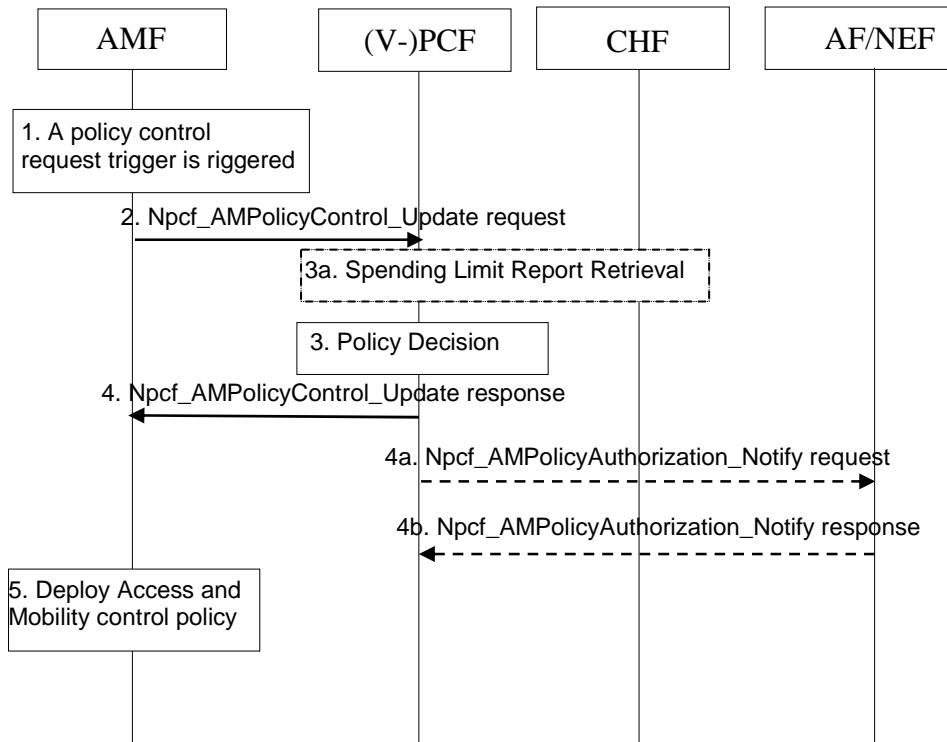


Figure 5.1.2.1.1-1: AMF-initiated AM Policy Association Modification without AMF relocation procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

1. The AMF detects a Policy Control Request Trigger condition is met or other condition is met, e.g. trace control configuration needs to be updated, as defined in clause 4.2.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
2. The AMF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_Update service operation to the (V-) PCF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual AM Policy Association" resource with information on the conditions that have changed.
- 3a. In non-roaming case, based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.
3. The (V-)PCF stores the information received in step 2 and makes the policy decision.

4. The (V-)PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the AMF with the updated Access and Mobility control policy information and/ or the updated Policy Control Request Trigger parameters as described in clause 4.2.3.3 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
- 4a. If an AF (either directly or via the NEF) has previously subscribed to events for the AF application AM context (e.g. service area restrictions policy change) as described in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.5, the PCF checks if reporting is needed based on the policy decision that was made and may send a respective notification using Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2 (in addition, a Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify request/response may occur between the NEF and the AF if the notification is relayed via the NEF).
- 4b. The AF (either directly or via the NEF) sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2.
5. The AMF deploys the Access and Mobility control policy if received, which includes, e.g. storing the Service Area Restrictions, provisioning the Service Area Restrictions to the NG-RAN and UE, and/or choosing the RFSP index in use and provisioning the chosen RFSP index to the NG-RAN, if applicable, when the UE is registered in the 3GPP access, as specified in clause 5.1.1, step 8.

5.1.2.1.2 AM Policy Association Modification with old PCF during AMF relocation

This procedure is performed when AMF relocation is performed and the old PCF is selected by the new AMF.

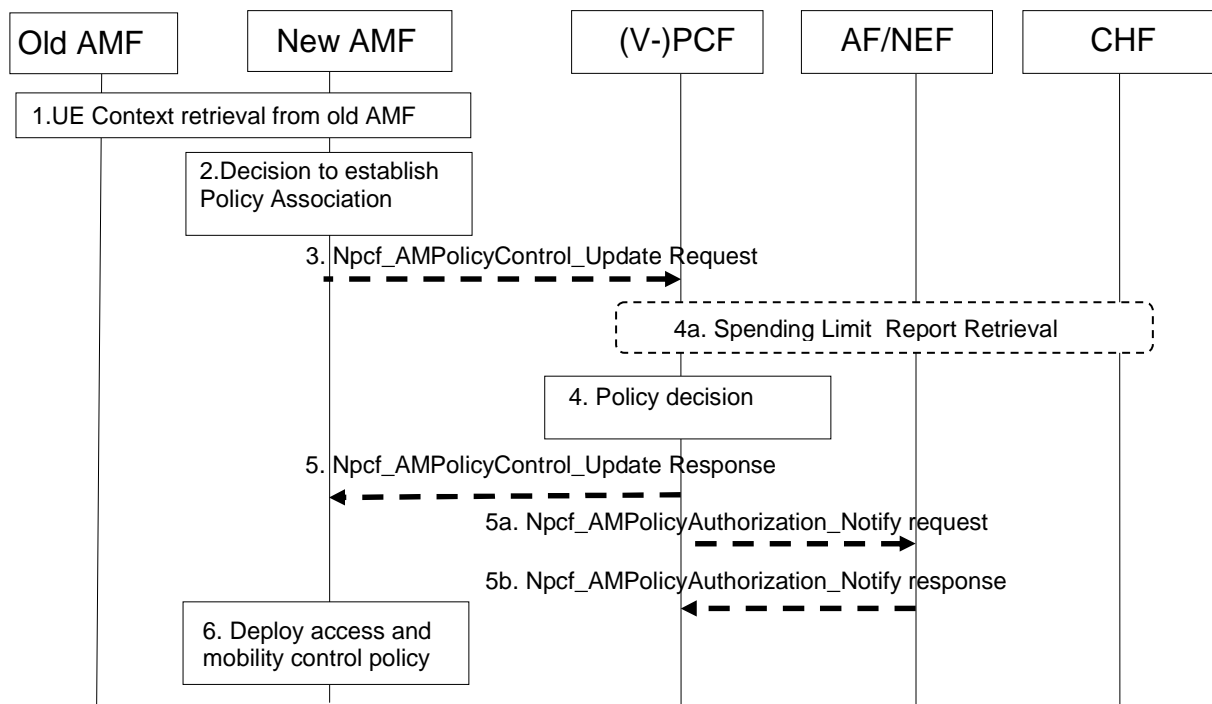


Figure 5.1.2.1.2-1: AMF-initiated AM Policy Association Modification with old PCF during AMF relocation procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

1. When the old AMF and the new AMF belong to the same PLMN or equivalent PLMN or belong to the same SNPN or equivalent SNPN, the old AMF transfers to the new AMF about the AM Policy Association information including, e.g. policy control request trigger(s), and the resource URI (i.e. {apiRoot}/npcf-am-policy-control/v1/policies/{polAssoId}) of AM Policy Association at the (V-)PCF).

2. Based on local policies, the new AMF decides to contact with (V-)PCF and update the resource identified by the resource URI received in step 1.
3. The new AMF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_Update service operation to the (V-) PCF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual AM Policy Association" resource with the Notification URI of the new AMF. The request may also include the met policy control request trigger(s) and corresponding information, and the new alternate or backup IP addresses or FQDN.

When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, the HTTP POST request to the "Individual AM Policy Association" resource also contains the features supported by the new AMF and the feature related information, if applicable, as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].

- 4a. In non-roaming case, based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.
4. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the (V-)PCF updates the stored information provided by the old AMF with the information provided by the new AMF and makes the policy decision.

When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, and the (V-)PCF received the features supported by the AMF, the (V-)PCF re-evaluates the negotiated features and makes the policy decision considering the resulting negotiated features and the information provided by the new AMF.

5. The PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the AMF with:
 - a. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the updated Access and Mobility control policy information and/or the updated Policy Control Request Trigger parameters as described in clause 4.2.3.3 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
 - b. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, and the V-PCF received the features supported by the AMF, the Access and Mobility control policy information and Policy Control Request Triggers corresponding to the complete "Individual AM Policy Association" resource representation together with the negotiated supported features as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
- 5a. If an AF (either directly or via the NEF) has previously subscribed to events for the AF application AM context (e.g. service area restrictions policy change) as described in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.5, the PCF checks if reporting is needed based on the policy decision that was made and may send a respective notification using Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2 (in addition, a Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify request/response may occur between the NEF and the AF if the notification is relayed via the NEF).
- 5b. The AF (either directly or via the NEF) sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2.
6. The AMF deploys the Access and Mobility control policy if received, which includes, e.g. storing the Service Area Restrictions, provisioning the Service Area Restrictions to the NG-RAN and UE, and/or choosing the RFSP index in use and provisioning the chosen RFSP index to the NG-RAN, if applicable, when the UE is registered in the 3GPP access, as specified in clause 5.1.1, step 8.

5.1.2.2 AM Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF

This procedure is performed when the Access and Mobility control policies are changed.

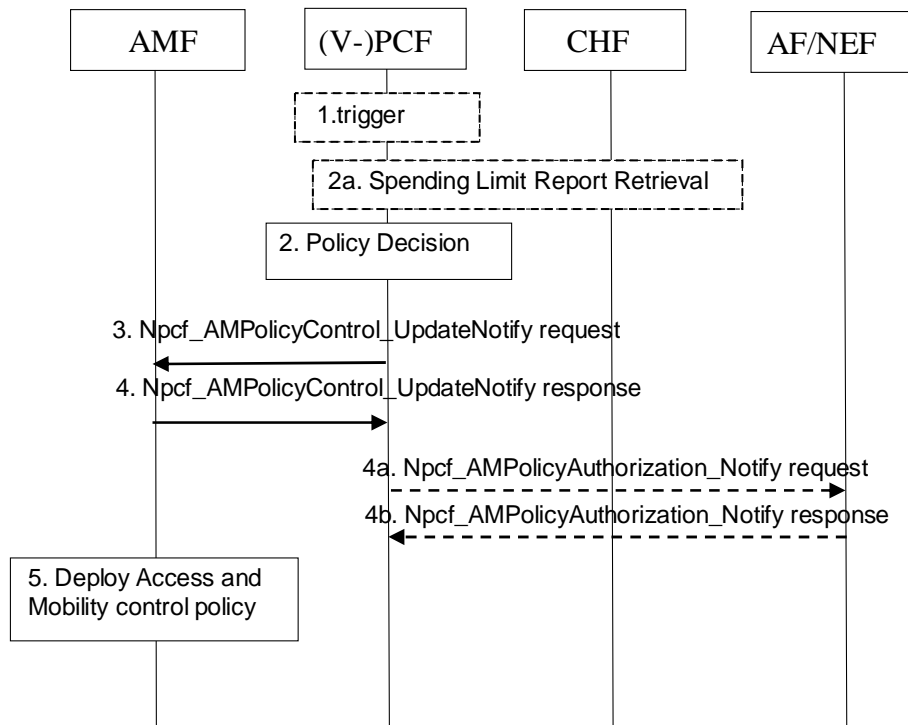


Figure 5.1.2.2-1: PCF-initiated AM Policy Association Modification procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

1. The (V-) PCF receives an external trigger, e.g. the subscriber policy data of a UE is changed or an AF request to influence AM policies has been received, or the (V-)PCF receives an internal trigger, e.g. operator policy is changed, to re-evaluate Access and Mobility control policy for a UE, or optionally in non-roaming cases, if the CHF provides the Spending Limit Report to the PCF as described in clause 5.3.5.
- 2a. In non-roaming case, based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.
2. The (V-)PCF makes the policy decision including, applicable updated Access and Mobility control policy, and may determine applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s).
3. If the (V-)PCF decided to update the Access and Mobility control policy and/or Policy Control Request Trigger(s) in step 2, the (V-)PCF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notificationUri}/update" as the callback URI to the AMF that has previously subscribed, as described in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
4. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response the PCF.
- 4a. If an AF (either directly or via the NEF) has previously subscribed to events for the AF application AM context (e.g. service area restrictions policy change) as described in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.5, the PCF checks if reporting is needed based on the policy decision that was made and may send a respective notification using Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2 (in addition, a

Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify request/response may occur between the NEF and the AF if the notification is relayed via the NEF).

- 4b. The AF (either directly or via the NEF) sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response as defined in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50] clause 4.2.7.2.
- 5. The AMF deploys the Access and Mobility control policy information if received which includes, e.g. storing the Service Area Restrictions, provisioning the Service Area Restrictions to the UE and/or choosing the RFSP index in use and provisioning the chosen RFSP index and Service Area Restrictions to the NG-RAN, if applicable, when the UE is registered in the 3GPP access, as specified in clause 5.1.1, step 8.

5.1.3 AM Policy Association Termination

5.1.3.1 AM Policy Association Termination initiated by the AMF

This procedure is performed when the UE deregisters from the network, when the UE deregisters from 5GS during the UE moving from 5GS to EPS or when the old AMF removes the AM Policy Association during AMF relocation.

NOTE: The old AMF removes the AM Policy Association during AMF relocation when the old AMF decides that he the PCF instance Id is not sent to the new AMF (e.g. inter-AMF mobility with PLMN change, where the new PLMN is not an equivalent PLMN), or when the new AMF indicates to the old AMF that the received AM Policy Association will not be reused.

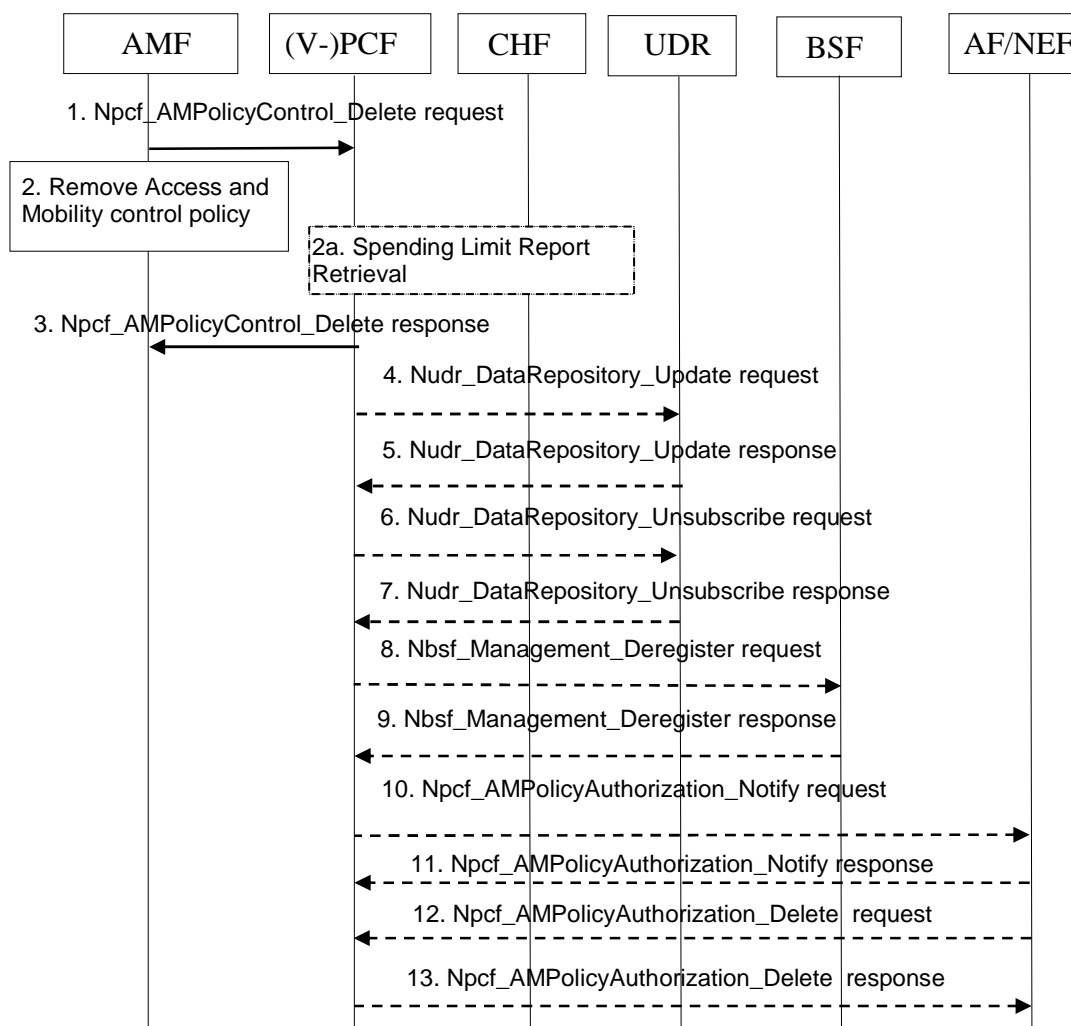


Figure 5.1.3.1-1: AMF-initiated AM Policy Association Termination procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

Step 4 and step 5 are not executed in the roaming case.

1. The AMF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_Delete service operation to delete the policy context in the (V-) PCF by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual AM Policy Association" resource.
2. The AMF removes the UE context for this UE, including the Access and Mobility Control Policy related to the UE, and/or policy control request triggers.
- 2a. In non-roaming cases, if the PCF has previously subscribed to the policy counter status to the CHF and if the PCF determines that the Policy Context does not depend on policy counters, it invokes the Final Spending Limit Report procedure defined in clause 5.3.4 to unsubscribe to policy counter status reporting, otherwise the PCF may invoke the Intermediate Spending Limit Report procedure as defined in clause 5.3.3 to modify the list of subscribed policy counters.
3. The (V-)PCF removes the policy context for the UE and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AMF.
4. If the feature "SLAMUP" is supported, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "AccessAndMobilityPolicyData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to store the "spendLimInfo" attribute in the UDR as defined in clause 5.4.2.2A of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] at the termination of the AM Policy Association procedure based on operator policies.

NOTE: When the "SLAMUP" is supported, if the "spendLimInfo" attribute is available in the UDR, the PCF could use it for policy decision by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Query service before the PCF retrieves it from the CHF during the AM Policy Association establishment procedure described in clause 5.1.1).

5. The UDR responds with HTTP "204 No Content" to the PCF.
6. The PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe the notification of subscriber policy data modification from the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification. The PCF invokes also the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications about AM Influence data changes at the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualApplicationDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification.
7. The UDR responds with HTTP "204 No Content" to the PCF.
8. The PCF may also deregister from the BSF as the PCF for the UE (i.e. as the PCF that handles the AM Policy Association of this UE) by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual PCF for a UE Binding" resource of the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service as described in clause 4.2.3.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
9. The BSF responds with "204 No Content" if the deregistration of the PCF for the UE was successful.
10. If there is AF/NEF application AM context associated with the UE, the PCF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with the {termNotifUri} as the callback URI to the AF/NEF to trigger the AF to request the AF application AM context termination.
11. The AF/NEF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
12. The AF/NEF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource.
13. The PCF removes the AF application AM session context and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AF.

5.1.3.2 AM Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF

This procedure is performed when the UDR notifies the PCF that the policy profile is removed or when the PCF decides to terminate the AM Policy Association based on the internal logic, e.g. UE movement triggers a geo-fencing rule.

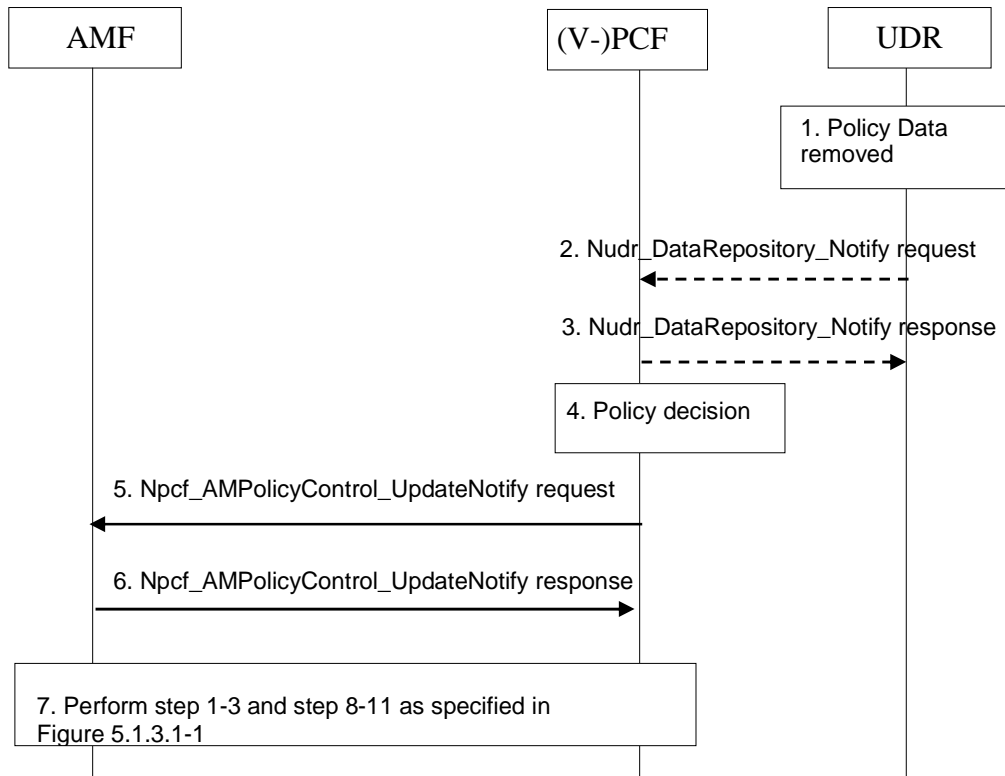


Figure 5.1.3.2-1: PCF-initiated AM Policy Association Termination procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the non-roaming case the role of the V-PCF is performed by the PCF. For the roaming scenarios, the V-PCF interacts with the AMF.

Step 1, step 2 and step 3 are not executed in the roaming case or in the case that the PCF decides to terminate the AM Policy Association based on the internal logic.

1. The subscriber policy control data is removed from the UDR.
2. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to notify the PCF that the policy profile is removed if PCF has subscribed such notification by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].
3. The PCF sends the response to the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation.
4. The (V-)PCF decides to terminate the AM Policy Association based on step 2 or an internal trigger, e.g. operator policy is changed, to re-evaluate Access and Mobility control policy for a UE.
5. The (V-)PCF may, depending on operator policies, invoke the Npcf_AMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation towards the AMF to notify it of the removal of the Access and Mobility control policy control information by sending an HTTP POST request to the request URI "{notificationUri}/terminate" as described in clause 4.2.4.3 of 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].

Alternatively, the (V-)PCF may decide to maintain the Policy Association if a default profile is applied, and then step 4 through 6 are not executed.

6. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
7. Step 1 through step 3 and step 8 through step 11 as specified in Figure 5.1.3.1-1 are executed with the following difference:
 - the AMF removes the policy control request trigger(s) related to the AM policy association, but still keeps the provisioned AM policies and applies them to the UE.

- Step 8 through step 11 can be issued at any time after step 4.

5.2 SM Policy Association Management

5.2.1 SM Policy Association Establishment

This clause is applicable if a new SM Policy Association is being established.

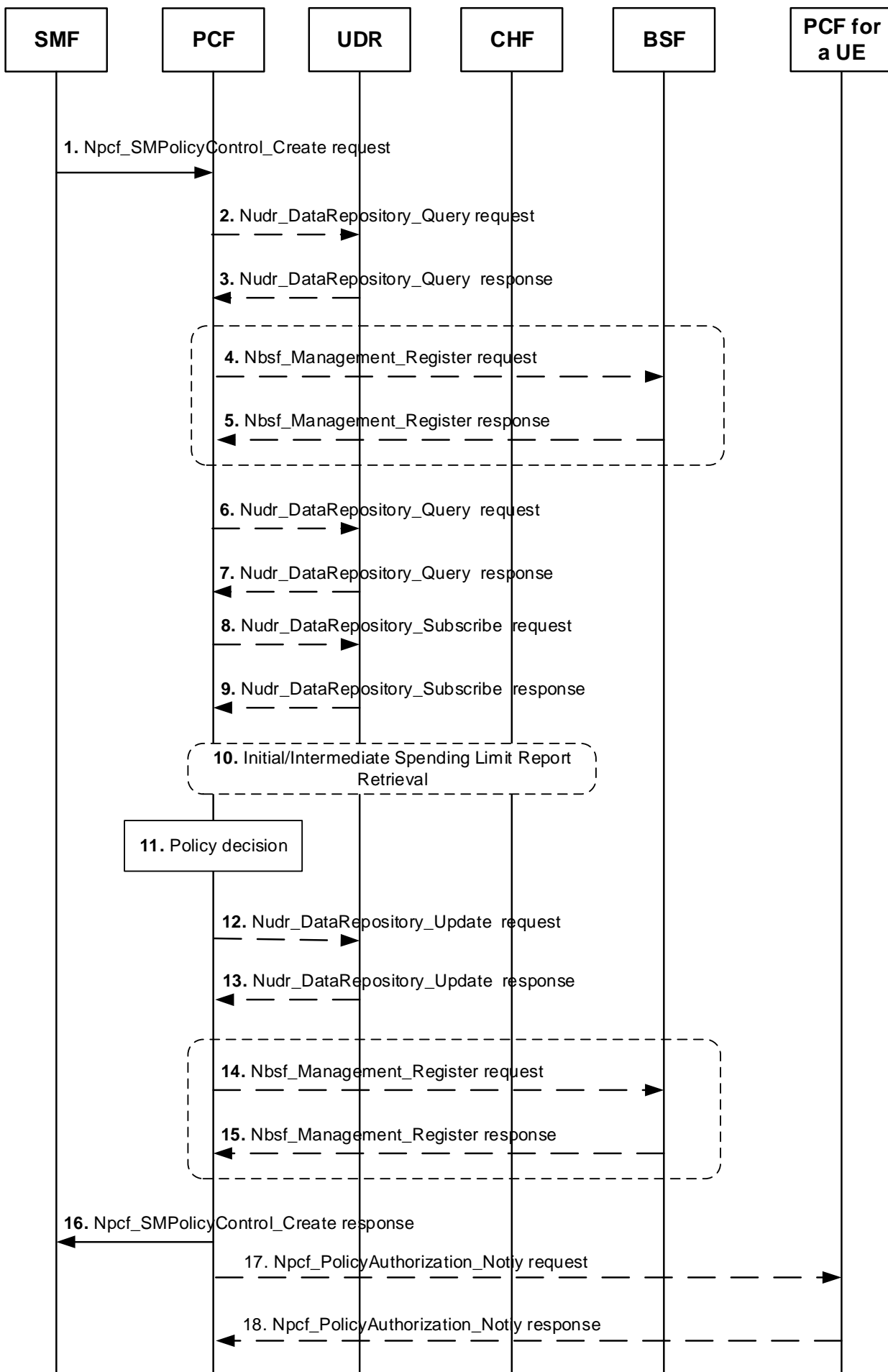


Figure 5.2.1-1: SM Policy Association Establishment procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the LBO roaming case, the PCF acts as the V-PCF, and the V-PCF shall not contact the UDR/CHF. In the home routed roaming case, the PCF acts as the H-PCF and the H-PCF interacts with the H-SMF.

NOTE 1: For LBO roaming case, session management policy data for the UE is not available in the VPLMN and V-PCF uses locally configured information according to the roaming agreement with the HPLMN operator. Therefore, interactions between PCF and UDR in the following procedures do not apply to this scenario.

1. The SMF receives a PDU session establishment request from the UE. The SMF selects the PCF as described in clause 8.3 and invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "SM Policies" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The request operation provides the needed information within the "SmPolicyContextData" as defined in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
- 2-3. If "PvsSupport" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported and the Onboarding Indication set to true is received and the combination of the received DNN and S-NSSAI corresponds to a PDU session used for User Plane Remote Provisioning, these steps are skipped. Otherwise, if PCF does not have the subscription data for the SUPI, DNN and S-NSSAI and/or based on operator policies, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. When the "NetSliceRepl" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported and the Alternative S-NSSAI is received in the request, the PCF may also retrieve the subscription data for the Alternative S-NSSAI, when applicable. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the policy control subscription data.
4. If the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature is supported or the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature is not supported and the "SamePcf" feature is supported, and based on operator's policies and retrieved data the PCF determines that the same PCF needs to be used for all the SM Policy associations that match a combination of SUPI, DNN and S-NSSAI, and no SM Policy association for the given combination exists, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation to check if another PCF exists for the given parameter combination when the conditions as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.2.2 are met.
5. If the PCF receives an HTTP "201 Created" response from the BSF with the created binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.2 and the flow continues in step 6.

If the PCF receives an HTTP "403 Forbidden" response from the BSF, the PCF replies the SMF as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.2.2 and the flow terminates here.

- 6-7. If BDT Reference ID(s) is included in the response from the UDR, the PCF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR to retrieve the Background Data Transfer policy corresponding to the BDT Reference ID(s) by sending the HTTP GET request to the "IndividualBdtData" resource or the "BdtData" collection resource with the URI query parameter "bdt-ref-ids" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], and the UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the Background Data Transfer policy.

Additionally, if the TSC feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to retrieve the stored AF influence data in the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "Influence Data" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored AF request.

Additionally, if the ATSSS feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, and the SDF template of the PCC rule includes an application identifier, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to retrieve the stored OS Id(s) supported by the UE from the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "UePolicySet" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored UE Policy data. The PCF determines the application descriptors based on the retrieved OS Id(s), if available, and local configuration, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

Additionally, if the WWC feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to retrieve the stored IPTV configuration from the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "IPTV Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored IPTV configuration. The PCF determines Multicast

Access Control information (i.e., whether the multicast channel represented by the SDF of the PCC rule is allowed or not) based on the retrieved IPTV configuration as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

Additionally, when network slice data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation towards the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource as specified in clause 5.2.12 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the network slice policy control data.

Additionally, when location dependent policies for trusted non-3GPP access is supported by the PCF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to retrieve the stored list of AF-provided TNAP ID(s) within Service Parameter data from the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "Service Parameter Data" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored Service Parameter Data.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF and shall apply for the 5G VN Group:

- if the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the PCF may receive the newly provisioned or updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2; and
- the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP GET request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to retrieve the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the concerned 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

8-9. To request notifications from the UDR on changes in the policy data information, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PolicyDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, if the TSC feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the AF influence data, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Influence Data Subscription" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, if the WWC feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the IPTV configuration, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "ApplicationDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, when location dependent policies for trusted non-3GPP access is supported by the PCF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the list of AF-provided TNAP ID(s) within Service Parameter Data, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "ApplicationDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "SubscriptionDataSubscriptions" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47]. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

10. If the PCF determines that the policy decision depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF, and such reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF determines that the status of additional policy counters are required, the PCF initiates an Intermediate Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.3.

11. The PCF makes the policy decision to determine the information provided to the SMF.

12-13. If network slice data rate related policy control applies, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Slice Data Rate information.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF for the 5G VN Group, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP PATCH request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to update the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

14. When the "SamePcf" feature is not supported, in the case that the BSF is to be used and that either the IP address/prefix or MAC address is available, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending HTTP POST request to create the PDU session binding information for a UE in the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.2.

When the "SamePcf" feature or the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature is supported, the PCF determines that the same PCF needs to be used for the SM Policy associations of the same DNN, S-NSSAI and SUPI parameter combination, and a SM Policy association already exists for the given parameter combination (i.e., step 4, 5 did not apply) the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending HTTP POST request to create the PDU session binding information for a UE in the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.2.

15. The PCF receives an HTTP "201 Created" response from the BSF with the created binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.2.
16. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the SMF with the determined policies as described in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
17. If the PCF as a PCF for a PDU session receives the callback URI of the PCF for a UE in step 1, the PCF shall send the event of PDU session established to the AF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "{notifUri}/pdu-session" callback URI as defined in clause 4.2.5.22 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
18. The PCF for a UE sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

5.2.2 SM Policy Association Modification

5.2.2.1 General

The following procedures concern both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the LBO roaming case, the PCF acts as the V-PCF, and the V-PCF shall not contact the UDR/CHF. In the home routed roaming case, the PCF acts as the H-PCF and the H-PCF interacts with the H-SMF.

NOTE 1: For LBO roaming case, session management policy data for the UE is not available in the VPLMN and V-PCF uses locally configured information according to the roaming agreement with the HPLMN operator. Therefore, interactions between PCF and UDR in the following procedures do not apply to this scenario.

The SM Policy Association Modification procedure may be initiated either by the SMF or by the PCF.

NOTE 2: The following procedures cover both Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service operations over the N5 reference point and Rx interactions between AF and PCF. It is assumed that for the interactions between one AF and one PCF, only one of those possibilities is used. For details of Rx interface refer to 3GPP TS 29.214 [18] and for details on the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service refer to 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

5.2.2.2 SM Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF

5.2.2.2.1 Interactions between SMF, PCF and CHF

This procedure is performed when the PCF decides to modify policy decisions for a PDU session.

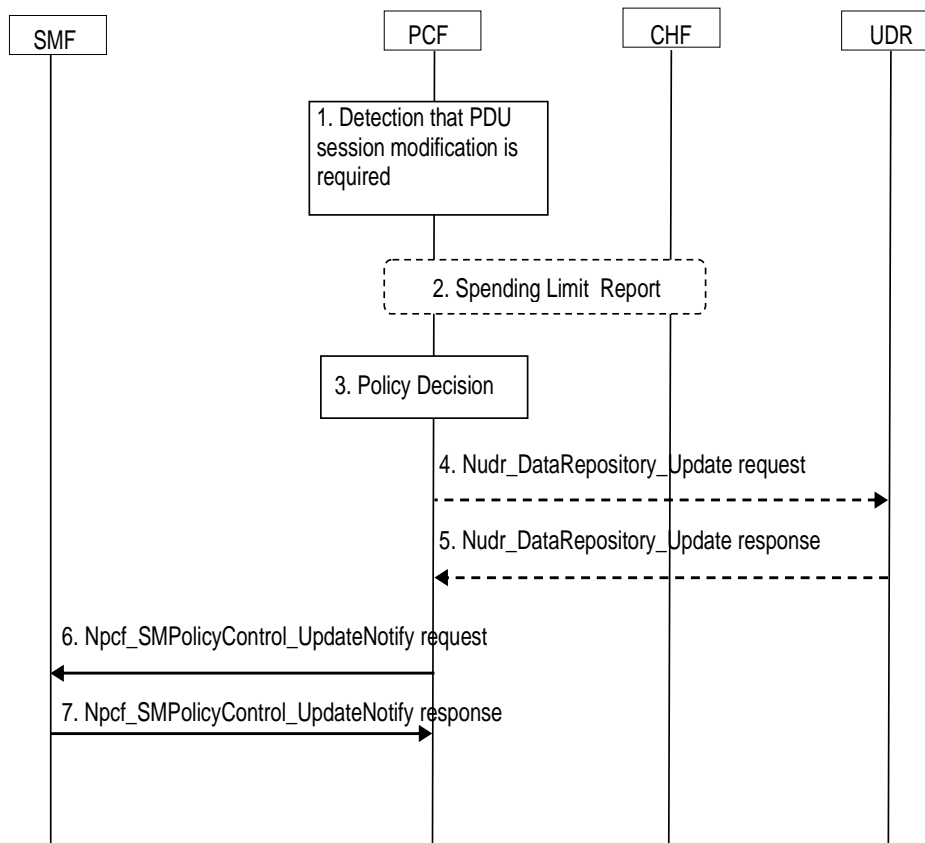


Figure 5.2.2.2.1-1: Interactions between SMF, PCF and CHF for PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. The PCF receives an internal or external trigger to re-evaluate PCC Rules and policy decision for a PDU Session. Possible external trigger events are described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.

NOTE: If "QoSTiming_5G" feature is supported in Npcf_PolicyAuthorization API, and the AF/NEF request for QoS duration and QoS inactivity interval, the next steps would be repeated until the AF session is terminated as described in clause 5.2.2.2.3.

In addition, this procedure is triggered by the following cases:

- The UDR notifies the PCF about a policy data change (e.g. change in MPS EPS Priority, MPS Priority Level, MCS Priority Level and/or IMS Signalling Priority, or change in user profile configuration indicating whether supporting application detection and control).
 - The UDR notifies the PCF about application data change (e.g. change in AF influence data or IPTV configuration data).
 - The CHF provides a Spending Limit Report to the PCF as described in clause 5.3.5.
 - The PCF for the UE provides to the PCF for the PDU session a UE policy container and/or the policy control request triggers that apply to the UE policy association as described in clause 5.6.2.2.
 - When group data rate related policy control is supported by the (H-)PCF and shall apply for a 5G VN Group and the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the (H-)PCF may receive the updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures as defined in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2.
2. If the PCF determines that the policy decision depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and such reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it

sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.

3. The PCF makes a policy decision. The PCF can determine that updated or new policy information need to be sent to the SMF.
- 4-5. If network slice data rate related policy control applies, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Slice Data Rate information.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the (H-)PCF and shall apply for a 5G VN Group, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP PATCH request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to update the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

6. The PCF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notificationUri}/update" as the callback URI to the SMF that has previously subscribed. The request operation provides the PDU session ID and the updated policies, as described in clause 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
7. The SMF sends an HTTP "200 OK" or HTTP "204 No Content" to the PCF.

5.2.2.2.2 Interactions between PCF, AF and UDR

5.2.2.2.2.1 AF Session Establishment

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF requests to create an AF application session context for the requested service.

NOTE 1: The NEF acts as an AF to support the network exposure functionality.

For the integration with TSC networks the AF represented in the figures is either the TSN AF (integration with IEEE TSN networks) or the TSCTSF (integration with other TSC networks than IEEE TSN).

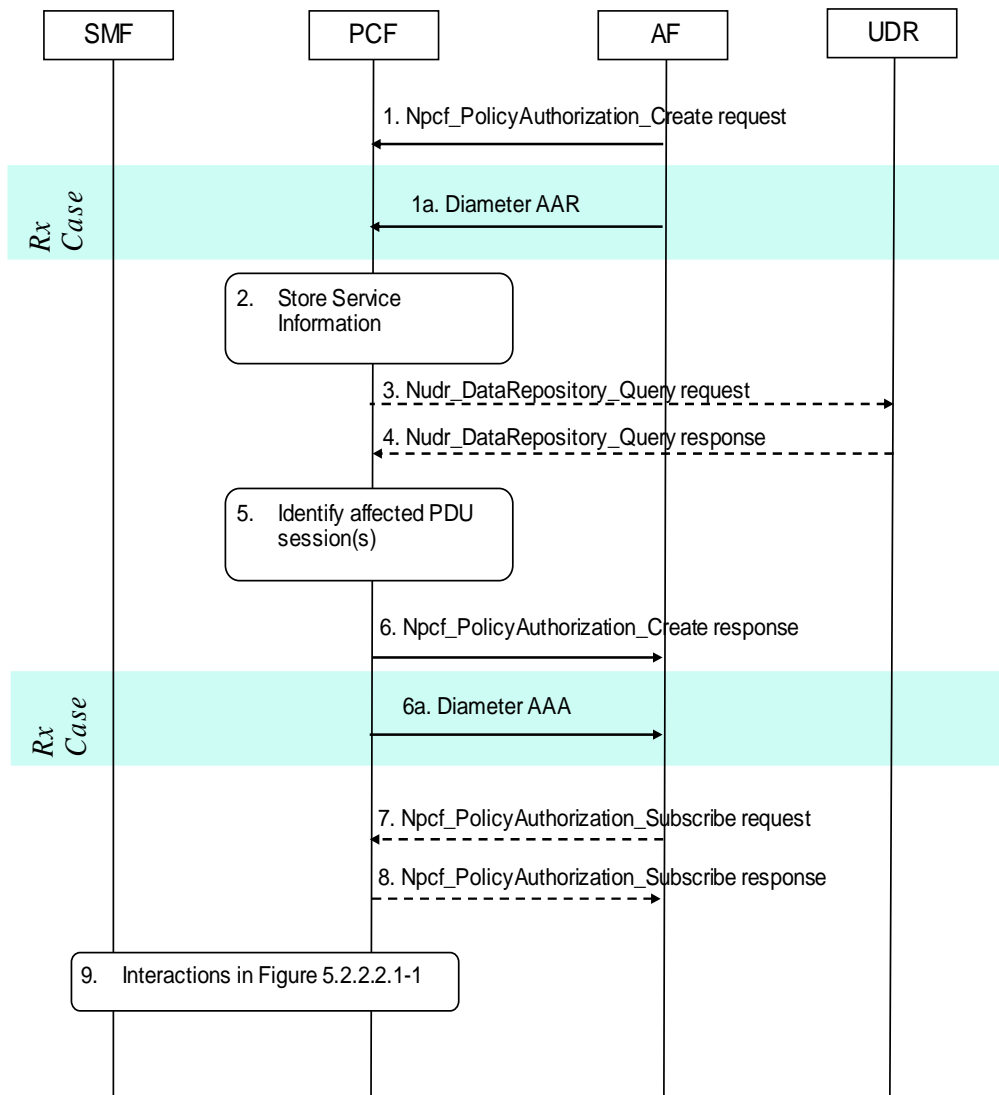


Figure 5.2.2.2.1-1: AF Session Establishment triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. When the AF receives an internal or external trigger to set-up a new AF session, the AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to the PCF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.

1a. The AF provides the Service Information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for a new Rx Diameter session.

2. The PCF stores the Service Information received in step 1.

3-4. If the PCF does not have the subscription data for the SUPI, DNN and S-NSSAI, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the subscription data.

Additionally, when network slice data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation towards the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource as specified in clause 5.2.12 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the network slice policy control data.

Additionally, if the AF provided a Background Data Transfer Reference ID in step 1 or step 1a and the corresponding transfer policy is not locally stored in the PCF, the PCF sends the HTTP GET request to the "IndividualBdtData" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the Background Data Transfer policy.

If the AF session is for MPS for DTS invocation, the PCF performs MPS subscription checks if and only if requested by the AF as described in clause 4.4.11 of 3GPP TS 29.214 [18] or as described in clause 4.2.2.12.2 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF for the 5G VN Group:

- if the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the PCF may receive the newly provisioned or updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2; and
 - the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP GET request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to retrieve the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the concerned 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].
5. The PCF identifies the affected established PDU Session (s) using the information previously received from the SMF and the Service Information received from the AF.
 6. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the AF.
 - 6a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA to the AF.
 7. The AF may invoke the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Events Subscription" resource to subscribe to events in the PCF. The request includes the events that subscribes and a Notification URI to indicate to the PCF where to send the notification of the subscribed events, as described in clause 4.2.6 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
 8. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the AF.
 9. The PCF interacts with SMF according to Figure 5.2.2.2-1.

5.2.2.2.2.2 AF Session Modification

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF requests to update an AF application session context for the requested service.

NOTE 1: The NEF acts as an AF to support the network exposure functionality.

For the integration with TSC networks the AF represented in the figures is either the TSN AF (integration with IEEE TSN networks) or the TSCTSF (integration with other TSC networks than IEEE TSN).

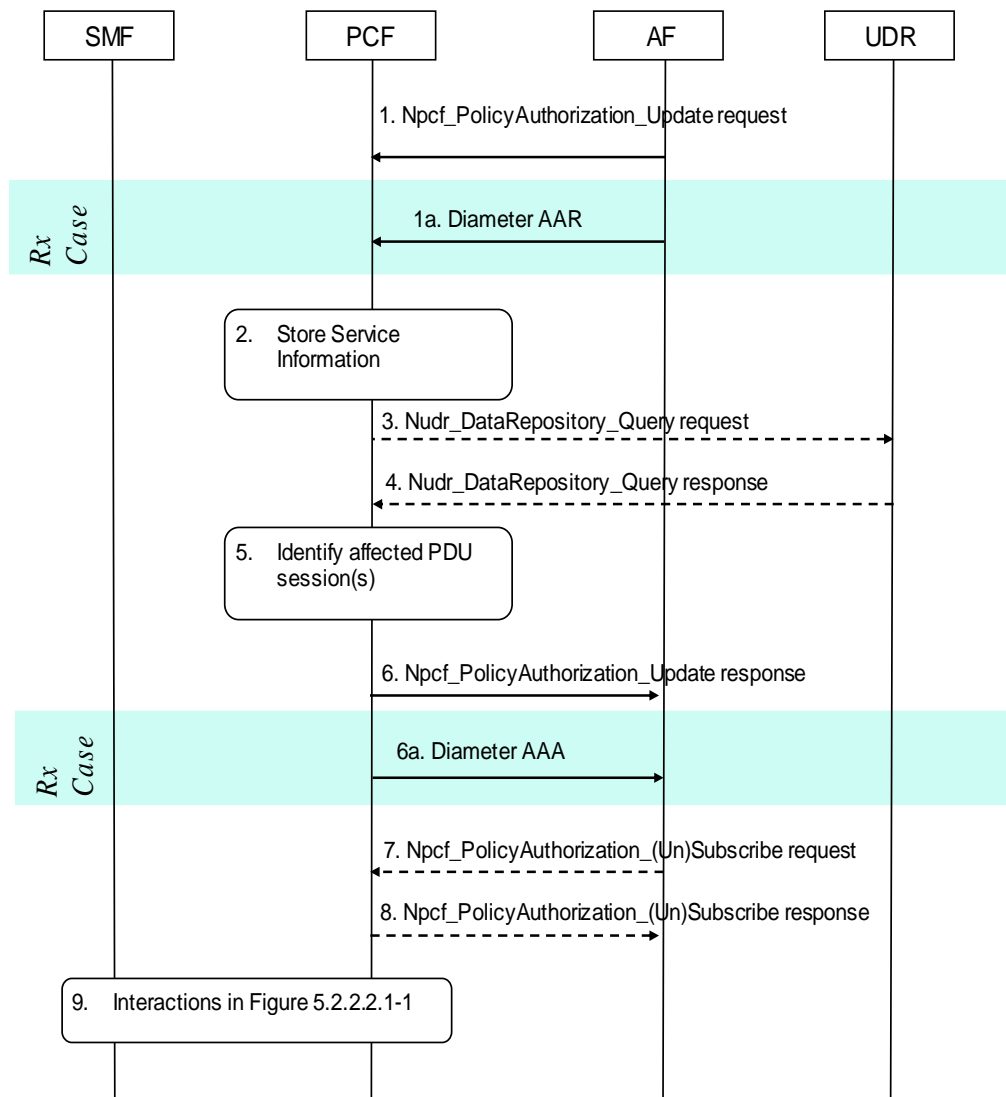


Figure 5.2.2.2.2-1: AF Session Modification triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. When the AF receives an internal or external trigger to modify an existing AF session, the AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource including the modified service information as defined in clause 4.2.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. The AF may also provide the updated subscription to notifications on user plane events. To invoke/revoke MPS for DTS, the AF includes the MPS Action indication as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

If the "TimeSensitiveNetworking" feature is supported the AF may also update the TSC Assistance Container and QoS related data and/or a UMIC and/or one or more PMIC(s).

- 1a. The AF provides the Service Information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for the existing Rx Diameter session corresponding to the modified AF session.
2. The PCF stores the received Service Information.
- 3-4. These steps are the same as steps 3-4 in clause 5.2.2.2.1.
5. The PCF identifies the affected existing PDU Session(s) using the information previously received from the SMF and the Service Information received from the AF.
6. The PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" or HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AF.
- 6a. The H-PCF sends a Diameter AAA to the AF.

7. The AF may decide to (un)subscribe to events for the active AF application session context in relation to the corresponding PDU session.
 - If the AF decides to create a subscription to events or modify the events subscription, it invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Events Subscription" resource. The HTTP request includes the events that subscribes and may also include a Notification URI to indicate to the PCF where to send the notification of the subscribed events.
 - If the AF decides to remove subscription to all subscribed events for the existing application session context, it invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Events Subscription" resource.
8. The PCF responses to the AF.
 - If the PCF accept the HTTP PUT request to create a subscription to events, it sends an HTTP "201 Created" response.
 - If the PCF accept the HTTP PUT request to modify the events subscription, it sends an HTTP "200 OK" or HTTP "204 No Content" response.
 - Upon receipt of the HTTP DELETE request to remove subscription to all subscribed events, the PCF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response.
9. The PCF interacts with SMF according to Figure 5.2.2.2-1.

5.2.2.2.2.3 AF Session Termination

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF requests the PCF to delete the AF application session context.

NOTE: The NEF acts as an AF to support the network exposure functionality for policy/charging capability.

For the integration with TSC networks the AF represented in the figures is either the TSN AF (integration with IEEE TSN networks) or the TSCTSF (integration with other TSC networks than IEEE TSN).

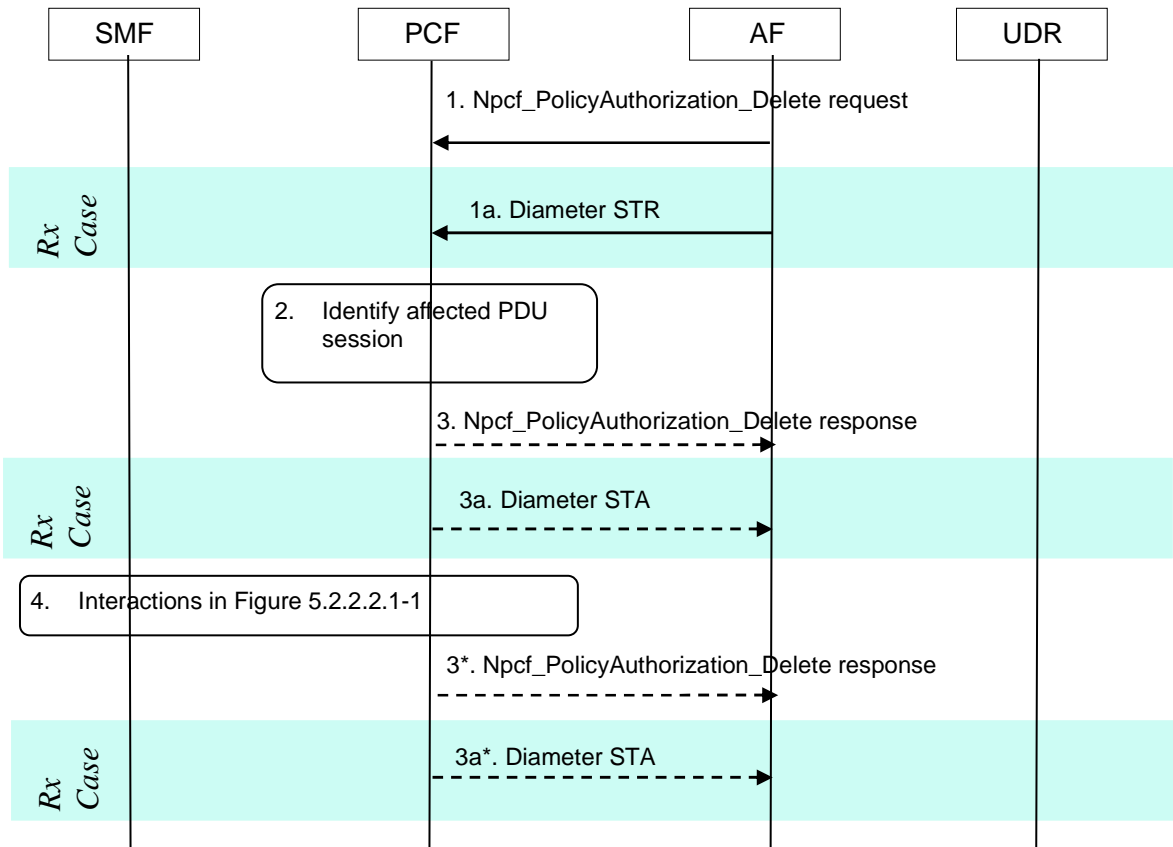


Figure 5.2.2.2.3-1: AF Session Termination triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. The AF sends the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource to request the removal of the AF application session as defined in clause 4.2.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. The request may include the events to subscribe to.
 - 1a. The AF sends a session termination request, Diameter STR, to the PCF to request the removal of the session. The request may include the events to subscribe to
2. The PCF identifies the affected PDU Session where PCC rules related with this AF session are installed. These PCC rules need to be removed.

If the request in step 1 or step 1a does not include the event(s) or it includes the event(s) but the corresponding information is available at the PCF, step 3 or step3a is performed respectively; otherwise, the step 3* or step3a* is performed respectively.
3. The PCF removes the AF application session context and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" or HTTP "200 OK" response to the AF.
 - 3a. The PCF sends a Diameter STA, session termination answer, to the AF.
- 3*. The PCF removes the AF application session context and sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the information corresponding to the requested event(s) to the AF.
 - 3a*. The PCF sends a Diameter STA, session termination answer with the information corresponding to the requested event(s), to the AF.
4. The PCF interacts with SMF according to Figure 5.2.2.2-1.

5.2.2.2.4 AF Request of application detection exposure

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF subscribes or modifies a subscription to application detection exposure information for the requested service.

NOTE: The NEF acts as an AF to support the network exposure functionality.

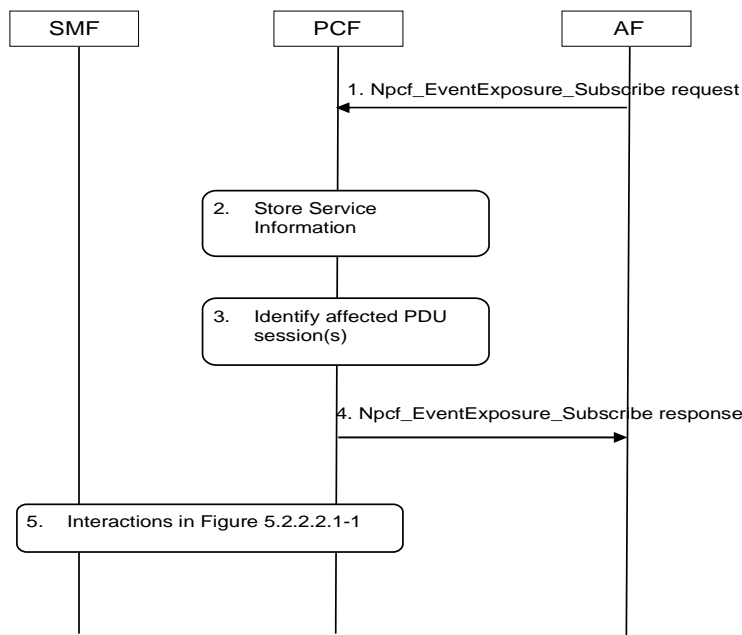


Figure 5.2.2.2.4-1: AF Request of application detection exposure triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. When the AF requires to get information on the usage of applications to enforce application layer logic, the AF invokes the `Npcf_EventExposure_Subscribe` service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Policy Control Events Subscriptions" resource as described in 3GPP TS 29.523 [49].

When the AF requires to modify an existing subscription, the AF invokes the `Npcf_Event_Exposure_Subscribe` service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Policy Control Events Subscription" resource as described in 3GPP TS 29.523 [49].

2. The PCF stores the Service Information received in step 1.
3. The PCF identifies the affected established PDU Session (s) using the information previously received from the AF.
4. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" as a response to the initial subscription or HTTP "200 OK" or HTTP "204 No Content" as a response to a subscription modification.
5. The PCF interacts with SMF according to Figure 5.2.2.2-1.

5.2.2.2.2.5 AF Request termination of application detection exposure

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF unsubscribes to application detection exposure information for the requested service.

NOTE: The NEF acts as an AF to support the network exposure functionality for policy/charging capability.

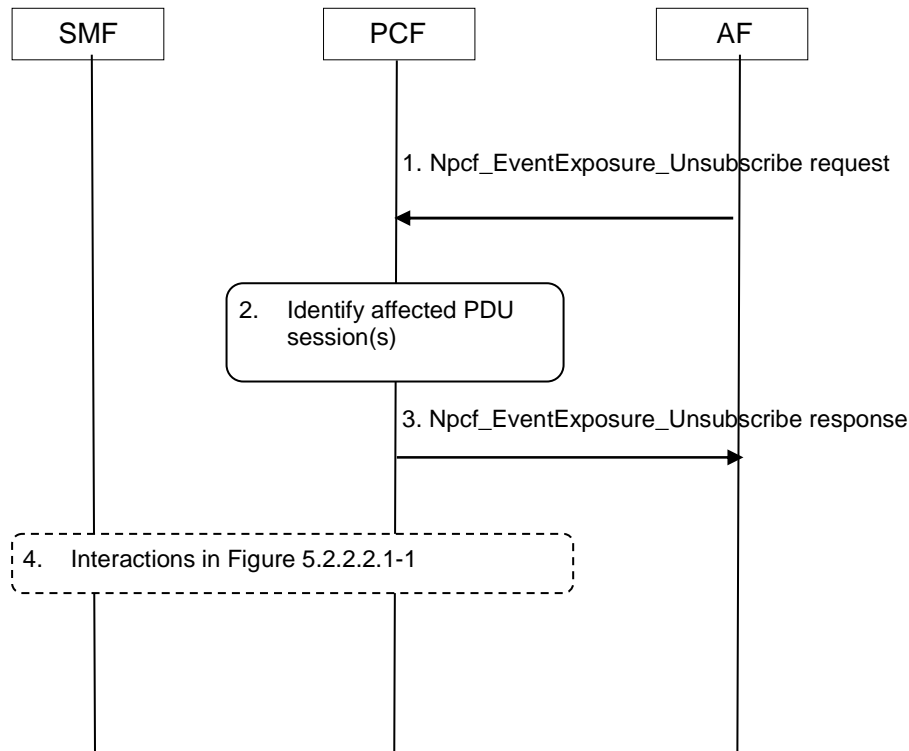


Figure 5.2.2.2.5-1: AF Request of application detection exposure termination triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. The AF sends the `Npcf_EventExposure_Unsubscribe` service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Policy Control Events Subscription" resource to request the removal of the subscription as defined in clause 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.523 [49].
2. The PCF identifies the affected PDU Session where PCC rules related with this AF request are installed. These PCC rules need to be removed and the related Policy Control Request Triggers need to be unsubscribed unless they are used for other purposes.
3. The PCF removes the corresponding subscription and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AF.
4. If the PCF needs to remove the affected PCC Rules and unsubscribe to the related Policy Control Request Triggers the PCF interacts with SMF according to Figure 5.2.2.2-1.

5.2.2.3 SM Policy Association Modification initiated by the SMF

This procedure is performed when the SMF observes some policy control trigger condition is met or a PCC rule error is reported.

For the integration with TSC networks the AF represented in the figures is either the TSN AF (integration with IEEE TSN networks) or the TSCTS (integration with other TSC networks than IEEE TSN).

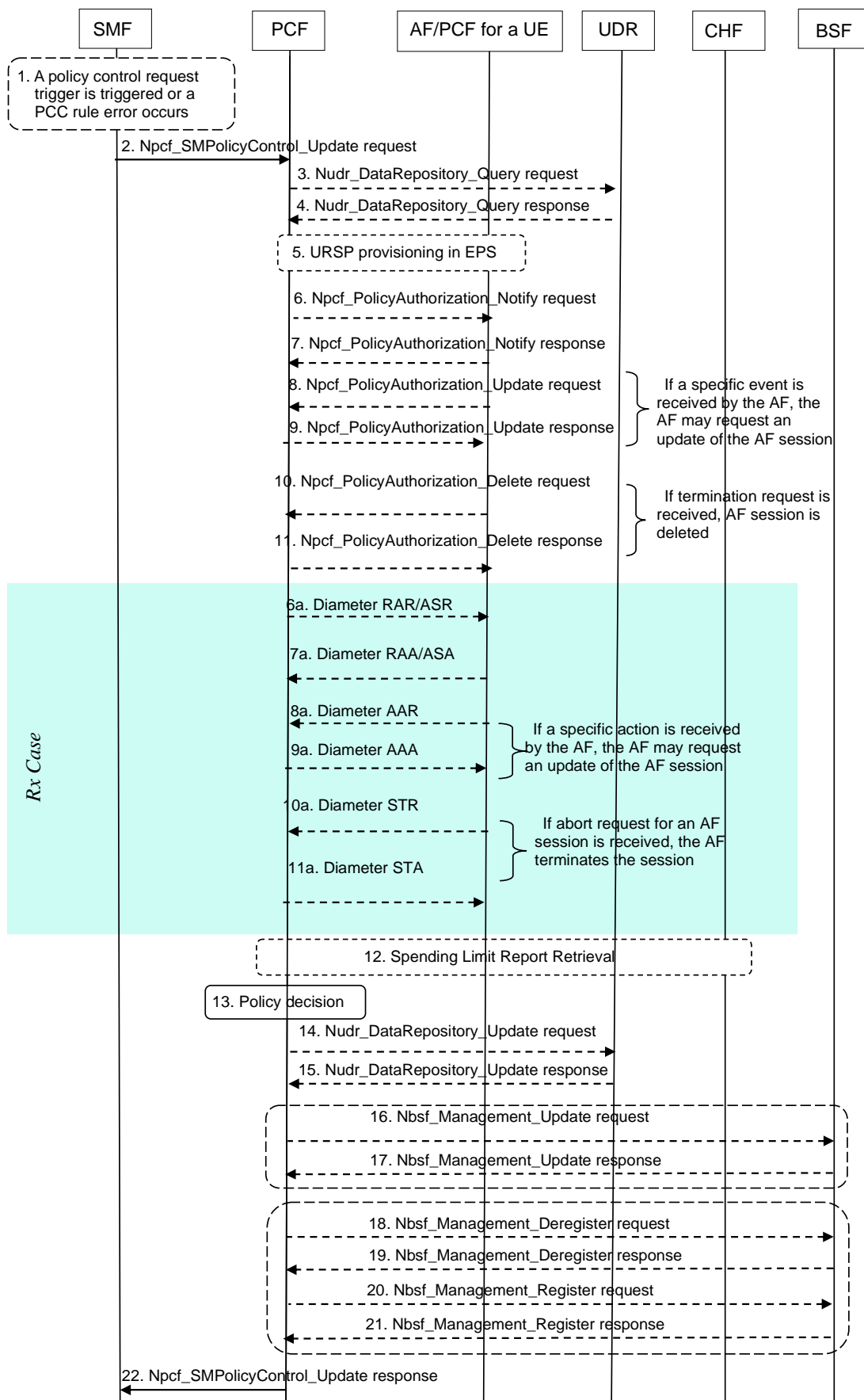


Figure 5.2.2.3-1: SMF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure

1. The SMF detects a policy control request trigger condition is met or an error is reported.

2. The SMF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual SM Policy" resource with information on the conditions that have changed or a PCC rule error occurs.

If the feature "TimeSensitiveNetworking" or "TimeSensitiveCommunication" is supported and the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" policy control request trigger is provisioned in the SMF, the SMF may provide during PDU session establishment TSC user plane node information (port number for the device side corresponding to the PDU session, DS-TT MAC address, if applicable, TSC user plane node Id and UE-DS-TT residence time, if available), and, if available, a UMIC and/or one or more PMIC(s) to the PCF, or, during PDU session modification procedures, updated UMIC and/or PMIC(s). In case of Deterministic Networking and if the feature "MTU_Size" is supported, the SMF may also provide the MTU size for IPv4 and the MTU size for IPv6 as part of TSC user plane node information.

3. If the (H-)PCF requires subscription-related information and does not have it, the (H-)PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource to fetch the information. When the "NetSliceRepl" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported and the Alternative S-NSSAI is received in the request, the PCF may also retrieve the subscription data for the Alternative S-NSSAI, when applicable.

If the AfGuideTNAPs feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported and the (H-)PCF requires Service Parameter data and does not have it, the (H-)PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "Service Parameter Data" resource to fetch the information.

Additionally, when network slice data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation towards the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the PCF for the 5G VN Group:

- if the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the PCF may receive the newly provisioned or updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2; and
- the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP GET request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to retrieve the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the concerned 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

4. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the subscription related information containing the information about the allowed service(s) and PCC Rules information.

NOTE 1: If the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update message of step 2 includes usage report(s), the (H-)PCF can also invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource in order to update the usage monitoring information according to the received usage report(s). If "NetSliceRepl" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported and the PCF received the "NET_SLICE_REPL" policy control request trigger in step 2, the (H-)PCF can invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to store the remaining usage allowance for either the initial S-NSSAI or the Alternative S-NSSAI.

NOTE 2: If the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update message of step 2 includes the outcome of the resource allocation and network slice data rate policy control is supported, the (H-)PCF can also invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Slice Data Rate information.

NOTE 3: If the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update message of step 2 includes the outcome of the resource allocation and group data rate policy control is supported and shall apply for a 5G VN Group, the (H-)PCF can also invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information.

5. If the feature "EpsUrsp" is supported:

- a. if the PCF received in step 1 a UE Policy Container as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], and:
 - i. there is no UE Policy Association established for the UE, the PCF triggers a UE Policy Association Establishment procedure as described in clause 5.6.1; or
 - ii. there is a UE Policy Association established for the UE, the PCF triggers a UE Policy Association Update procedure as described in clause 5.6.2.1; or
- b. if the PCF received in step 1 a RAT type and/or Access Type change event as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], and:
 - i. the PCF determines that 5GS to EPS mobility applies as described in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], the PCF retrieves from the BSF the PCF for the UE handling the UE policy association with the source AMF and triggers a UE Policy Association Establishment procedure as described in clause 5.6.1; or
 - ii. the PCF determines that EPS to 5GS mobility applies, the PCF triggers a UE Policy Association Termination procedure as described in clause 5.6.3.2.

NOTE 4: In the Home Routed case, the PCF interacts with the H-PCF for the UE and, in the LBO case, the PCF in the V-PLMN interacts with the V-PCF for the UE as described in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

6. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to indicate that an event for which the AF requested a notification has occurred by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notifUri}/notify" as the callback URI to the AF or to request to the AF the deletion of the active application session if all the service data flows for the AF session are deleted by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notifUri}/terminate" as the callback URI to the AF.

If the feature "TimeSensitiveNetworking" or "TimeSensitiveCommunication" is supported:

- When the PCF detects that there is no Individual Application Session Context resource bound to the Individual SM Policy resource the PCF shall provide the new TSC user plane node information received in step 2 to the TSN AF or TSCTSF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "{notifUri}/new-bridge" request URI, where the "{notifUri}" value is pre-configured in the PCF or, if not pre-configured, discovered by invoking the Nnrf_NFDiscovery service as defined in 3GPP TS 29.510 [51].

NOTE 5: The TSCTSF registers in the NRF the notification URI within the default notification subscription for time sensitive communication, time synchronization and deterministic networking notifications as described in 3GPP TS 29.510 [51].

- When the PCF detects that there is an Individual Application Session Context resource bound to the Individual SM Policy resource, the PCF shall provide the received UMIC and/or PMICs to the AF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "{notifUri}/notify" callback URI.

When the PCF as a PCF for a PDU session becomes aware that a SM Policy Association that is being modified is receiving the callback URI of the PCF for a UE in step 2, the PCF shall send the event of PDU session established to the PCF for a UE by sending an HTTP POST request to the "{notifUri}/pdu-session" callback URI as defined in subclause 4.2.5.22 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

- 6a. If the AF requested a notification of the corresponding event, the PCF sends a Diameter RAR with the Specific-Action AVP set to indicate the event that caused the request. If all service data flows for an AF session are deleted, the PCF sends a Diameter ASR to request to the AF the termination of the active session.
7. The AF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

If the feature "TimeSensitiveNetworking" or "TimeSensitiveCommunication" is supported and the TSN AF or TSCTSF received the notification of new TSC user plan node information over the "{notifUri}/new-bridge" request URI, the TSN AF or TSCTSF shall trigger the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.1, to request the creation of a new Individual Application Session Context resource specific to the PDU session identified by, for Ethernet type of PDU sessions, the received MAC address of the DS-TT port and for IP type of PDU sessions, the received UE IP address.

NOTE 6: For the time synchronization service, the AF subscription to UE availability for time-synchronization service can occur after the PDU Session establishment has been completed in 5GS. Similarly, for the AF session with required QoS, the indication of the required QoS and TSC Assistance Container information can occur after the completion of the PDU session establishment. In such cases, the PCF sends the notification to the TSCTSF about the detection of a TSC user plane node information during PDU session establishment, but the TSCTSF doesn't have the time synchronization or required QoS available for the PDU session. In this case, the TSCTSF could defer the invocation of the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation till the reception of the subscription to UE availability for time synchronization or the AF session with required QoS occurs.

If the PCF for a UE receives the notification of PDU session establishment over the "{notifUri}/pdu-session" request URI and if the "ApplicationDetectionEvents" feature is supported, the PCF for a UE may trigger the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation described in clause 4.2.6.9 to subscribe to the notification of the application detection;

- 7a. If the AF receives an event notification, the AF replies with a Diameter RAA and may provide within it updated service information. If the AF receives an indication that all service data flows for an AF session are deleted, the AF replies with a Diameter ASA.
8. If the PCF indicates in step 5 that an event for the active application session has occurred, the AF may invoke the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource including the modified service information.
- 8a. If the PCF indicates in step 5a that an event for the active application session has occurred, the AF may send a Diameter AAR to the PCF including the modified service information.
9. The PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" or an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AF.
- 8a, The AF responds by sending a Diameter AAA to the PCF.
10. If the PCF indicates in step 5 that there are no transmission resources for the service, the AF may terminate the AF session by invoking the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource to terminate the AF session. The request may include the events to subscribe to.
- 10a. The AF sends a Diameter STR message to the PCF to indicate that the AF session is terminated.
11. The PCF removes the AF application session context and sends an HTTP "204 No Content". If the PCF need to include the notification of event, it sends an HTTP "200 OK" response.
- 11a. The PCF responds by sending a Diameter STA message to the AF and the AF session is terminated.
12. If the PCF determines that the policy decision depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and such reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.
13. The PCF makes a policy decision. The PCF may determine that updated or new policy information needs to be sent to the SMF in step 22.

When group data rate related policy control is supported by the (H-)PCF and shall apply for a 5G VN Group and the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the (H-)PCF may receive the updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures as defined in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2.

- 14-15. If network slice data rate related policy control applies, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Slice Data Rate information.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the (H-)PCF and shall apply for the 5G VN Group, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation of the UDR (for

"Policy Data") by sending an HTTP PATCH request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to update the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

If the BindingUpdate feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] is supported, the steps 16 to 17 will be performed, otherwise the steps 18 to 21 will be performed.

16. If the UE address changes and the binding information has been previously registered in the BSF, or if the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature is supported, and the PCF registered binding information without including the UE address and UE address is received in step 2 and required for the retrieval of binding information by any NF (e.g. for PDU session binding), the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to update the binding information in the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.7.
17. The PCF receives an HTTP "200 OK" response from the BSF.
18. If the IP address is released for the IP PDU session or the MAC address is not used anymore for the Ethernet PDU session and the binding information has been previously registered in the BSF, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the BSF to delete binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.3.
19. The PCF receives an HTTP "204 No Content" response from the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.3.
20. If a new IP address is allocated for the IP PDU session or a new MAC address is used for the Ethernet PDU session and the BSF is to be used, or if the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature is supported, and the PCF registered binding information without including the UE address and UE address is received in step 2 and required for the retrieval of binding information by any NF, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to create the binding information in the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.2.
21. The PCF receives an HTTP "201 Created" response from the BSF with the created binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.2.
22. The PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the SMF with updated policy information about the PDU Session determined in step 13.

If the feature "EpsUrsp" is supported, the PCF sends in the HTTP "200 OK" response to the SMF the UE policy container and/or the UE policy association triggers received from the PCF for the UE in step 5, if applicable.

5.2.3 SM Policy Association Termination

5.2.3.1 SM Policy Association Termination initiated by the SMF

This procedure is performed when the UE requests to terminate a PDU session or based on some internal triggers in the SMF(e.g. operator policy).

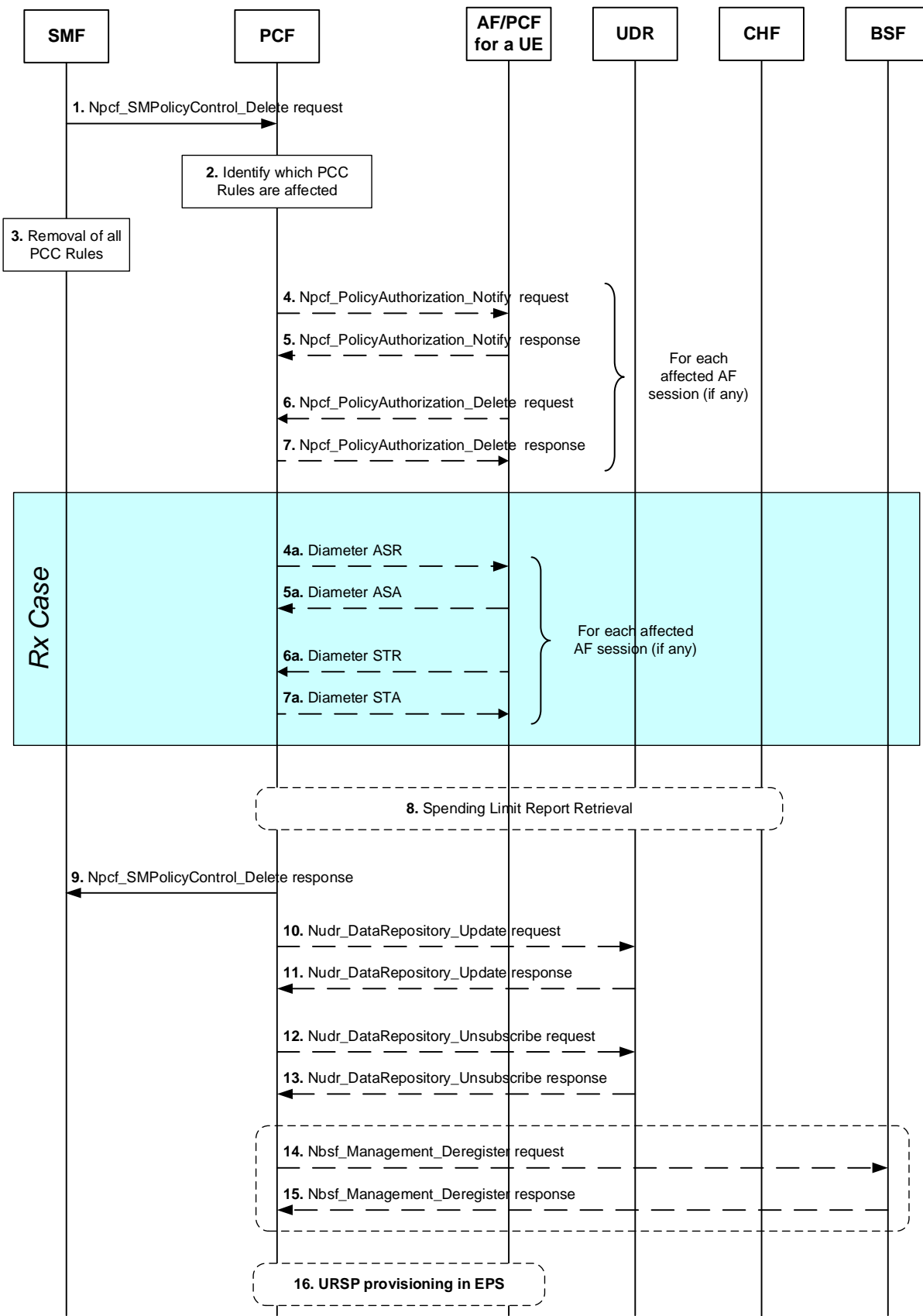


Figure 5.2.3.1-1: SMF-initiated SM Policy Association Termination procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the LBO roaming case, the PCF acts as the V-PCF, and the V-PCF shall not contact the UDR/CHF. In the home routed roaming case, the PCF acts as the H-PCF, and the H-PCF interacts only with the H-SMF.

NOTE 1: For LBO roaming case, session management policy data is not stored in the VPLMN. Therefore, interactions between PCF and UDR in the SM Policy Association Termination procedures do not apply to this scenario.

1. The SMF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual SM Policy" resource to request the PCF to delete the context of the SM related policy as defined in clause 4.2.5.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The request operation may include usage monitoring information (if applicable) and access network information.
2. Upon receipt of Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Delete service operation, the PCF identifies the PCC Rules that require an AF to be notified and removes PCC Rules for the PDU Session.
3. The SMF removes all the PCC Rules which are applied to the PDU session.
4. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notifUri}/terminate" as the callback URI to the AF to trigger the AF to request the application session context termination.

When the PCF as a PDU session determines that the SM Policy Association that is terminating contains the callback URI for the PCF for a UE, the PCF shall send the event of PDU session terminated to the PCF for a UE by sending an HTTP POST request to the "{notifUri}/pdu-session" callback URI as defined in clause 4.2.5.22 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

- 4a. The PCF indicates the session abort to the AF by sending a diameter ASR to the AF.
5. The AF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
 - 5a. The AF responds by sending a diameter ASA to the PCF.
6. The AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource. The request may include the events to subscribe to.
 - 6a. The AF sends a diameter STR to the PCF to indicate that the session has been terminated. The request may include the events to subscribe to.
7. The PCF removes the AF application session context and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AF. If the PCF needs to report usage data or the access network information, it sends an HTTP "200 OK" response. If usage thresholds were provided by the AF earlier, and the PCF has usage data that has not yet been reported to the AF, the PCF informs the AF about the resources that have been consumed by the user since the last report. If the SMF in step 1 reports the access network information and if the AF requested the PCF to report access network information in step 6 and/or the RAN-NAS-Cause feature is supported, the PCF informs the AF about the access network information. The PCF also deletes the subscription to PCF detected events for that AF application Session.
 - 7a. The PCF responds by sending a diameter STA to the AF. If usage thresholds were provided by the AF earlier, and the PCF has usage data that has not yet been reported to the AF, the PCF informs the AF about the resources that have been consumed by the user since the last report. If the SMF in step 1 reports the access network information and if the AF requested the PCF to report access network information in step 6a and/or the RAN-NAS-Cause feature is supported, the PCF informs the AF about the access network information.
8. If this is the last PDU session for this subscriber the Final Spending Limit Report Request as defined in clause 5.3.4 is sent. If any existing PDU sessions for this subscriber require policy counter status reporting, the Intermediate Spending Limit Report Request as defined in clause 5.3.3 can be sent to alter the list of subscribed policy counters.
9. The PCF removes PCC Rules for the terminated PDU Session and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the SMF.
10. The PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource to store the remaining usage allowance in the UDR, if all PDU sessions of the user to the same DNN and S-NSSAI are terminated.

Additionally, if network slice data rate related policy control applies, the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the "SlicePolicyControlData" resource in order to update the Remaining Maximum Slice Data Rate information.

Additionally, when group data rate related policy control is supported by the (H-)PCF and shall apply for the 5G VN Group:

- if the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group is provisioned by the AF, the (H-)PCF may receive the updated Maximum Group Data Rate information of the 5G VN Group from the UDR (for "Subscription Data") as part of the 5G VN Group configuration information, using the same mechanism as the one defined for UE Policy Control procedures as defined in steps 2-3 of clause 5.6.1.2; and
- the (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation of the UDR (for "Policy Data") by sending an HTTP PATCH request, targeting the "GroupPolicyControlData" resource, to update the Remaining Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group, as specified in clause 5.2.19 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

If the feature "SLAMUP" is supported, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to store the "spendLimInfo" attribute in the UDR as defined in clause 5.4.2.23 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] at the termination of the SM Policy Association procedure based on operator policies.

NOTE 1: When the "SLAMUP" is supported, if the "spendLimInfo" attribute is available in the UDR, the PCF could use it for policy decision by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Query service before the PCF retrieves it from the CHF during the SM Policy Association establishment procedure described in clause 5.2.1).

11. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

12-13. To unsubscribe the notification of the PDU session related data modification from the UDR, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

Additionally, to unsubscribe the notification of changes of the AF influence data from the UDR, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualInfluenceDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

- Additionally, to unsubscribe from notifications about IPTV configuration data changes and/or from notifications about AF-provided TNAP ID(s) data changes at the UDR, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualApplicationDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
- The PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications on changes in the Maximum Group Data Rate information for the 5G VN Group by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualSubscriptionDataSubscription" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47] if the PCF has previously subscribed to such notifications.

14. In the case that binding information has been previously registered in the BSF the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the BSF to delete binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.3.

NOTE 2: The PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister for every binding information previously registered in the BSF for the PDU session.

15. The PCF receives an HTTP "204 No Content" response from the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.3.

16. If the feature "EpsUrsp" is supported:

- a. if the PCF created a UE policy association with the PCF for the UE, the PCF may delete the UE policy association as described in clause 5.6.3.1; or

- b. if the PCF did not create a UE policy association with the PCF for the UE, and if the UE is in 5GS, the PCF shall select one of the existing SM Policy Associations that supports the "EpsUrsp" feature, if available, and shall provision the RAT Type change policy control trigger, if not previously provided, as described in clause 5.2.2.2.

5.2.3.2 SM Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF

This procedure is performed when the PCF requests to terminate a SM Policy Association based on some external or internal triggers as described in step 1 below.

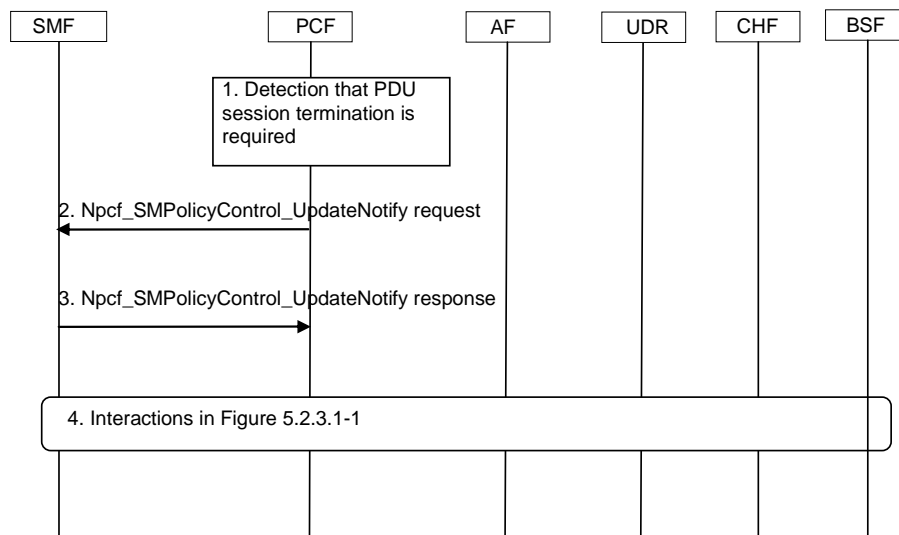


Figure 5.2.3.2-1: PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Termination procedure

This procedure concerns both roaming and non-roaming scenarios.

In the LBO roaming case, the PCF acts as the V-PCF. In the home routed roaming case, the PCF acts as the H-PCF, and the H-PCF interacts only with the H-SMF.

1. The PCF makes policy decisions to terminate a PDU session based on an external trigger, e.g. UE subscription data is deleted, or based on an internal trigger, e.g. operator policy is changed.
2. The PCF sends the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notificationUri}/delete" as the callback URI to trigger the SMF to request the release of the PDU session as defined in clause 4.2.3.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The request includes resource URI of the individual SM policy to be deleted and the cause why the PCF requests the termination.
3. The SMF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF.
4. The PCF interacts with SMF/AF/UDR/CHF/BSF according to Figure 5.2.3.1-1.

5.3 Spending Limit Procedures

5.3.1 General

The PCF may interact with the CHF to make PCC decisions based on spending limits. In Home Routed roaming and Non-roaming case, the (H-) PCF will interact with the CHF in HPLMN.

5.3.2 Initial Spending Limit Report Request

This clause describes the signalling flow for the PCF to request the status of the policy counters available at the CHF, and to subscribe to updates of these policy counters by the CHF. If the PCF provides the list of policy counter identifier(s), the CHF returns the policy counter status per policy counter identifier provided by the PCF, and stores the PCF's subscription to spending limit reports for these policy counters. If the PCF does not provide the list of policy

counter identifier(s), the CHF returns the policy counter status for all policy counter identifier(s), which are available for this subscriber, and stores the PCF's subscription to spending limit reports for all policy counters.

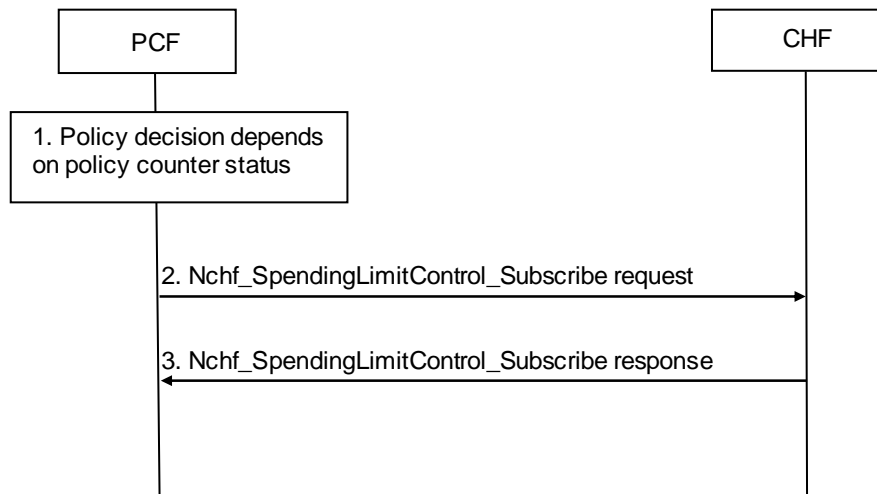


Figure 5.3.2-1: Initial Spending Limit Report Request procedure

1. The PCF retrieves subscription information that indicates that policy decisions depend on policy counter(s) held at the CHF and optionally the list of policy counter identifier(s).
2. The PCF invokes the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe service operation to the CHF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Spending Limit Retrieval Subscriptions" resource if such reporting is not established for the subscriber. The request operation includes the subscriber Id "SUPI", the notification URI and optionally the list of policy counter identifier(s).
3. The CHF responds to the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe service operation including a Subscription Correlation ID and as Event Information provides the policy counter status, and optionally pending policy counter statuses and their activation times, per required policy counter identifier, and stores the PCF's subscription to spending limit reports for these policy counters. When no policy counter identifier(s) was received from the PCF, it provides the policy counter status, optionally pending policy counter statuses and their activation times, for all policy counters, which are available for this subscriber, and stores the PCF's subscription to spending limit reports for all policy counters.

5.3.3 Intermediate Spending Limit Report Request

This clause describes the signalling flow for the PCF to request the status of additional policy counters available at the CHF or to remove the request for the status of policy counters available at CHF. If the PCF provides the list of policy counter identifier(s), the CHF returns the policy counter status per policy counter identifier provided by the PCF.

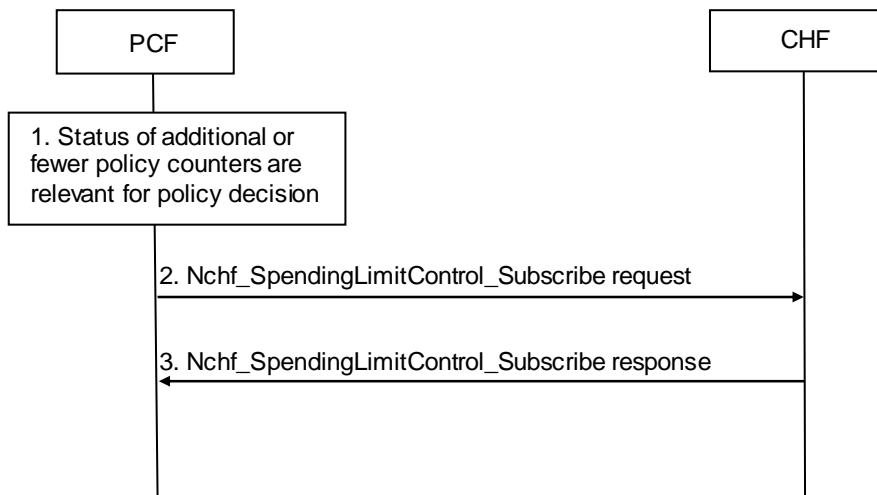


Figure 5.3.3-1: Intermediate Spending Limit Report Request procedure

1. The PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, e.g. PCF determines that policy decisions depend on additional policy counter identifier(s) held at the CHF or that notifications of policy counter status changes for some policy counters are no longer required.
2. The PCF invokes the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe service operation to the CHF by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Spending Limit Retrieval Subscription" resource. The request operation may include an updated list of policy counter identifier(s) that overrides the previously stored list of policy counter identifier(s) and a notification URI.
3. The CHF responds to the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe service operation and provides as Event Information the policy counter status and optionally pending policy counter statuses and their activation times, per required policy counter identifier, and stores or removes the PCF's subscription to spending limit reporting by comparing the updated list with the existing PCF subscriptions. When no policy counter identifier(s) was received from the PCF, it provides the policy counter status, optionally pending policy counter statuses and their activation times, for all policy counter(s), which are available for this subscriber, and stores the PCF's subscription to spending limit reports for all policy counters.

5.3.4 Final Spending Limit Report Request

This clause describes the signalling flow for the PCF to unsubscribe to any future updates of policy counters for a given subscriber by the CHF. It cancels the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF.

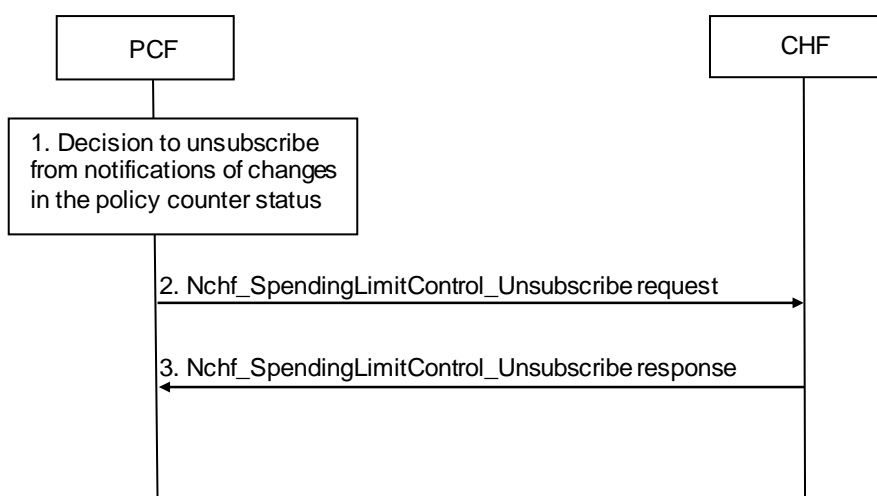


Figure 5.3.4-1: Final Spending Limit Report Request procedure

1. The PCF decides that policy decisions for a given user no longer depend on policy counter(s) to which the PCF has existing subscriptions for status change notification.
2. The PCF sends Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Unsubscribe service operation to the CHF by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Spending Limit Retrieval Subscription" resource to cancel the notification request from the CHF on policy counter status, whereby the "{subscriptionId}" is the identification of the existing subscription to be deleted.
3. The CHF removes the PCF's subscription to spending limit reporting and responds to the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Unsubscribe service operation to the PCF.

5.3.5 Spending Limit Report

This clause describes the signalling flow for the CHF to notify the changes of the status of a subscribed policy counter(s) available at the CHF for that subscriber. Alternatively, the signalling flow can be re-used by the CHF to provide one or more pending statuses for a subscribed policy counter together with the time that have to be applied.

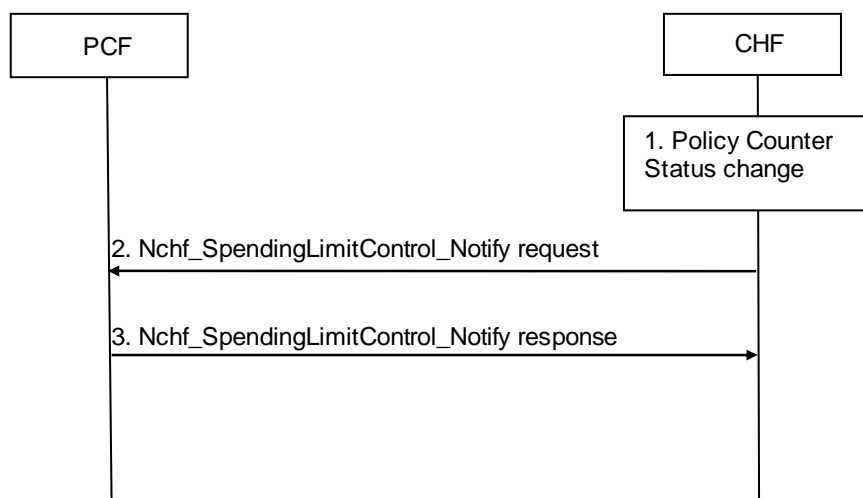


Figure 5.3.5-1: Spending Limit Report procedure

1. The CHF detects that status of a policy counter identifier(s) has changed and the PCF requested notification of changes in the status of a policy counter(s). Alternatively, if the CHF detects a policy counter status will change at a future point in time, the CHF shall be able to instruct the PCF to apply one or more pending statuses for a requested policy counter.
2. When the status of a specific policy counter changes, or the CHF detects that a policy counter status will change at a future point in time and decides to instruct the PCF to apply one or more pending statuses for a requested policy counter, the CHF shall determine the Spending Limit subscription resource(s) impacted by the change (e.g.. the Spending Limit subscription resource(s) bound to those PDU sessions and/or UE/AM policy associations that may have subscribed to status change notifications for the changed policy counter, and/or the Spending Limit subscription resource bound to an AM Policy association that may have subscribed to notification) and invoke Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notifURI}/notify " as the request URI to the PCF associated with each affected PDU session and/or each affected UE/AM policy association. The request operation includes the subscriber Id "SUPI" and in the Event Information the updated policy counter status, optionally including pending policy counter statuses and their activation times for any of the subscribed policy counters.
3. The PCF acknowledges the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Notify service operation. The PCF uses the status of the received policy counter(s) as input to its policy decision to apply operator defined actions, e.g. downgrade the QoS, and it shall ignore an unknown policy counter status report for all unknown policy counter identifiers in the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Notify service operation from the CHF.

5.3.6 Subscription termination request by CHF

This clause describes the signalling flow for the CHF to report the removal of the subscriber to every PCF.

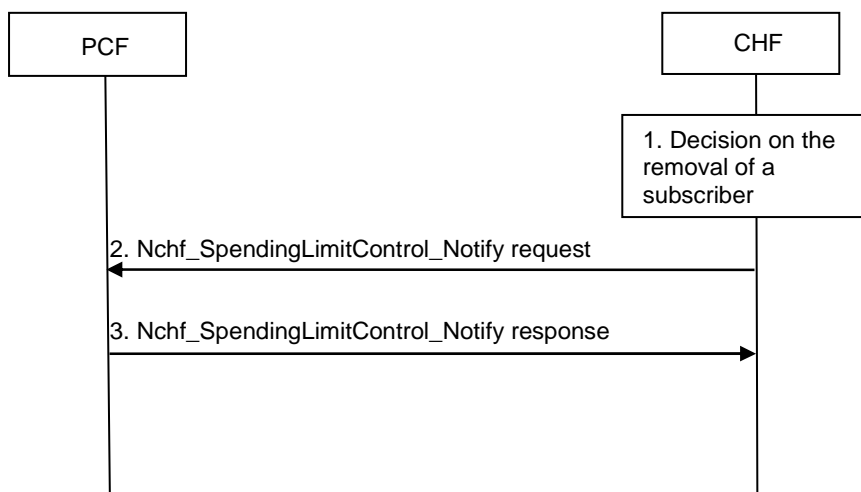


Figure 5.3.6-1: Subscription Termination Request procedure

1. When the CHF decides that a subscriber is removed it may report the removal to the PCF.
2. The CHF may invoke the `Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Notify` service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with "{notifURI}/terminate" as request URI to the PCF. The request operation shall include the subscriber Id "SUPI" and in the subscription termination information "removed subscriber" as Event Information.
3. The PCF removes the subscription to notification of all policy counter statuses for a subscriber identified by the subscriber Id, makes applicable policy decisions and acknowledges the `Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Notify` service operation.

5.4 Network Data Analytics Procedures

5.4.1 General

The PCF may interact with the NWDAF to make PCC decisions based on analytics information as described in 3GPP TS 29.552 [48].

5.4.2 NWDAF Discovery and Selection by the PCF

The PCF performs discovery and selection of NWDAF as follows:

- When the "EneNA" feature is supported as described in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7], the PCF for the UE may select the list of NWDAF instance IDs used for the UE and their associated Analytic ID(s) based on the NWDAF information provided by the AMF as part of the AM Policy Association Establishment and/or Modification procedures as described in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
- When the "EneNA" feature is supported as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the PCF for the PDU Session may select the list of NWDAF instance IDs used for the PDU Session and their associated Analytic ID(s) based on the NWDAF information provided by the SMF as part of the SM Policy Association Establishment and/or Modification procedures as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
- When the NWDAF instance IDs provided by the AMF or SMF do not relate to the Analytics ID(s) required by the PCF, the PCF may perform NWDAF discovery as described in 3GPP TS 29.510 [51].

5.4.3 Policy decisions based on Network Analytics

The following Analytics IDs (observed events as described in 3GPP TS 29.520 [11]) are relevant for Policy decisions: "Slice Load level information", "Service Experience", "Network Performance", "Abnormal behaviour", "UE Mobility", "UE Communication", "User Data Congestion", "Data Dispersion", "Session Management Congestion Control

Experience", "DN Performance", "WLAN performance", "Redundant Transmission Experience" and "PDU Session traffic".

The PCF may subscribe to these events and/or may retrieve the observed events when the information is needed.

In order for the PCF to subscribe to these events, the PCF shall act as NF Service Consumer of the NWDAF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.520 [11] behaving as follows:

- The PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Slice Load Level Information" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "SLICE_LOAD_LEVEL", the "snsais" attribute including the network slice and the "notificationMethod" attribute in "eventSubscriptions" attribute set to "THRESHOLD".

NOTE 1: PCF does not subscribe to event "NSI_LOAD_LEVEL" since the network slice instance of a PDU session is not available in the PCF

- If the feature "ServiceExperience" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Service Experience" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "SERVICE_EXPERIENCE", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute, the "appIds" attribute with the identification of application(s) to which the subscription applies, the "ratFreqs" attribute if the feature "ServiceExperienceExt" is also supported including all the RAT types and/or all the frequencies that the NWDAF received for the application or specific RAT type(s) and/or frequencies where the UE camps and the service experience threshold value(s) for the RAT Type(s) and/or Frequency value(s).
- If the feature "NetworkPerformance" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Network Performance" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "NETWORK_PERFORMANCE", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies within the "intGroupIds" attribute and the "networkArea" attribute with the identification network area to which the subscription applies.
- If the feature "AbnormalBehaviour" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Abnormal Behavior" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "ABNORMAL_BEHAVIOUR", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute and either the "exptAnaType" attribute with the expected analytics or the "excepRequs" attribute with a list of exception Ids with the associated thresholds. Per each Exception Id, it is possible to provide additional information as described in TS 29.520 [11]. Upon receiving Abnormal Behaviour events for the target UE(s) from the NWDAF, the PCF, based on operator policies, may store a Restricted Status for the UE(s) in the UE/AM/SM policy data of the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation as specified in TS 29.519 [12] (see "restrStatus" attribute). Based on the operator policies, network conditions, and additional reports from the NWDAF, the PCF may remove the Restricted Status for the UE(s) by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation as specified in TS 29.519 [12]. The PCF may subscribe to changes of Policy Data by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation as specified in TS 29.519 [12], and determine policies based on the information related to the Restricted Status that it receives from the UDR.
- If the feature "UeMobility" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "UE Mobility" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "UE_MOBILITY", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies within the "supis" or "intGroupIds" attribute and the "networkArea" attribute with the identification network area to which the subscription applies.
- If the feature "UeCommunication" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "UE communication" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "UE_COMMUNICATION", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis" or "intGroupIds" attribute and optionally the "appIds" attribute with the identification of application(s) to which the subscription applies.
- If the feature "UserDataCongestion" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "User Data Congestion" using the

Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "USER_DATA_CONGESTION" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of the target UE to which the subscription applies included in the "supis" attribute and optionally the "networkArea", "congThresholds" attributes with the area of interests and the reporting threshold respectively. If the feature "UserDataCongestionExt" is supported, the PCF may also provide the "maxTopAppUINbr" and/or "maxTopAppDINbr" attributes with the requested maximum number of top applications that contribute the most to the traffic.

- If the feature "Dispersion" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Dispersion" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "DISPERSION", the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute and the "disperType" attribute within the "disperReqs" attribute set to the applicable dispersion analytic type. Optionally, the PCF may include the "networkArea" attribute with the identification network area to which the subscription applies, the identification of the network slice(s) by "snssais" attribute and/or the dispersion analytics requirements in "disperReqs" attribute, which for the requested dispersion type may include dispersion class within "disperClass" set to "TOP_HEAVY". If the PCF is interested in the average data rate in the network slice, the PCF may set the "disperType" attribute within the "disperReqs" attribute set to "DVDA" and it shall provide the network slice within the "snssais" attribute and the "tgtUe" attribute set to "anyUe".
- If the feature "DnPerformance" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "DN Performance" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "DN_PERFORMANCE" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute and optionally the "appIds" attribute with the identification of application(s) to which the subscription applies.
- If the feature "SMCCE" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Session Management Congestion Control Experience" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "SM_CONGESTION" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE to which the subscription applies included in the "supis" attribute and the "dnns" attribute with the identification of the DNN and/or the "snssais" attribute with the identification of the network slice.
- If the feature "WlanPerformance" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "WLAN Performance" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "WLAN_PERFORMANCE" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute. The PCF may provide any of "networkArea", "ssIds" or "bssIds" attributes to which the subscription applies within "wlanReqs" attribute.
- If the feature "RedundantTransmissionExp" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "Redundant Transmission Experience" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "RED_TRANS_EXP" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute. The PCF may provide the identification of network area within "networkArea" attribute, DNNs within "dnns" attribute and other requirements within "redTransReqs" attribute.
- If the feature "UrspEnforcement" is supported as defined in TS 29.520 [11], the PCF may subscribe to notifications of network analytics related to "PDU Session traffic" using the Nnwdaf_EventsSubscription_Subscribe service operation including the "event" attribute set to "PDU_SESSION_TRAFFIC" and the "tgtUe" attribute with the identification of target UE(s) to which the subscription applies included in the "supis", "intGroupIds" or "anyUe" attribute, the PDU Session traffic analytics requirements in "pduSesTrafReqs" attribute, which includes the known Application Identifier, IP Descriptors or Domain Descriptors and the "dnns" attribute with the identification of the DNN and/or the "snssais" attribute with the identification of the network slice. The PCF may include the "networkArea" attribute with the identification network area, to which the subscription applies, and/or an optional list of analytics subsets by "listOfAnaSubsets" attribute with value(s) only applicable to "PDU_SESSION_TRAFFIC" event, if the "EneNA" features is supported.

When the PCF requires the events related to any of these analytics Ids immediately, it shall initiate an Nnwdaf_AnalyticsInfo_Request service operation towards the NWDAF. In this case, the same level of information as

for the subscription to events shall be provided as query parameters in the request, that is, the required event, filter and requirement information shall be provided in the "event-id", "event-filter" and "ana-req" URI query parameters.

Upon reception of any of the events as described above either in a subscription or retrieval request, the NWDAF shall behave as described in TS 29.520 [11].

The subscribing and/or retrieving of analytics information by the PCF from the NWDAF may be triggered by:

- Requests from AF/NEF;
- AM Policy association establishment or modification request from the AMF;
- UE Policy association establishment or modification request from the AMF;
- SM Policy association establishment or modification request from the SMF;
- Notifications received from UDR or CHF on UE subscription change;
- Analytics information received.

NOTE 2: Examples of operator policies where network analytics information from NWDAF is required as inputs for policy decisions are described in clause 6.1.1.3 of 3GPP TS 23.503[4].

NOTE 3: Care needs to be taken with regards to signalling and processing load caused when requesting analytics targeting "Any UE". A PCF preferably limits the analytics requests to a smaller UE set to reduce the load.

5.5 Service Capability Exposure Procedures

5.5.1 General

PCC abilities can be exposed to a 3rd party application server via the NEF.

The following procedures are included in this clause:

1. The procedure of Packet Flow Descriptions management.
2. The procedure of AF traffic routing.
3. The procedure of Background Data Transfer negotiation.
4. The procedure of BDT warning notification.
5. The procedure of Background Data Transfer policy applying.
6. The procedure of IPTV configuration provisioning.
7. The procedure of AF-based service parameter provisioning.
8. The procedure of QoS monitoring.
9. The procedure of AF-triggered dynamically changing AM policies.
10. The procedure of Time Synchronization Exposure.
11. The procedure of Deterministic Networking specific parameter provisioning.
12. The procedure for negotiation for planned data transfer with QoS requirements.
13. PDTQ warning notification procedure

5.5.2 Management of Packet Flow Descriptions

5.5.2.1 AF-initiated PFD management procedure

This clause describes the procedure initiated by the AF for creation, update or removal of packet flow descriptions of the application(s) in operator's network as depicted in figure 5.5.2.1-1.

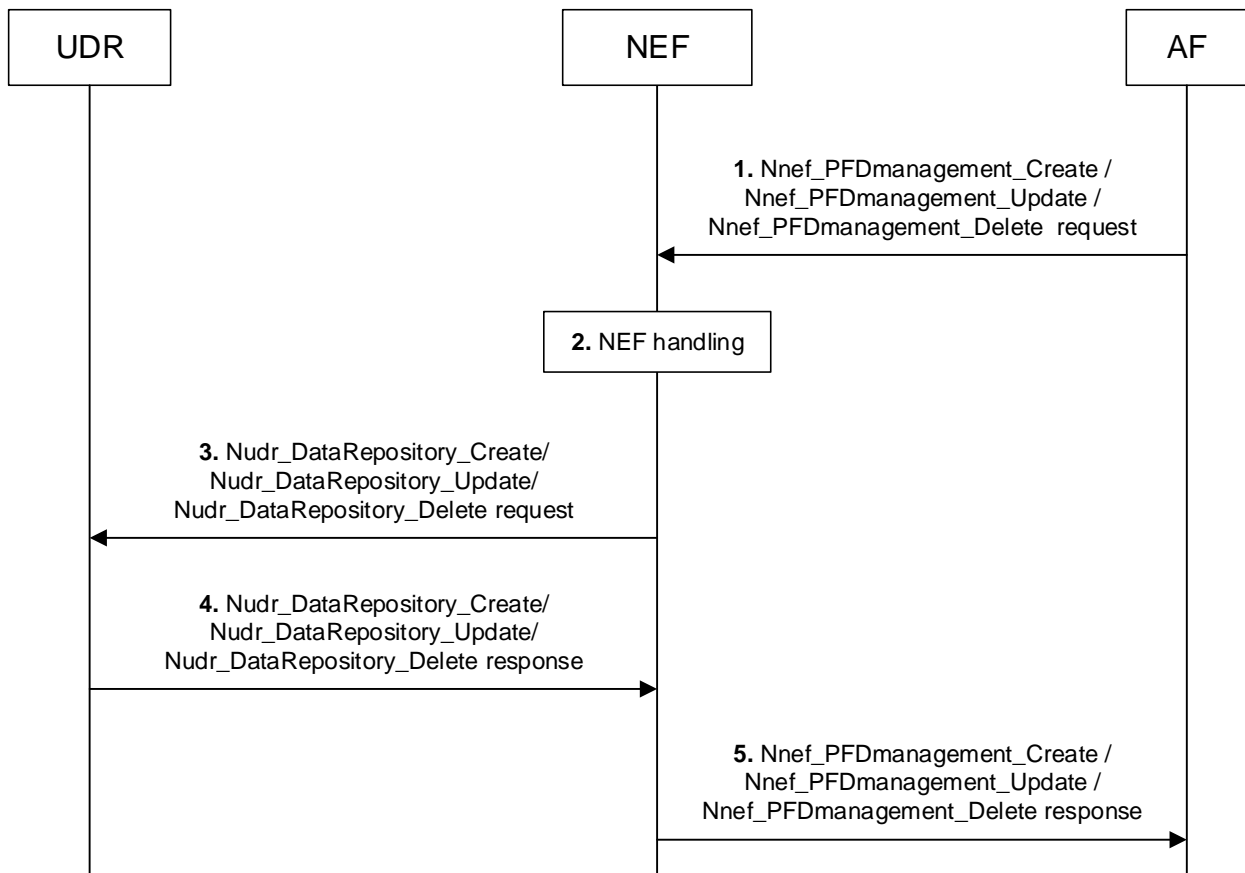


Figure 5.5.2.1-1: AF-initiated PFD management procedure

1. To create PFDs resources for one or more application identifier(s), the AF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Create service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the resource "PFD Management Transactions".

To update the PFDs for an existing individual transaction including one or more application identifier(s), the AF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PUT request to the resource "Individual PFD Management Transaction".

To update the PFDs for an existing application identifier, the AF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the resource "Individual Application PFD Management".

To remove the PFDs for an existing individual transaction "Individual PFD Management Transaction" including one or more application identifier(s), the AF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the resource "Individual PFD Management Transaction".

To remove the PFDs for an existing individual application, the AF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the resource "Individual Application PFD Management".

NOTE 1: For details of Nnef_PFDmanagement_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. The NEF checks whether the application is authorized to perform this request based on the operator policies.

3. The NEF invokes Nudr_DataRepository operation service to the UDR as follows:

- if PFDs creation for a new application identifier was requested in step 1, the NEF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier.
- if PFDs update for an existing application identifier was requested in step 1, the NEF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier.
- if PFDs removal for an existing application identifier was requested in step 1, the NEF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier.

NOTE 2: PFD creation/update/removal in step 1 can include PFD management request for multiple applications, but the UDR service for PFD management only supports one application at a time.

NOTE 3: For details of Nudr_DataRepository_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

4. The UDR shall send the HTTP response message to the NEF correspondingly.

5. The NEF sends Nnef_PFDManagement_Create/Update/Delete Response to the AF.

5.5.2.1A PFD management based on NWDAF analytics

This clause describes the procedure triggered by the NWDAF analytics for creation, update or removal of packet flow descriptions of the application(s) in operator's network as depicted in figure 5.5.2.1A-1.

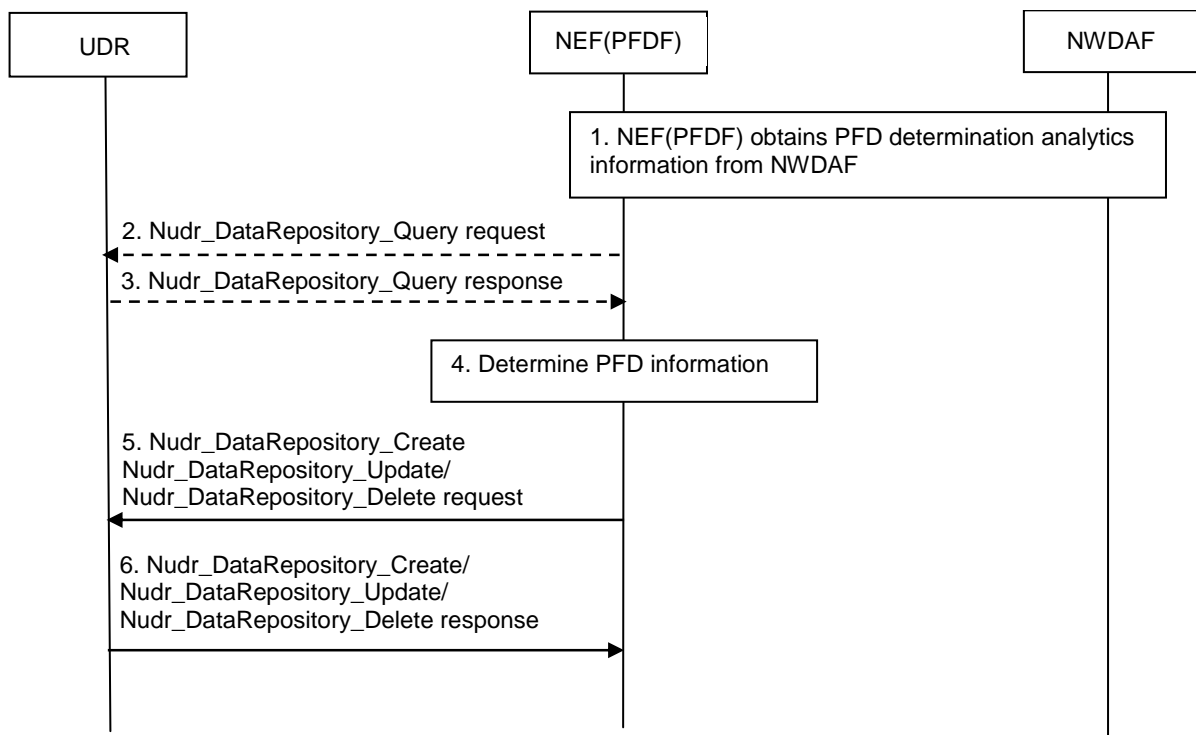


Figure 5.5.2.1A-1: PFD management based on NWDAF analytics

1. The NEF (PFDF) obtains PFD determination analytics information for an application identifier to assist determination of PFDs for known application identifiers, as described in clause 5.7.17 of 3GPP TS 29.552 [48].
2. If the NEF (PFDF) does not have the PFDs in use of the application identifier, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request message to the UDR to the resource "Individual PFD Data" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].
3. The UDR sends an HTTP GET response message including the requested PFDs to the NEF (PFDF).

4. The NEF (PFDF) compares the PFDs from UDR with PFD determination analytics from the NWDAF to determine whether to create/update/delete PFDs for the application identifier. If the NEF (PFDF) unsubscribes from "PFD Determination" analytics in step 1, the NEF (PFDF) determines to delete all PFDs that created based on PFD determination analytics from the NWDAF.
- 5-6. The NEF invokes Nudr_DataRepository operation service to the UDR as follows:
- if the NEF (PFDF) determines to create PFDs for a new application identifier in step 4, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the NEF (PFDF).
 - if the NEF (PFDF) determines to update PFDs for an existing application identifier in step 4 (i.e., add/update/remove PFDs), the NEF (PFDF) invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the NEF (PFDF).
 - if the NEF (PFDF) determines to remove all PFDs for an existing application identifier in step 4, the NEF (PFDF) invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request message to the resource "Individual PFD Data" for the requested application identifier as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the NEF (PFDF).

5.5.2.2 PFD management towards SMF

5.5.2.2.1 PFD retrieval

This procedure enables the SMF to retrieve PFDs for application identifier(s) from the PFDF as depicted in figure 5.5.2.2.1-1 when:

- a PCC rule with the application identifier(s) is provided or activated and PFDs for the corresponding application identifier(s) provisioned by the PFDF are not available at the SMF; or
- the caching timer for an application identifier expires and the PCC Rule for this application identifier is still active.

The SMF may retrieve PFDs for one or more application identifiers in the same Request. All PFDs related to an application identifier are provided in the response from the PFDF to the SMF.

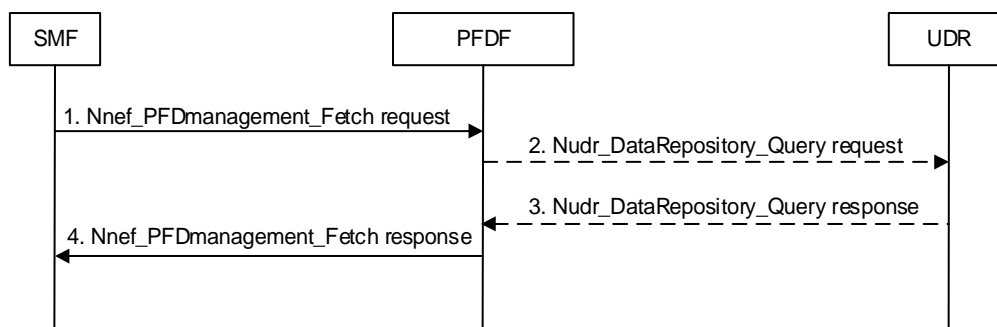


Figure 5.5.2.2.1-1: PFD retrieval by SMF

1. In order to retrieve the PFDs of individual application identifier, the SMF may invoke Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation by sending an HTTP GET request message to the resource "{apiRoot}/nnef-pfdmanagement/v1/applications/{appId}" for the full pull procedure or invoke the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation by sending an HTTP POST request message to the resource "{apiRoot}/nnef-pfdmanagement/v1/applications/partialpull" for the partial pull procedure if the "PartialPull" feature is supported.

In order to retrieve the PFDs of collection of application identifiers, the SMF may invoke the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation by sending an HTTP GET request message to the resource "{apiRoot}/nnef-pfdmanagement/v1/applications" with query parameters indicating the requested application

identifiers for the full pull procedure or invoke the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation by sending an HTTP POST request message to the resource "{apiRoot}/nnef-pfdmanagement/v1/applications/partialpull" for the partial pull procedure if the "PartialPull" feature is supported.

If the "NotificationPush" feature is supported and the PFD retrieval is performed due to a Notification Push received by the PFDF, the PFDF may indicate the PFD(s) operation in "pfdOp" attribute for SMF to determine the invoke action as defined in clause 5.5.2.2.2.

NOTE 1: For details of Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.551 [25].

2. If the requested PFDs are not available in PFDF,

- in order to retrieve the PFDs of individual application identifier, the PFDF shall invoke Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request message to the UDR to the resource "Individual PFD Data".
- in order to retrieve the PFDs of collection of application identifiers, the PFDF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request message to the UDR to the resource "PFD Data" with query parameters indicating the requested application identifiers.

NOTE 2: For details of Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

3. The UDR shall send an HTTP GET response message including the requested PFDs to the NEF.

4. The PFDF sends the "200 OK" response including the PFDs for the requested application identifier(s) to the SMF or sends the "204 No Content" response to indicate that the PFD(s) for all the requested application identifier(s) are not changed since last request if the partial pull procedure was invoked.

5.5.2.2.2 PFD management

This procedure enables the SMF to subscribe the notification of events when the PFDs for application identifier change. The PFDF will notify the SMF to update and/or delete the PFDs for application identifier(s) as subscribed previously.

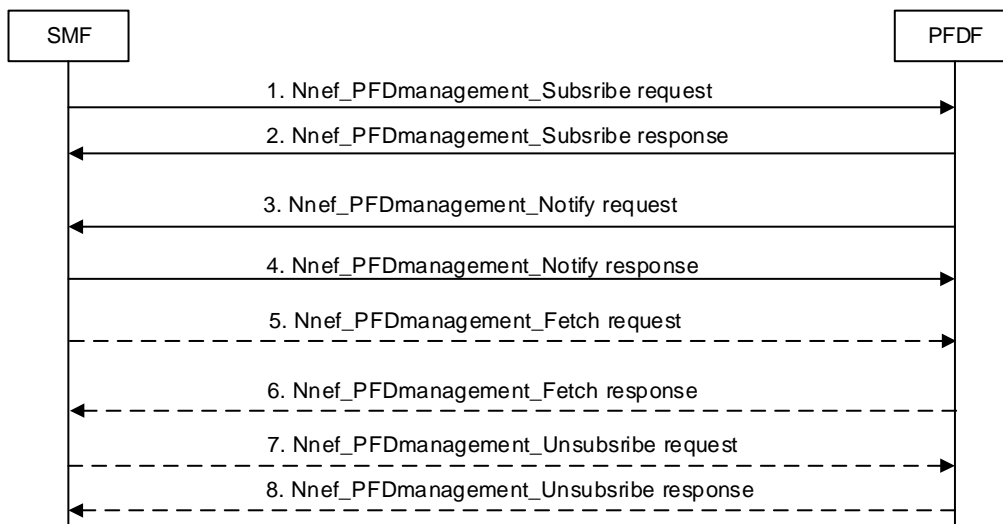


Figure 5.5.2.2.2-1: PFDF management in the SMF

1-2. In order to subscribe to the notification of events when the PFDs for application identifier change, the SMF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST message to the resource "PFD subscriptions". The HTTP POST request includes a notification URI to indicate to the PFDF where to send notifications when events occur. If the subscription is accepted, the PFDF sends the POST response message a "201 Created" to the SMF.

In order to update the existing event subscription and if the feature PfdChgSubsUpdate is supported, the SMF invokes the Nnef_PFDmanagement_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP PUT message to the

resource "Individual PFD subscription". If the request is accepted, the PFDF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the SMF.

- 3-4. The PFDF shall use Nnef_PFDmanagement_Notify service operation to update and/or delete the PFDs for application identifier(s) in the SMF.

The PFDF may send an HTTP POST request message containing one or more PfdChangeNotification data structure to the notification URI "{notifyUri}" as defined in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.551 [25]. The SMF replies to the PFDF with an HTTP POST response message "204 No Content" indicating the successful provisioning of all PFDs or "200 OK" containing failed application identifier(s).

If the NotificationPush feature is supported, the PFDF may send an HTTP POST request message containing one or more NotificationPush data structure to the notification URI "{notifyUri}/notifypush" to request the SMF to retrieve the PFDs from the PFDF and/or remove the PFD(s). The SMF replies to the PFDF with a "204 No Content" status code if the SMF accepted the request.

- 5-6. If the SMF received the HTTP POST request message to request the SMF to retrieve the PFDs from the PFDF, depends on PFDF indication or SMF determination, the SMF may invoke the full pull procedure defined in clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.551 [25] or invoke the partial pull procedure defined in clause 4.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.551 [25] if the "PartialPull" feature is supported, using Nnef_PFDmanagement_Fetch service operation, to retrieve the PFD(s) for the application identifier(s).

- 7-8. The SMF may initiate Nnef_PFDmanagement_Unsubscribe service operation to remove the subscription by sending an HTTP DELETE request message to the resource "Individual PFD subscription". The PFDF replies to the SMF with an HTTP DELETE response message "204 No Content".

NOTE: For details of Nnef_PFDmanagement_Subscribe/Notify/Unsubscribe/Fetch service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.551 [25].

5.5.3 Traffic influence procedures

5.5.3.1 General

As described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] clause 5.6.7 and clause 5.6.16, an AF may send requests to influence SMF routing decisions and influence on N6-LAN traffic steering respectively for User Plane traffic of PDU Sessions. The AF may also provide in its request subscriptions to SMF events (e.g. UP path change).

The following cases are included in this clause:

AF requests targeting an individual UE address: for non-roaming or LBO scenarios, such requests are routed (by the AF or by the (V-)NEF) to an individual (V-)PCF using the BSF or by configuration as described in clause 5.5.3.2.

NOTE 1: Such requests target an on-going PDU Session. Whether the AF needs to use the NEF or not depends on local deployment.

AF requests targeting PDU Sessions that are not identified by an UE address: For such requests the AF shall contact the NEF and the NEF stores the AF request information in the UDR. For non-roaming or LBO scenarios, (V-)PCF(s) that have subscribed to the modification of the AF request information receive a corresponding notification from the (V-)UDR. This is described in clause 5.5.3.3.

NOTE 2: Such requests can target on-going or future PDU Sessions.

NOTE 3: For non-roaming or LBO scenarios, the 5GC functions used in the procedures to influence (V-)SMF routing decisions are assumed to all belong to the same PLMN (HPLMN in non-roaming case or VPLMN in the case of a PDU Session in LBO mode) or to the same SNPN. The 5GC functions used in the procedures to influence on N6-LAN traffic steering are assumed to belong to the Home PLMN or Home SNPN (the AF can have an agreement with the Home PLMN), i.e. this case applies to non-roaming and Home Routed roaming scenarios.

NOTE 4: The roaming scenarios for SNPNs are not supported in this Release.

NOTE 5: AF requests invoked from an AF located in the HPLMN for home routed roaming scenario are not supported.

NOTE 6: For details of Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Create/Update/Delete/AppRelocationInfo service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

NOTE 7: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] and 3GPP TS 29.504 [27].

NOTE 8: For details of the Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify/AppRelocationInfo service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.508 [8].

NOTE 9: For details of the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

NOTE 10: For details of the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

NOTE 11: For details of the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

NOTE 12: For details of the Nnef_TrafficInfluenceData_Create/Update/Terminate and Nnef_UEId/fetch service operations invoked by the 5GC (i.e. not invoked by an AF) refer to 3GPP TS 29.591 [67].

AF requests targeting PDU Sessions that support HR-SBO: when such requests are performed by the AF in the VPLMN (i.e. when there is an SLA with the VPLMN), the AF shall contact the V-NEF and the V-NEF stores the AF request information in the V-UDR. The procedure is described in clause 5.5.3.4. Otherwise (i.e. there is no SLA with the VPLMN), the AF in the HPLMN shall contact the H-PCF (directly or via H-NEF) as described in clause 5.5.3.2. In this case the PCC rules convey VPLMN DNAI(s) information to be provided to the V-SMF.

For such requests the AF shall contact the NEF and the NEF stores the AF request information in the UDR

5.5.3.2 AF requests targeting an individual UE address

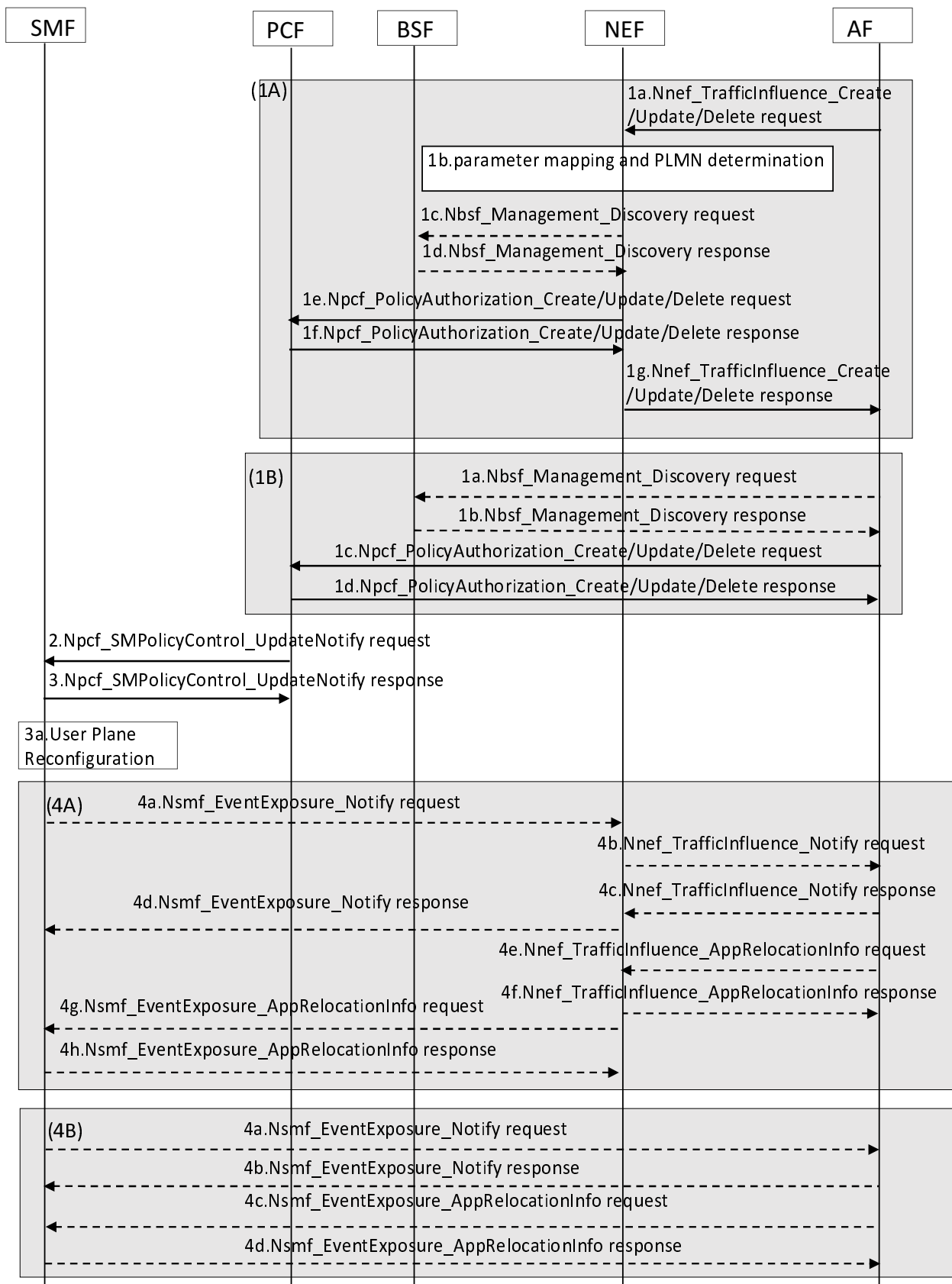


Figure 5.5.3.2-1: Processing AF requests to influence traffic routing for Sessions identified by an UE address

- 1A. The AF sends the AF request to PCF via the NEF.
- 1a-1b. These steps are the same as steps 1-2 in Figure 5.5.3.3-1, with the difference that in step 2 in that figure, if the NEF determines that the HPLMN is the PLMN that the NEF belongs to, the procedure continues as described in this clause.
- 1c-1d. If the PCF address is not available on the NEF based on local configuration, the NEF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation, specified in clause 8.5.4, to obtain the selected PCF ID for the ongoing PDU session identified by the individual UE address in the AF request.
- 1e-1f. The NEF forwards the AF request to the PCF.

When receiving the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Create request in step 1a, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.

When receiving the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Update request in step 1a, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.

- 1g. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.

- 1B. The AF sends the AF request to PCF directly.

1a-1b. If the PCF address is not available on the AF based on local configuration, the AF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation, as specified in clause 8.5.4, to obtain the selected PCF ID for the ongoing PDU session identified by the individual UE address in its request.

1c-1d. To create a new AF request, the AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.

To update an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.

To remove an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.3.

- 2-3. Upon receipt of the AF request, the PCF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] to update the SMF with corresponding PCC rule(s) by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update" as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.

- For the case of 4A, the PCF includes in the PCC rule(s) the Notification URI pointing to the NEF and the Notification Correlation ID assigned by NEF.
- For the case of 4B, the PCF includes in the PCC rule(s) the Notification URI pointing to the AF and the Notification Correlation ID assigned by AF.

- 3a. When the SMF installs PCC rule successfully, the SMF determines whether UP path change needs to be enforced. In this case, the SMF:

- when early notification is required, shall notify as described in step 4 before reconfiguring the User Plane of the PDU session;
- takes appropriate actions to reconfigure the User plane of the PDU Session such as:
 - i. adding, replacing or removing a UPF in the data path to e.g. act as an UL CL or a Branching Point;
 - ii. allocate a new Prefix to the UE (when IPv6 multi-Homing applies);
 - iii. updating the UPF in the target DNAI with new traffic steering rules;

- iv. using the received maximum allowed user plane latency to decide whether edge relocation is needed to ensure that the user plane latency does not exceed the value and whether to relocate the PSA UPF to satisfy the user plane latency
 - v. (re)configure Local PSA for EAS IP address replacement if applicable;
 - vi. establishing a temporary N9 forwarding tunnel between the source UL CL and target UL CL and, if the AF requested so, and "SimultConnectivity" is supported in the concerned interfaces, maintaining simultaneous connectivity temporarily for the source and target PSA until the traffic ceases to exist for an AF indicated period of time or locally configured value;
 - vii. using the FQDN range within the PCC rule if available to match the FQDN received from the EASDF via the Neasdf_DNSContext_Notify request and, if matched, indicating the UE the common EAS address(s) within the PCC rule; and
- when late notification is required, shall notify as described in step 4 after reconfiguring the User Plane of the PDU session.

If the "EASDiscovery" feature is supported, and if UP path is enforced and/or the indication of the EAS rediscovery was received, the SMF indicates to the UE to refresh the cached EAS information as defined in clause 6.3.2 of 3GPP TS 24.501 [20].

If the "SFC" feature is supported and if the SMF received service function chaining control information in the PCC rule, the SMF takes the proper actions to control the traffic steering towards the N6-LAN as defined in clause 5.4.8 of 3GPP TS 29.244[59].

- 4A. In case of 1A, if the SMF observes PDU Session related event(s) that AF has subscribed to, the SMF sends notification to the AF via the NEF.

4a-4d. The SMF invokes Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to the AF via the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request. When receiving the Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation, the NEF performs information mapping (e.g. Notification Correlation ID to AF Transaction ID, etc.), and invokes the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Notify service operation to forward the notification to the AF. If the indication of AF acknowledgement to be expected was included in the PCC rule(s), the SMF may notify with a notification URI for AF acknowledgement as described in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8], and then the NEF also notifies with a URI for the AF acknowledgement as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

4e-4h. When receiving the notification with the URI for AF acknowledgement, the AF acknowledges the notification to the SMF identified by the notification URI via the NEF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

The step is the same as steps 7-14 in Figure 5.5.3.3-1.

- 4B. In case of 1B, if the SMF observes PDU Session related event(s) that AF has subscribed to, the SMF sends notification to the AF directly.

4a-4b. The SMF invokes Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to the AF directly by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}", and the AF sends a "204 No Content" response to the SMF. If the indication of AF acknowledgement to be expected was included in the PCC rule(s), the SMF may provide an URI for the AF acknowledgement as described in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8].

4c-4d. When receiving the notification with the URI for AF acknowledgement from the SMF, the AF invokes Nsmf_EventExposure_AppRelocationInfo service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8] by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{ackUri}" to acknowledge the notification, and the SMF sends a "204 No Content" response to the AF.

5.5.3.3 AF requests targeting PDU Sessions not identified by an UE address

If the AF traffic influence request affects future PDU session, the traffic influence procedure is performed as depicted in Figure 5.5.3.3-1.

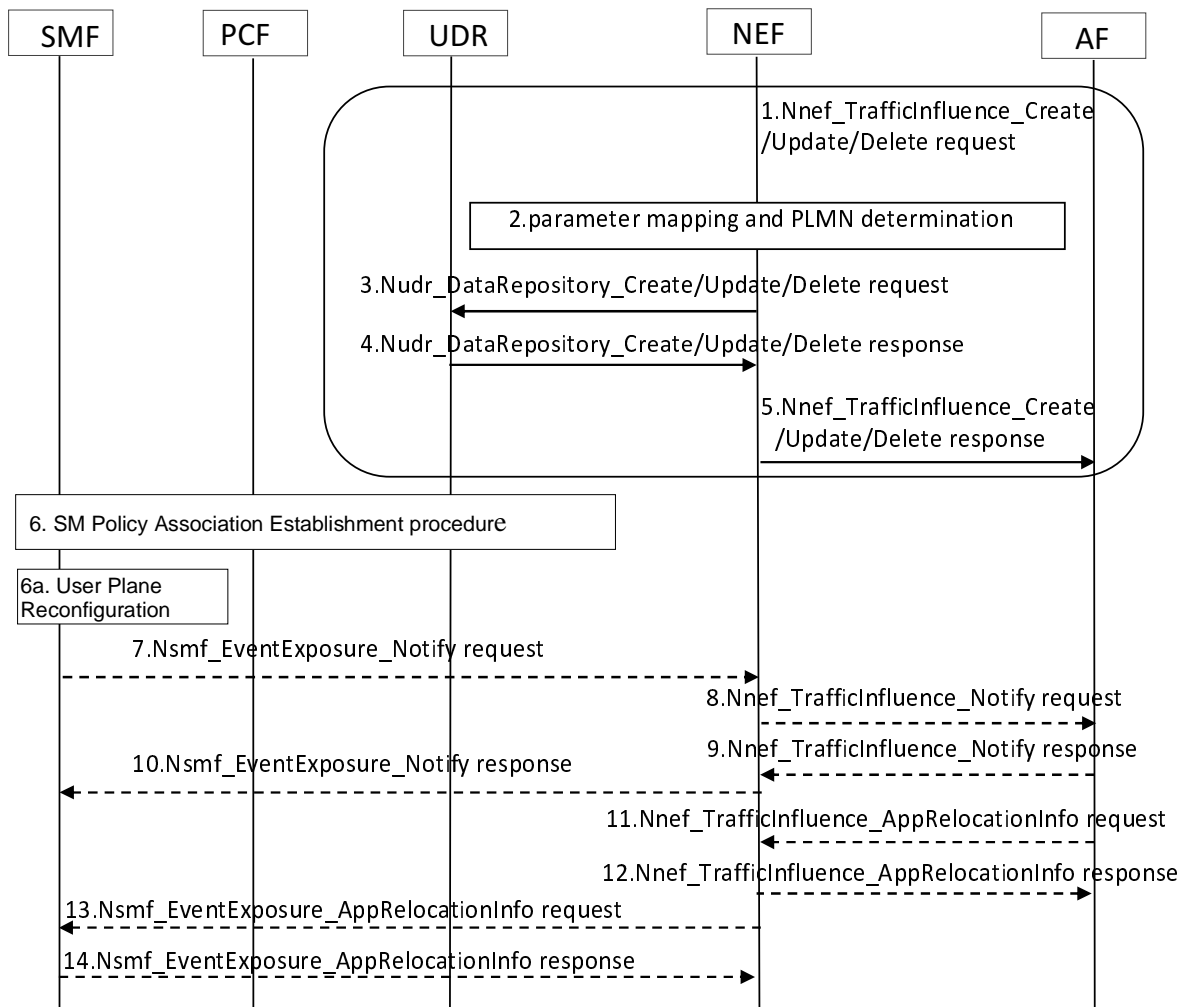


Figure 5.5.3.3-1: Processing AF requests to influence traffic routing for Sessions not identified by an UE address, affecting future PDU session

1. To create a new AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Create service operation as defined in clause 4.4.7 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Traffic Influence Subscription" resource.

To update an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Update service operation defined in clause 4.4.7 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] by sending the HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the "Individual Traffic Influence Subscription" resource.

To remove an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Traffic Influence Subscription" resource.

2. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping from the information provided by the AF into information needed by the 5GC as described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] and 3GPP TS 23.502 [3]. The NEF determines the HPLMN based on the AF request and its local configuration as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24]. If the HPLMN is the PLMN that the NEF belongs to, the procedure continues as described in this clause. Otherwise, the procedure described in clause 5.5.3.4 will be performed instead.

3-4. When receiving the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Create request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation defined in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to store the AF request information in the UDR by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Influence Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "201 Created" response.

When receiving the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Update request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation as defined in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to modify the AF request information in the UDR by sending the HTTP PATCH/PUT request to the resource "Individual Influence Data", and the UDR sends a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response accordingly.

When receiving the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Delete request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to delete the AF requirements from the UDR by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Influence Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "204 No Content" response.

5. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
6. The PCF retrieves the stored AF request in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation during SM Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1).

The PCF generates the PCC rule(s) based on the AF request and provides it to the SMF as specified in clause 4.2.6.2.6.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

- 6a. This step is the same as the step 3a in Figure 5.5.3.2-1.
7. If the SMF observes PDU Session related event(s) that AF has subscribed to, the SMF invokes the Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}". If the indication of AF acknowledgement to be expected was included in the PCC rule(s), the SMF may notify with an URI for the AF acknowledgement as described in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8].
8. When receiving the Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation, the NEF performs information mapping (e.g. Notification Correlation ID to AF Transaction ID), and invokes the Nnef_TrafficInfluence_Notify service operation to forward the notification to the AF by sending the HTTP request to the callback URI "notificationDestination" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24]. If the notification from the SMF includes an URI for the AF acknowledgement, the NEF also notifies with a URI for the AF acknowledgement as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
9. The AF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the NEF.
10. The NEF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the SMF.
- 11-12. When receiving the notification with the URI for AF acknowledgement from the NEF, the AF invokes Nnef_TrafficInfluence_AppRelocationInfo service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{afAckUri}" to acknowledge the notification, and the NEF sends a "204 No Content" response to the AF. If the "ULBuffering" feature is supported, the AF may provide an indication that buffering of uplink traffic to the target DNAI is needed to the NEF.
- 13-14. When receiving the AF acknowledgement from the AF, to forward it to the SMF, the NEF invokes Nsmf_EventExposure_AppRelocationInfo service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{ackUri}", and the SMF sends a "204 No Content" response to the NEF. If the NEF receives the indication that buffering of uplink traffic to the target DNAI is needed and the NEF determines that the SMF supports the "ULBuffering" feature as defined in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8], the NEF provides the indication that buffering of uplink traffic to the target DNAI is needed to the SMF.

If the AF traffic influence request affects ongoing PDU session, the traffic influence procedure is performed as depicted in Figure 5.5.3.3-2.

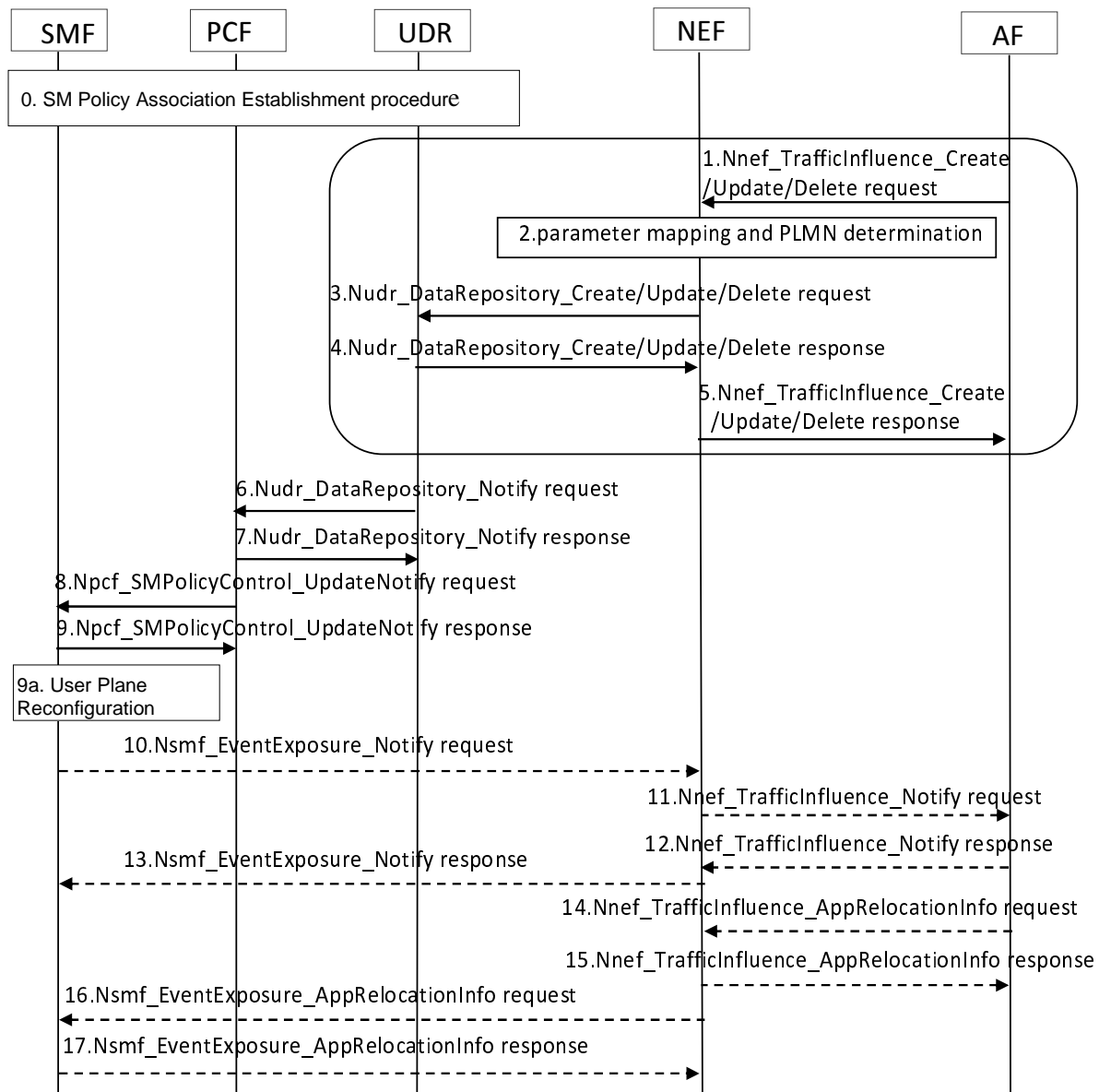


Figure 5.5.3.3-2: Processing AF requests to influence traffic routing for Sessions not identified by an UE address, affecting ongoing PDU session

- 0. For non HR-SBO scenarios, the PCF subscribes to the changes of traffic influence data in the UDR during SM Policy Association establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1).
- 1-5. These steps are the same as steps 1-5 in Figure 5.5.3.3-1, with the difference that in step 2 in that figure, if the NEF determines that the HPLMN is the PLMN that the NEF belongs to, the procedure continues as described in this clause.
- 6-7. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to PCF(s) that have subscribed to modifications of AF requests by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}", and the PCF sends a "204 No Content" response to the UDR.
- 8-9. Upon receipt of the AF request from the UDR, the PCF determines if existing PDU Sessions are potentially impacted by the AF request. For each of these PDU Sessions, the PCF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation to update the SMF with corresponding PCC rule(s) by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update" as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.
- 9a. This step is the same as step 6a in Figure 5.5.3.3-1.

10-17. These steps are the same as steps 7-14 in Figure 5.5.3.3-1.

5.5.3.4 AF requests to influence traffic routing for HR-SBO session

If the AF in VPLMN request to influence the traffic routing of PDU Sessions supporting HR-SBO (e.g., for the purpose of subscription to UP path management events on HR-SBO Sessions in VPLMN), the traffic influence procedure is performed as depicted in Figure 5.5.3.4-1.

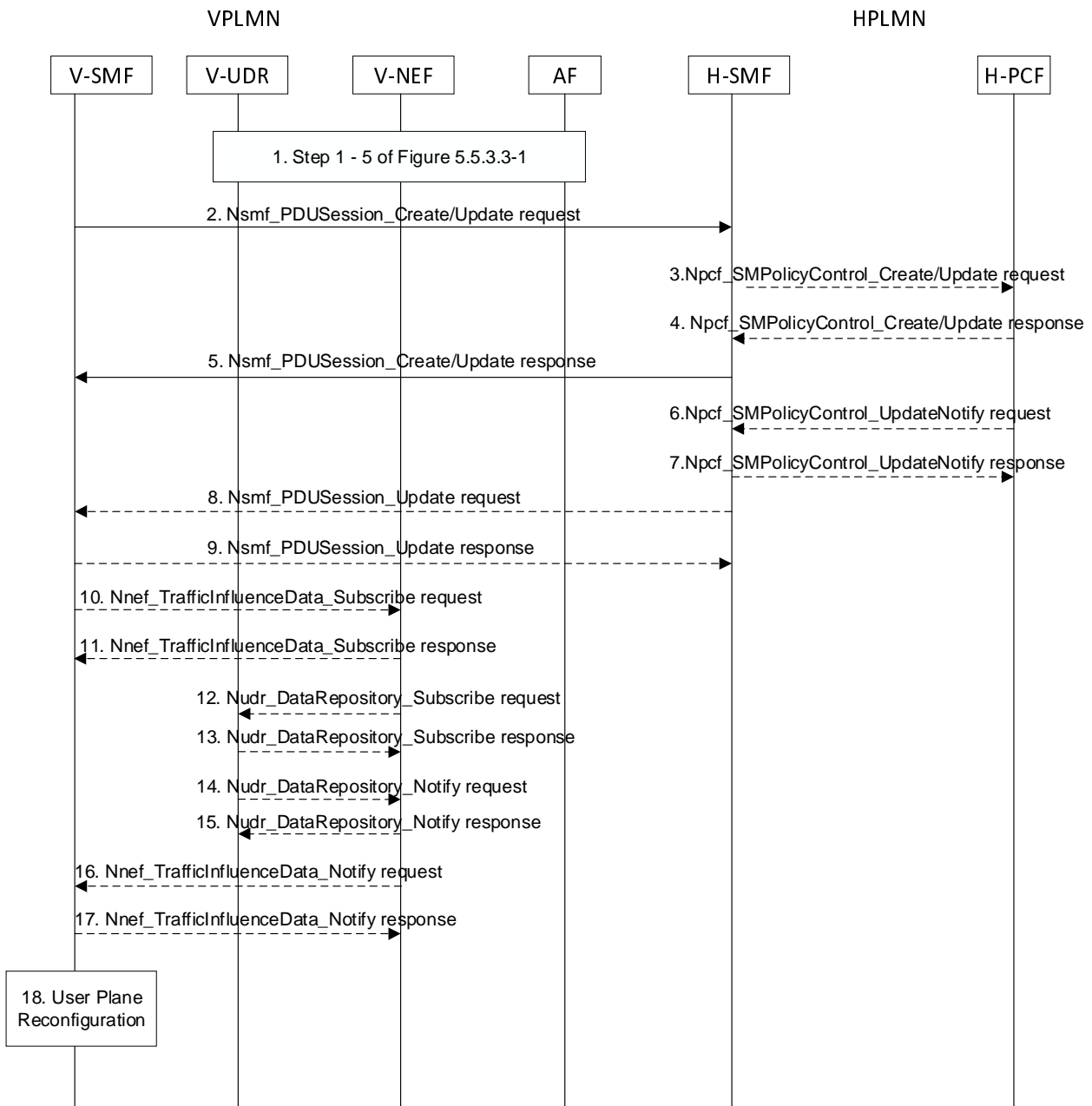


Figure 5.5.3.4-1: Processing AF requests on PDU Sessions supporting HR-SBO

1. The AF requests to influence traffic routing is the same as steps 1 - 5 of Figure 5.5.3.3-1. The V-NEF determines in step 2 in that figure that the HPLMN is different from the PLMN the V-NEF belongs to. The V-NEF derives the roamer(s) information associated to the HR-SBO scenario from the AF request information as defined in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] before storing it in the V-UDR.

NOTE: Depending on the information provided by the AF, the V-NEF can interact with the NRF and then UPF or with the H-NEF to obtain all the required information needed to be stored in the V-UDR. These interactions are not shown in the flow for readability purposes.

2. The V-SMF may include the HR-SBO support indication in Nsmf_PDUSession_Create/Update request as described in 3GPP TS 29.502 [52].
- 3-4. If the "HR-SBO" feature is supported and the HR-SBO support indication was received from the V-SMF in step 2, the H-SMF may include the HR-SBO support indication in the SM policy association create or update request as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2 and 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

When the H-SMF provides the HR-SBO support indication to the H-PCF, the H-PCF of the PDU Session may provide the VPLMN Specific Offloading Policy for the local part of the DN in VPLMN as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
5. The H-SMF may include the VPLMN Specific Offloading Policy in Nsmf_PDUSession_Create/Update response as described in 3GPP TS 29.502 [52].
- 6-7. When the H-SMF provides the HR-SBO support indication to the H-PCF, the H-PCF of the PDU Session may also provide the VPLMN Specific Offloading Policy for the local part of the DN in VPLMN in Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify request.
- 8-9. The H-SMF may include the VPLMN Specific Offloading Policy in Nsmf_PDUSession_Update request as described in clause 5.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.502 [52].
- 10-11. The V-SMF may subscribe to notification of AF request by invoking Nnef_TrafficInfluenceData_Subscribe service operation from V-NEF as defined in clause 4.4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.591 [67].
- 12-13. If the V-NEF receives the subscription from the V-SMF in step 10, the V-NEF subscribes to notification of AF traffic influence request changes by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Influence Data Subscription" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.
- 14-15. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to V-NEF that has subscribed to changes of AF traffic influence requests by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}", and the V-NEF sends a "204 No Content" response to the UDR.
- 16-17. The V-NEF may send notification to the V-SMF which has subscribed to changes of AF traffic influence request by invoking Nnef_TrafficInfluenceData_Notify service operation to the V-SMF as defined in clause 4.4.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.591 [67].
18. This step is the same as the step 3a in Figure 5.5.3.2-1.
19. If the V-SMF observes UP path change events of the HR-SBO PDU session that the AF has subscribed to, the V-SMF sends notification to the AF via the NEF. This step is the same as the steps 4a-4h in Figure 5.5.3.2-1.

5.5.4 Negotiation for future background data transfer procedure

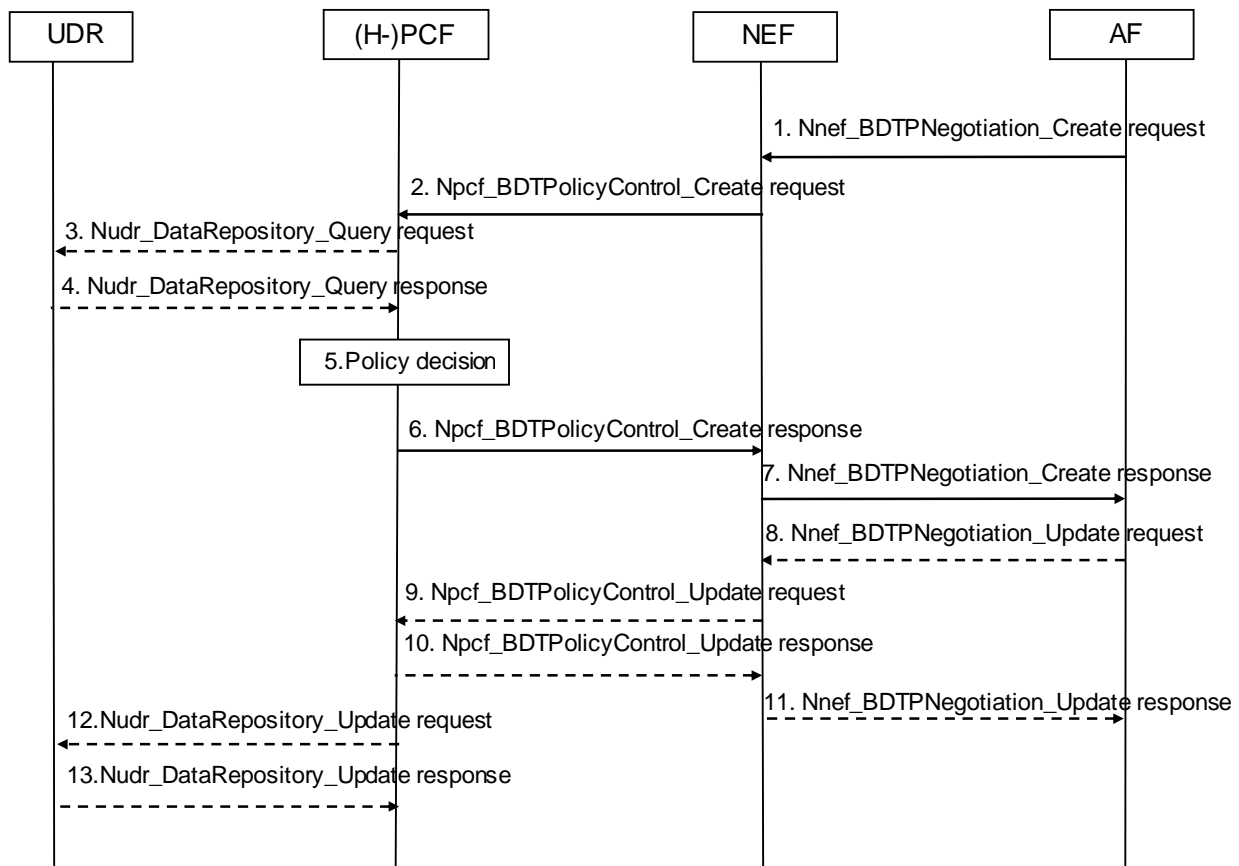


Figure 5.5.4-1: Negotiation for future background data transfer procedure

1. The AF invokes the Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the resource "BDT Subscription" to get background data transfer policies. The AF request shall contain an ASP identifier, the volume of data to be transferred per UE, the expected amount of UEs, the desired time window and optionally, network area information either as a geographical area (e.g. a civic address or shapes), or an area of interest that includes a list of TAs and/or list of NG-RAN nodes and/or a list of cell identifiers. When the AF provides a geographical area, then the NEF maps it based on local configuration into a short list of TAs and/or NG-RAN nodes and/or cells identifiers that is provided to the (H-)PCF.

If the "BdtNotification_5G" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.122 [34] is supported, the AF request may contain a notification URI to request the BDT warning notification as described in clause 4.4.4, 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

NOTE 1: A 3rd party application server is typically not able to provide any specific network area information and if so, the AF request is for a whole operator network.

2. Upon receipt of a Background Data Transfer request from the AF indicating a transfer policy request, the NEF invokes the Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Create service operation with the (H-)PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the resource "BDT policies". The request operation includes the ASP identifier, the volume of data to be transferred per UE, the expected number of UEs, the desired time window, and optionally the network area information (list of TAIs and/or NG-RAN nodes and/or cells identifiers).

If the AF requests the BDT warning notification in step 1, and if the "BdtNotification_5G" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.554 [26] is supported, the NEF provides a notification URI to request the BDT warning notification correspondingly.

NOTE 2: The NEF may contact any PCF in the operator network.

- 3-4. The (H-) PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request to the resource "BdtData", to request from the UDR all stored transfer policies. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the (H-) PCF.

NOTE 3: In case only one PCF is deployed in the network, transfer policies can be locally stored in the PCF and the interaction with the UDR is not required.

5. The (H-) PCF determines one or more transfer policies based on the information received from the NEF and other available information (e.g. network policy, existing transfer policies, network area information, network performance information from the NWDAF and load status estimation for the desired time window).
6. The (H-) PCF sends a "201 Created" response to the Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Create service operation with the acceptable one or more transfer policies and a Background Data Transfer Reference ID.
7. The NEF sends a "201 Created" response to forward the received transfer policies to the AF. If the NEF received only one background transfer policy from the (H) PCF, steps 8-11 are not executed and the flow proceeds to step 12. Otherwise, the flow proceeds to step 8.
8. The AF invokes the Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual BDT Subscription" to provide the NEF with the selected background data transfer policy. The AF may also request to disable/enable the BDT warning notification if the "BdtNotification_5G" feature is supported as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
9. The NEF invokes the Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual BDT policy" to provide the (H-)PCF with the selected background data transfer policy. The NEF may also request to disable/enable the BDT warning notification if the "BdtNotification_5G" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.554 [26] is supported.
10. The (H-) PCF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the NEF.
11. The NEF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the AF.
- 12-13. If the (H-)PCF does not locally store the transfer policy and, if applicable, BDT warning notification information, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request to the resource "IndividualBdtData", to store for the provided ASP identifier the new transfer policy together with the associated background data transfer reference ID, the volume of data per UE, the expected number of UEs and if available the corresponding network area information and if applicable, warning notification information in the UDR. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the (H-)PCF.

NOTE 4: For the details of Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Create/Update service operations used for the procedure defined in this clause, refer to ResourceManagementOfBdt API with the "BdtNotification_5G" feature as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

NOTE 5: For details of Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Create/Update service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.554 [26].

NOTE 6: For details of Nudr_DataRepository_Query/Update service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] and 3GPP TS 29.504 [27].

NOTE 7: When the AF sends an HTTP PUT request to the NEF to update BDT negotiation data different from selecting a transfer policy and/or toggling the BDT warning notification, the procedure defined in this clause applies, and in this case, Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Create service operation is replaced by Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Update service operation in step 1 and step 7.

5.5.4A Modification of BDT warning notification request indication procedure

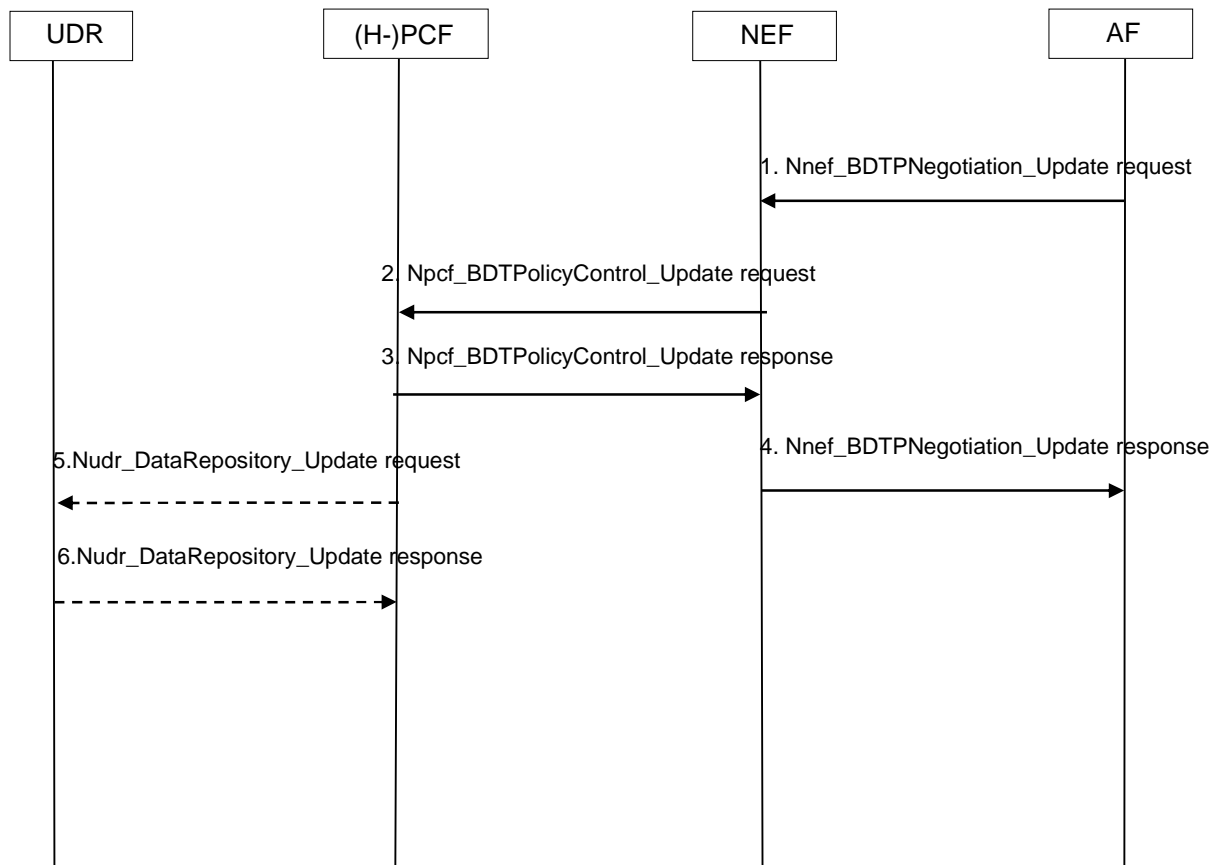


Figure 5.5.4A-1: Modification of BDT warning notification request indication procedure

1. The AF invokes the `Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual BDT Subscription" to disable/enable the BDT warning notification if the "BdtNotification_5G" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.122 [34] is supported as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
2. The NEF invokes the `Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual BDT policy" to disable/enable the BDT warning notification if the "BdtNotification_5G" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.554 [26] is supported.
3. The (H-) PCF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the NEF.
4. The NEF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the AF.
- 5-6. If the (H-)PCF does not locally store the BDT warning notification information, it invokes the `Nudr_DataRepository_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "IndividualBdtData", to store the warning notification information in the UDR. The UDR responds to the (H-)PCF.

5.5.5 BDT warning notification procedure

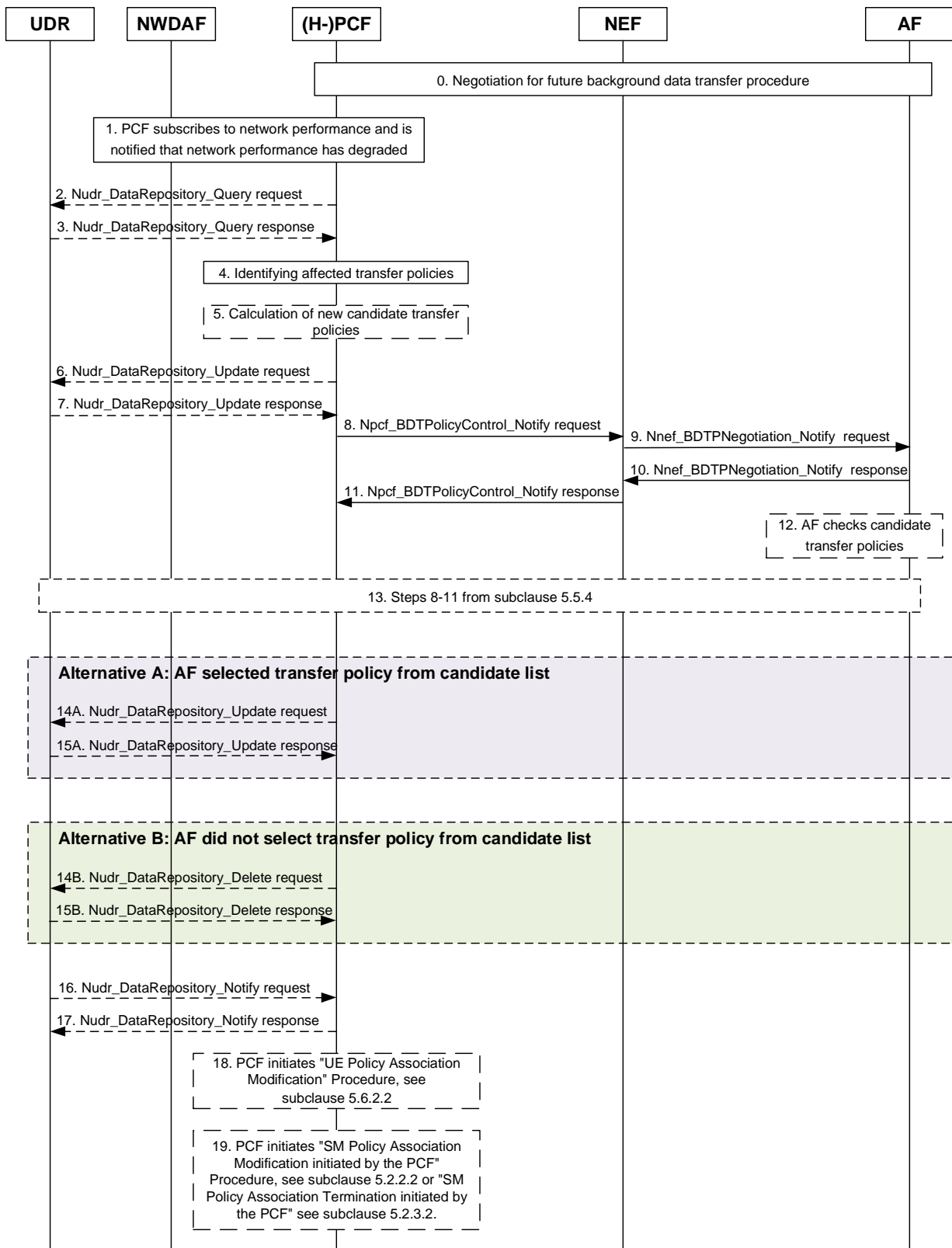


Figure 5.5.5-1: BDT warning notification procedure

0. The AF subscribes to BDT warning notification from the (H-)PCF via NEF during Negotiation for future background data transfer procedure (see clause 5.5.4).

1. The (H-)PCF subscribes to network performance from the NWDAF, and is notified when the network performance in the area of interest goes below the criteria from the NWDAF as described in clause 5.7.5 of 3GPP TS 29.552 [48].
- 2-3. The (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request to the "BdtData" collection resource, to request from the UDR all stored transfer policies. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the (H-)PCF.

NOTE 1: If only one PCF is deployed in the network, transfer policies might be locally stored in the PCF and the interaction with the UDR is not required.

4. The (H-)PCF identifies the transfer policies that are affected by degradation of the network performance and for each affected transfer policy the (H-)PCF determines the ASP of which the background traffic will be influenced by the degradation of network performance and which requested the H-PCF to send the notification.
5. The (H-)PCF decides, based on operator policies, for each of the affected transfer policies whether a list of candidate transfer policies has to be calculated.

NOTE 2: If the (H-)PCF does not find any new candidate BDT policies, the previously negotiated BDT policy is kept and no interaction with the AF occurs i.e. steps 6 to 19 are not performed.

- 6-7. If the (H-)PCF stored the affected transfer policy in the UDR and one or more new candidate BDT policies are calculated, the (H-)PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "IndividualBdtData", to invalidate the affected background transfer policy in the UDR. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response to the (H-)PCF.
8. The (H-)PCF invokes the Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with the BDT warning notification to the Notification URI "{notifUri}".

The BDT warning notification includes the BDT Reference ID of the impacted transfer policy and optionally the time window when the network performance will go below the criteria set by the operator, the network area where the network performance will go below the criteria set by the operator and the list of candidate transfer policies.

9. Upon the reception of the BDT warning notification from the (H-)PCF, the NEF invokes the Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with the BDT warning notification to the Notification URI "{notificationDestination}" as described in clause 4.4.16, 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
10. The AF sends an HTTP POST response to the NEF.
11. The NEF sends an HTTP POST response to the (H-)PCF.
12. When the AF receives the BDT warning notification, the AF checks new candidate background transfer policies.
13. If the AF selected one of the background transfer policies from the received candidate list or decided to indicate that none of the candidate background transfer policies is acceptable, steps 8 - 11 from clause 5.5.4 are executed with the exception that an indication that no background transfer policy is selected is included in the HTTP PATCH request if the AF did not select any of the background transfer policy.
- 14A-15A. If the AF selected one of the background transfer policies from the candidate list and if the (H-)PCF stored the affected transfer policy in the UDR, the (H-)PCF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "IndividualBdtData", to update the UDR with the selected candidate transfer policy. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response to the (H-)PCF.
- 14B-15B. If the AF did not select one of the background transfer policies from the candidate list and if the (H-)PCF stored the affected transfer policy in the UDR, the (H-)PCF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to remove the affected transfer policy from the UDR by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualBdtData" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the (H-)PCF.

NOTE 3: If the AF did not invoke within an operator configurable time the Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Update service operation to indicate if the one of the background transfer policies from the candidate list is selected or not, the (H-)PCF might remove the no longer valid BDT policy from UDR.

16-17. If the PCF subscribed to notification of "IndividualBDTdata" resource data changes in the UDR, i.e. the transfer policies are updated or deleted, the UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to the PCF by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 4: The PCF might be a different one than the PCF handling the BDT negotiation procedures, although in the figure it is represented as the same one for the simplification.

18. If the (H-)PCF identifies the URSP rules to UE need to be updated the (H-)PCF initiates the procedure "UE Policy Association Modification" defined in clause 5.6.2.2.2.

19. If the (H-)PCF identifies that:

- the PCC rules and/or session rules delivered to the SMF need to be updated the (H-)PCF initiates the procedure "SM Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF" defined in clause 5.2.2.2; or
- the SM policy association needs to be terminated the (H-)PCF initiates the procedure "SM Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF" defined in clause 5.2.3.2.

NOTE 5: For the details of Nnef_BDTPNegotiation_Notify service operation used for the procedure defined in this clause, refer to ApplyingBdtPolicy API as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

NOTE 6: For details of Npcf_BDTPolicyControl_Notify service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.554 [26].

NOTE 7: For details of Nudr_DataRepository_Query/Update/Notify/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] and 3GPP TS 29.504 [27].

5.5.6 Background data transfer policy applying procedure

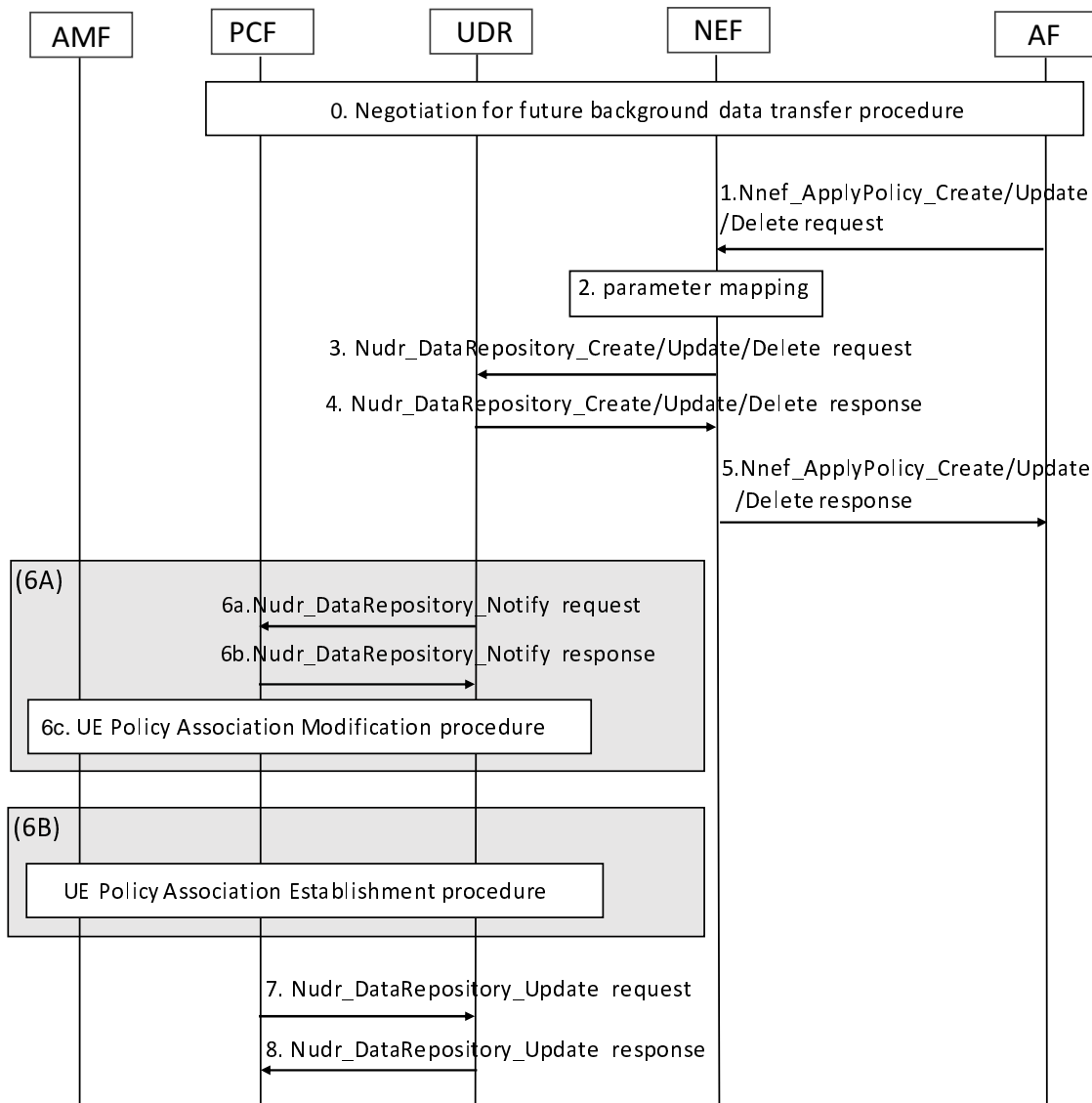


Figure 5.5.6-1: Background data transfer policy applying procedure

0. The AF negotiates policy for background data transfer during Negotiation for future background data transfer procedure (see clause 5.5.4).
1. To apply the negotiated Background Data Transfer Policy to UE or a group of UE, the AF invokes the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Create service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Applied BDT Policy Subscriptions" resource.

To update the applied policy, the AF invokes the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Applied BDT Policy Subscription" resource.

To remove the applied policy, the AF invokes the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Applied BDT Policy Subscription" resource.

NOTE 1: For details of Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping from the information provided by the AF into information needed by the 5GC as described in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3].

3-4. When receiving the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Create request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation to store the AF request information in the UDR by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Applied BDT Policy Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "201 Created" response.

When receiving the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Update request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to modify the AF request information in the UDR by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual Applied BDT Policy Data", and the UDR sends a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response.

When receiving the Nnef_ApplyPolicy_Delete request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to delete the AF requirements from the UDR by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Applied BDT Policy Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "204 No Content" response.

5. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.

6A. The PCF previously subscribed to the changes of Applied BDT Policy Data during UE Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.6.1.2).

6a. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to PCF(s) that have subscribed to the changes of Applied BDT Policy Data by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}".

6b. The PCF sends a "204 No Content" response to the UDR.

6c. The PCF initiates UE Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.6.2.2.2) to send the background data transfer policy to the UE.

6B. The PCF retrieves the Applied BDT Policy Data in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation and sends the background data transfer policy to the UE during UE Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.6.1.2).

7. The PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "SessionManagementPolicyData" resource, to store the BDT reference ID(s) into the PDU session related policy data.

8. The UDR sends a "204 No Content" or "200 OK" response to the PCF.

NOTE 2: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Create/Update/Delete/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] and 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

5.5.7 IPTV configuration provisioning

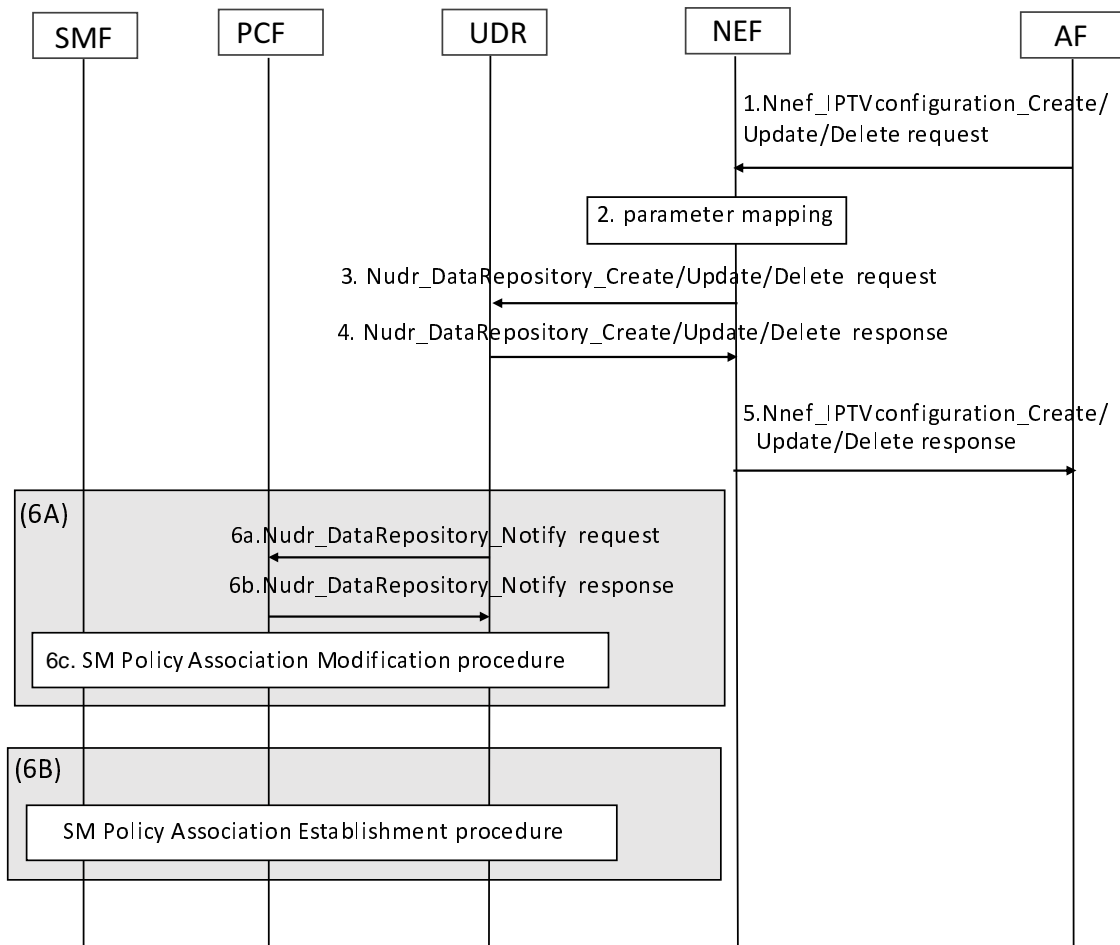


Figure 5.5.7-1: IPTV configuration provisioning procedure

1. To configure IPTV information to UE or a group of UE, the AF invokes the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Create service operation to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "IPTV Configurations" resource .

To update an existing IPTV configuration, the AF invokes the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the "Individual IPTV Configuration" resource.

To remove an existing IPTV configuration, the AF invokes the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual IPTV Configuration" resource.

NOTE 1: For details of Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Create/Update/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping from the information provided by the AF into information needed by the 5GC as described in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3].

3-4. When receiving the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Create request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation to store the IPTV configuration in the UDR by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual IPTV Configuration" resource, and the UDR sends a "201 Created" response.

When receiving the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Update request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to modify the IPTV configuration in the UDR by sending the HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the resource "Individual IPTV Configuration", and the UDR sends a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response.

When receiving the Nnef_IPTVconfiguration_Delete request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to delete the IPTV configuration from the UDR by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual IPTV Configuration" resource, and the UDR sends a "204 No Content" response.

5. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
- 6A. The PCF previously subscribed to the changes of IPTV configuration during SM Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1).
 - 6a. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to PCF(s) that have subscribed to the changes of IPTV configuration by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}".
 - 6b. The PCF sends a "204 No Content" response to the UDR.
 - 6c. The PCF determines PCC rules based on the received IPTV configuration and initiates SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.2.1).
- 6B. The PCF retrieves the IPTV configuration in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation, determines PCC rules based on the retrieved IPTV configuration and send the PCC rules to the SMF during SM Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1).

NOTE 2: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Create/Update/Delete/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] and 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

5.5.8 AF-based service parameter provisioning

5.5.8.1 AF-based service parameter provisioning to HPLMN

Figure 5.5.8.1-1 shows the procedure for service specific parameter provisioning by the AF to HPLMN. The AF uses Nnef_ServiceParameter service to provide the service specific parameters to the HPLMN and the UE. In the roaming case, PCF is replaced by H-PCF, and the AMF interacts with the V-PCF which interacts with H-PCF.

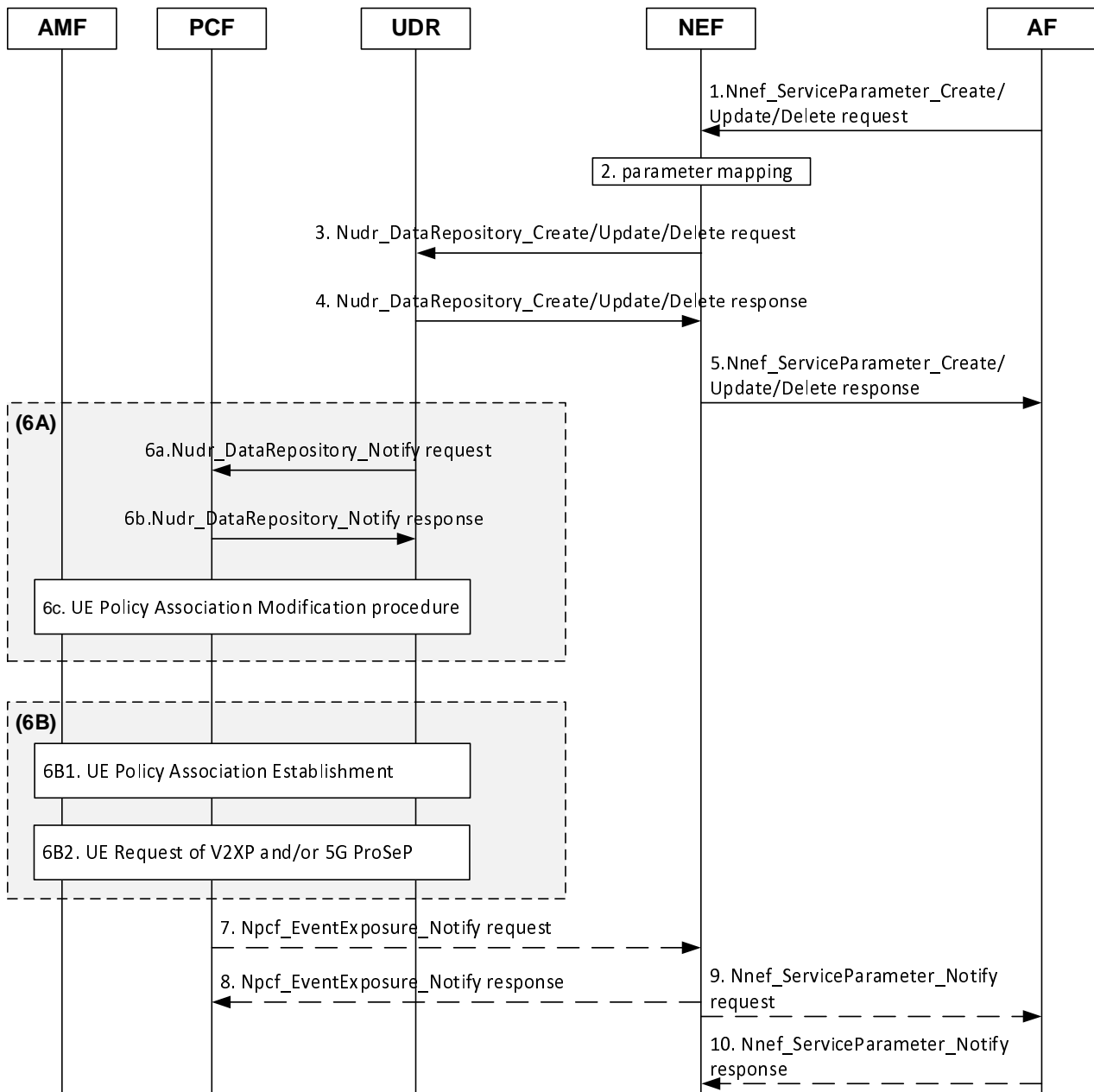


Figure 5.5.8.1-1: AF-based service parameter provisioning procedure to HPLMN

1. To provide service specific parameters (e.g., for URSP influence, for V2X, for A2X, for 5G ProSe, for Ranging/SL (i.e., Ranging and Sidelink)) to a UE or a group of UEs, the AF invokes the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create service operation to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Service Parameter Subscriptions" resource.

To update existing service specific parameters, the AF invokes the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Subscription" resource.

To remove existing service specific parameters, the AF invokes the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Subscription" resource.

The request may include AF subscription information to the report of the outcome of UE Policy procedure.

NOTE 1: For further details on the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create/Update/Delete service operations, refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. Upon reception of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping of the information provided by the AF into associated information needed by the 5GC (e.g. GPSI to SUPI), as described in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3]. The NEF may also support service specific authorization as described in clause 4.4.20 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

3-4. When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation to store the received service parameters in the UDR by sending an HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the UDR replies with a "201 Created" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Update request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to request the modification of the service parameters in the UDR by sending an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the UDR replies with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Delete request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to request the deletion of the service parameters from the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the UDR replies with a "204 No Content" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

5. The NEF sends back an HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.

6A. If the PCF(s) have previously subscribed to the changes of service parameters during the UE Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.6.1), then:

6a. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to the PCF(s) that have subscribed to the changes of service parameters by sending an HTTP POST request to the associated callback URI(s) "{notificationUri}";

6b. The PCF(s) send back "204 No Content" response(s) to the UDR; and

6c. The PCF(s) may derive UE policies (e.g., URSP, V2X policies, A2X policies, 5G ProSe policies, Ranging/SL policies) based on the received service parameters from the UDR, UE subscription data, local operator policies, the previously received requested V2X/5G ProSe/A2X/Ranging/SL policies and UE capabilities (e.g., V2X capabilities) from the AMF, and initiate a UE Policy Association Modification procedure if applicable (see clause 5.6.2.2) to deliver the UE policies to the UE.

6B.

6B1 During UE Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.6.1), the PCF(s) retrieve the service parameters in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation, determine UE policies (e.g., URSP, V2X policies, A2X policies, 5G ProSe policies, Ranging/SL policies) based on the retrieved service parameters from the UDR, UE subscription data, local operator policies and UE capabilities (e.g. V2X capabilities, A2X capabilities and/or 5G ProSe capabilities) from the AMF, and if applicable, deliver the UE policies (including the determined V2XP, A2XP, 5G ProSeP and/or RSLPP) to the UE and corresponding V2X N2 PC5, A2X N2 PC5, ProSe N2 PC5 and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN.

6B2 After registration, when the UE requests V2XP, A2XP, 5G ProSeP and/or RSLPP, the AMF sends to the PCF an Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service operation with the requested V2XP, A2XP, 5G ProSeP and/or RSLPP. The PCF retrieves the service parameter in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation, determines V2XP, A2XP, 5G ProSeP and/or RSLPP based on the retrieved service parameter from the UDR, the received requested V2XP, A2XP, 5G ProSeP and/or RSLPP, UE subscription data, local operator policies and the UE capabilities (e.g., V2X capabilities, A2X capabilities, ProSe capabilities, Ranging/SL capabilities) previously received from the AMF, and delivers the V2XP, A2XP and/or 5G ProSeP to the UE and the corresponding V2X N2 PC5, A2X N2 PC5, ProSe N2 PC5 and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN.

NOTE 2: For further details on the Nudr_DataRepository_Create/Update/Delete/Notify service operations, refer to 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] and 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

7. If the AF subscribed to notifications about the outcome of UE Policies delivery (provision/update/removal) due to Service specific parameter provisioning and the PCF derived the corresponding UE policies, the PCF invokes

the Npcf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to inform the NEF about the outcome of the procedure by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}".

NOTE 3: The Callback URI "{notifUri}" is used for both implicit and explicit subscriptions as described in 3GPP TS 29.523 [49]. Notification URI for implicit subscriptions is retrieved from UDR as described in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

- 8. The NEF sends back "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
- 9. When the NEF receives Npcf_EventExposure_Notify, the NEF performs information mapping as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] and triggers the appropriate Nnef_ServiceParameter_Notify message.
- 10. The AF sends back an HTTP response message to the NEF to acknowledge the notification.

5.5.8.2 AF-based service parameter provisioning to VPLMN

Figure 5.5.8.2-1 shows the procedure for service specific parameter provisioning by the AF to VPLMN

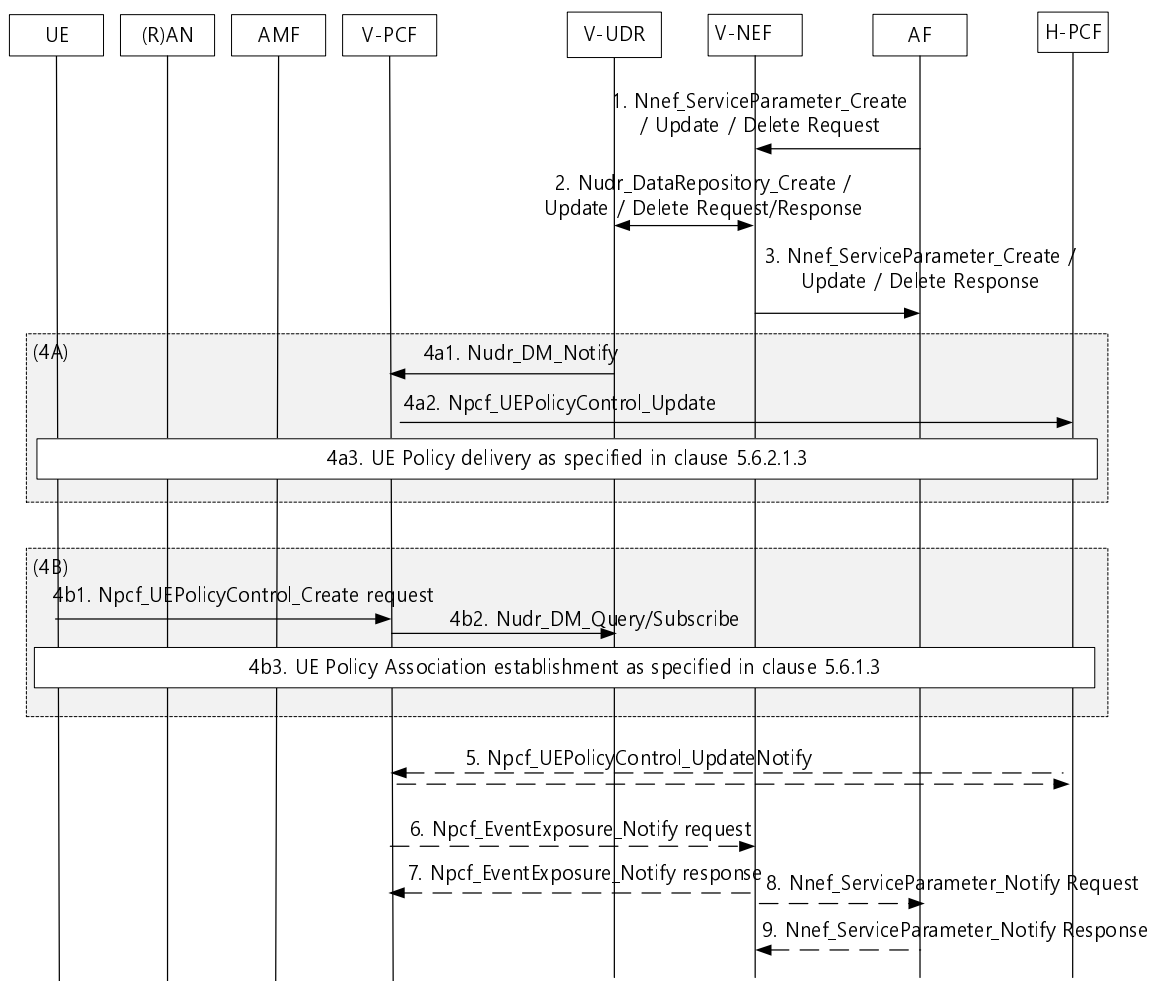


Figure 5.5.8.2-1: AF-based service parameter provisioning procedure to VPLMN

- 1. To provide service specific parameters (e.g. for AF influence on VPLMN-specific URSP rule) for any inbound roamer of the indicated PLMN IDs, the AF invokes the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create/Update/Delete service operation to the V-NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Service Parameter Subscriptions" resource.

The request may include AF subscription information to the report of the outcome of UE Policy procedure.

NOTE 1: For further details on the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create/Update/Delete service operations, refer to 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. Upon reception of the AF request, the V-NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping of the information provided by the AF into associated information needed by the 5GC, as described in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3].

When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Create request, the V-NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation to store the received service parameters in the V-UDR by sending an HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the V-UDR replies with a "201 Created" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Update request, the V-NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to request the modification of the service parameters in the V-UDR by sending an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the UDR replies with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

When receiving the Nnef_ServiceParameter_Delete request, the V-NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to request the deletion of the service parameters from the V-UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the concerned "Individual Service Parameter Data" resource, and the V-UDR replies with a "204 No Content" response (if the processing of the request is successful).

3. The V-NEF sends back an HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
- 4A. If the V-PCF(s) have previously subscribed to the changes of service parameters during the UE Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.6.1), then:
 - 4a1. The V-UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to the V-PCF(s) that have subscribed to the changes of service parameters by sending an HTTP POST request to the associated callback URI(s) "{notificationUri}";

The PCF(s) send back "204 No Content" response(s) to the UDR; and
 - 4a2. For each retrieved Service Parameter resource, the V-PCF forwards to the H-PCF(s) the AF guidance on VPLMN-specific URSP rule information received from the V-UDR for the SUPI(s) that belong to one of the indicated target PLMN Id(s) of inbound roamers by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource(s). The V-PCF determines the SUPI(s) that belong to one of the target PLMN Id(s) of inbound roamers by the longest matching criteria for the MCC and/or MNC of the SUPI and the PLMN Id. The V-PCF includes the mapped HPLMN S-NSSAI values in the request and, if obtained from the V-UDR, the AF subscription to VPLMN-specific URSP rule delivery outcome.
 - 4a3. The H-PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy and indicates the delivery of UE Policies to the UE as defined in clause 5.6.2.1.3, from step 3 to step 9.
- 4B.
 - 4b1. The V-PCF receives the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation as specified in clause 5.6.1.3, step 1.
 - 4b2. If the VPLMNSpecificURSP feature as specified in 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] is supported with the V-UDR, the V-PCF retrieves service parameters with URSP guidance invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation and subscribes to changes in service parameters invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation.
 - 4b3. For each service parameter resource retrieved, if the UE belongs to one of the target PLMN Id(s) of inbound roamers, the V-PCF forwards to the H-PCF the AF(s) guidance on VPLMN-specific URSP rule, includes the mapped HPLMN S-NSSAI values and, if available, AF(s) subscription to the VPLMN-specific URSP rule delivery outcome retrieved from the V-UDR by invoking the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation as specified in clause 5.6.1.3, step 1. The V-PCF determines the SUPI(s) that belong to one of the target PLMN Id(s) of inbound roamers by the longest matching for the MCC and/or MNC of the SUPI and the PLMN Id. The H-PCF triggers the delivery of UE Policies to the UE procedure as described in clause 5.6.1.3, steps 8-26.
5. When the H-PCF received the response of the UE Policy delivery outcome, if the V-PCF indicated that the AF(s) subscribed to notifications about the outcome of VPLMN-specific URSP rules, the H-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI

"{notificationUri}/update" with the corresponding successful or unsuccessful delivery indication as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], clause 4.2.4.7.

6. If the AF subscribed to notifications about the outcome of UE Policies delivery (provision/update/removal) due to Service specific parameter provisioning, the V-PCF invokes the Npcf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to inform the V-NEF about the outcome of the procedure (as indicated by the H-PCF) by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}" as described in 3GPP TS 29.523 [49].

NOTE 2: The Callback URI "{notifUri}" is used for both implicit and explicit subscriptions as described in 3GPP TS 29.523 [49]. Notification URI for implicit subscriptions is retrieved from UDR as described in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

7. The V-NEF sends back "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
8. When the NEF receives Npcf_EventExposure_Notify, the NEF performs information mapping as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] and triggers the appropriate Nnef_ServiceParameter_Notify message.
9. The AF sends back an HTTP response message to the NEF to acknowledge the notification.

5.5.8.3 AF-based service parameter provisioning for TNAP ID

When a UE connects using trusted non-3GPP access procedures via a TNAP collocated with a 5G-RG, the 5GC may apply location dependent policies based on the AF provided TNAP ID(s) for a UE as specified in 3GPP TS 23.316 [70].

Figure 5.5.8.3-1 shows the procedure for AF-based service parameter provisioning for TNAP ID. The procedure follows the provisions of clause 5.5.8.1 with the following differences:

1. The AF uses Nnef_ServiceParameter service to provide the service specific parameters (list of TNAP ID(s)) to the HPLMN of the UE, which are then enforced by the PCF for the PDU session.
2. The target of the AF request is a single UE identified by the GPSI. The request shall not include Any UE or a Group of UE(s) as a target.

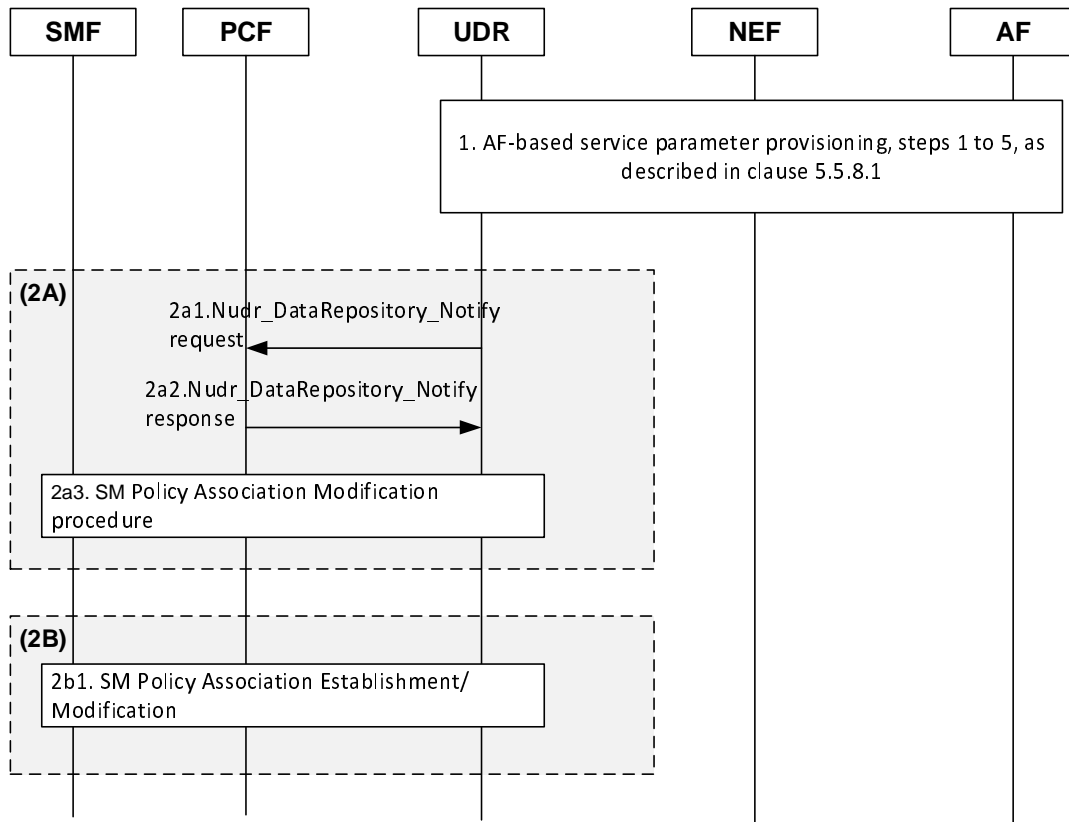


Figure 5.5.8.3-1: AF-based service parameter provisioning procedure of TNAP ID(s) to HPLMN of the UE

1. When the feature "AFGuideTNAPs" defined in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] is supported, to provide/update/remove the list of TNAP ID(s) to the HPLMN of a UE, steps 1 to 5 defined in clause 5.5.8.1 apply.
- 2A. If the PCF(s) support the "AFGuideTNAPs" feature as defined in 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] and have previously subscribed to the changes in the list of AF-provided TNAP ID(s) within Service Parameter Data during the SM Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1), then:
 - 2a1. The UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation to the PCF(s) that have subscribed to the changes of service parameters by sending an HTTP POST request to the associated callback URI(s) "{notificationUri}";
 - 2a2. the PCF(s) send back "204 No Content" response(s) to the UDR; and
 - 2a3. the PCF(s) may derive trusted non-3GPP access location dependent Session Management policies as described in clause C.3.6.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] and initiate a SM Policy Association Modification procedure if applicable (see clause 5.2.2.2) to deliver the derived policies to the SMF.
- 2B.
 - 2b1. During SM Policy Association Establishment procedure (see clause 5.2.1) and/or SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.2), the PCF(s) may derive trusted non-3GPP access location dependent Session Management policies as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] clause C.3.6.3 and deliver the derived SM policies to the SMF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

5.5.9 QoS monitoring procedure

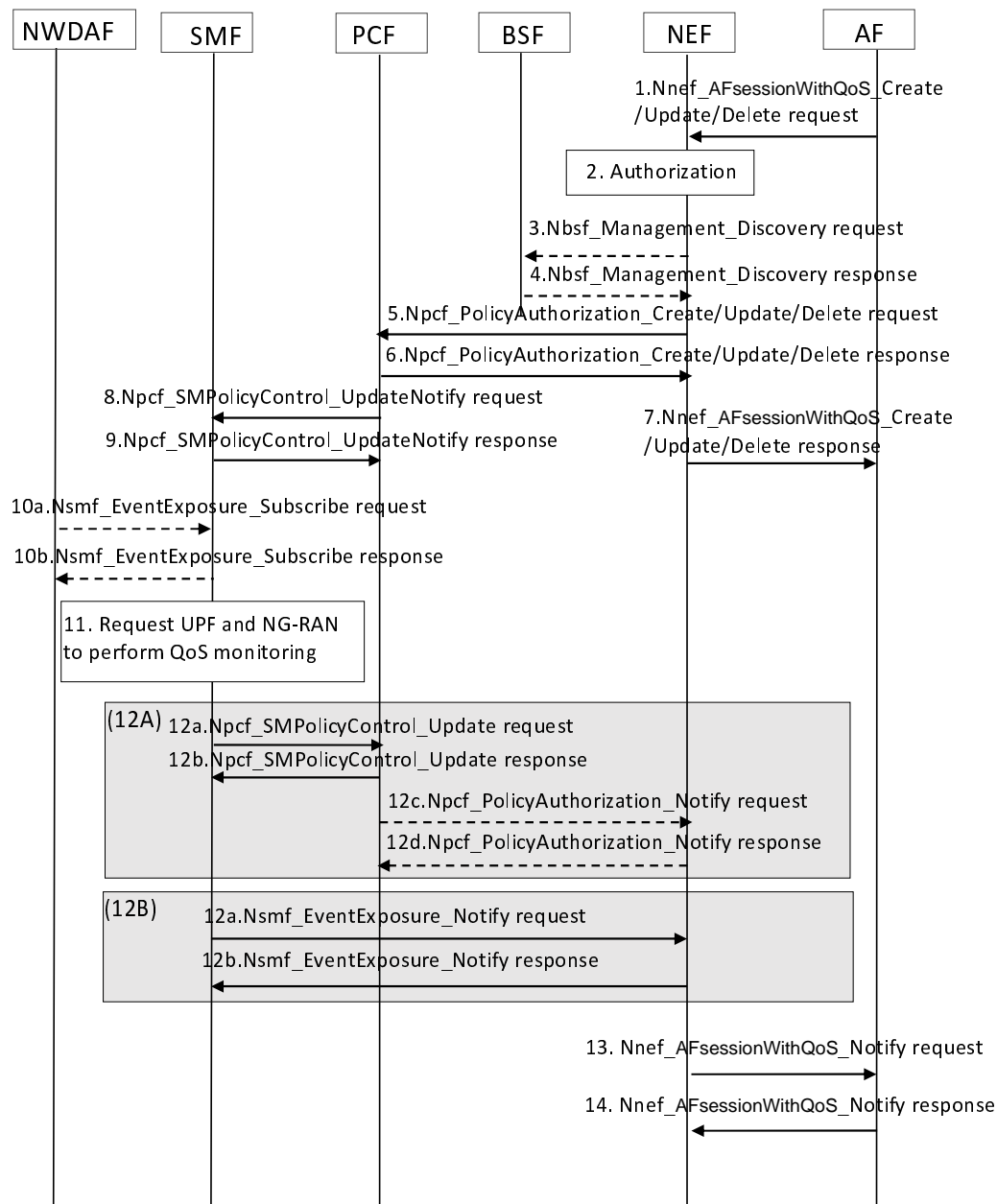


Figure 5.5.9-1: QoS monitoring procedure

1. The AF subscribes to or unsubscribes from the QoS monitoring notification from the PCF via the NEF. The AF may subscribe to the notification of packet delay measurements, congestion and/or data rate monitoring QoS measurements performed by the UPF and/or packet delay variation and/or round-trip time delays over two QoS flows QoS measurements performed by the PCF.

To create a subscription to the QoS monitoring information, the AF invokes the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Create service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "AS Session with Required QoS Subscriptions" resource. If the feature "ExposureToEAS" is supported, the AF may request the direct event notification from the UPF.

To modify an existing subscription to the QoS monitoring information, the AF invokes the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the "Individual AS Session with Required QoS Subscription" resource.

To remove a subscription to QoS monitoring information, the AF invokes the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual AS Session with Required QoS Subscription" resource.

2. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it.
- 3-4. If the PCF address is not available on the NEF based on local configuration, the NEF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation, specified in clause 8.5.4, to obtain the selected PCF ID for the ongoing PDU session identified by the individual UE address in the AF request.
- 5-6. The NEF forwards the AF request to the PCF.

When receiving the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Create request in step 1, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.

When receiving the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Update request in step 1, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.

When receiving the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Delete request in step 1, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource as described in clause 5.2.2.2.3.

7. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
8. Upon receipt of the AF request, the PCF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation to update the SMF with corresponding PCC rule(s) by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update" as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1.

If the AF subscribes to QoS monitoring event for packet delay, and if the feature "EnQoSMon" is supported, data rate monitoring and/or congestion information, the PCF includes the related QoS monitoring information within the corresponding PCC rule(s).

If the PCF determines that the QoS monitoring event notification shall be sent to the NEF via the PCF, the PCF provides the "QOS_MONITORING" policy control request trigger if not previously provided, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the PCF determines that the QoS monitoring event notification shall be sent to the NEF directly from the SMF, the PCF includes the notification URI pointing to the NEF within the "notifyUri" attribute, the notification and the correlation id assigned by the NEF within the "notifyCorreId" attribute, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

When the feature "ExposureToEAS" is supported and if the PCF received from the NEF the indication of direct QoS monitoring event notification, the PCF includes the notification URI pointing to the NEF within the "notifyUri" attribute, the notification correlation id assigned by the NEF within the "notifyCorreId" attribute and the indication of direct QoS monitoring event notification within the "directNotifInd" attribute, if available, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The PCF may also determine that duplicated notification is required, i.e. both direct notification to the NEF (i.e. sent from UPF) and notification to the PCF is required, as specified in 3GPP TS 23.548 [57]. In this case, the PCF also provides the "QOS_MONITORING" policy control request trigger if not previously provided, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the feature "EnQoSMon" is supported and/or the AF subscribes to QoS monitoring event for packet delay variation and/or round-trip time delays over two QoS flows, the PCF includes the related QoS monitoring information for packet delay measurements within the corresponding PCC rule(s), and indicates that QoS monitoring reports are targeted to the PCF by providing the "QOS_MONITORING" policy control request trigger if not previously provided, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the PCF received the NEF indication of direct QoS monitoring event notification for the packet delay, congestion and/or data rate monitoring and the request also included packet delay variation and/or round trip delay over two QoS flows, and the PCF determines that direct notification is not feasible as the PCF has to calculate the packet delay variation and Round-Trip delay over two QoS flows based on the packet delay

measurements, the PCF indicates in the response to the AF/NEF that direct notification is not possible as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

If the PCF deduces based on AF request (e.g. AF application identifier) or based on local configuration, that QoS monitoring report may be required by explicit subscription via Nsmf_EventExposure service as specified in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8], the PCF includes as part of the QoS monitoring data referred from the PCC rule, the Data Collection Application Identifier used to identify the application to be monitored.

If the AF unsubscribes from QoS monitoring event(s), the PCF removes/updates the related subscription information from the corresponding PCC rule(s) as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the AF subscribes to packet delay variation and/or Round-Trip delay over two QoS flows events, the PCF includes the related packet delay monitoring information within the corresponding PCC rule(s).

If the PCF determines that the packet delay variation and/or Round-Trip delay over two QoS flows events notification shall be sent to the NEF via the PCF, the PCF provides the "QOS_MONITORING" policy control request trigger, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], if not previously provided.

If the "QOS_MONITORING" event for packet delay is requested together with the "PACK_DEL_VAR" and/or "RT_DELAY_TWO_QOS_FLOWS" events, the PCF shall provide to the SMF the QoS monitoring policy for packet delay measurements within the corresponding PCC rule(s), and if the PCF received from the NEF the indication of direct QoS monitoring event notification and determines that duplicated notification is required, the PCF shall provide to the SMF the indication of direct notification (together with the NEF notification URI and notification correlation identifier) and the "QOS_MONITORING" policy control request trigger if not previously provided, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

9. The SMF sends an HTTP 200 OK response message to the PCF.

10a. The NF service consumer of UPF events (e.g. NWDAF) may subscribe to the QoS monitoring notification from the UPF by invoking the Nsmf_EventExposure_Subscribe service operation if the "UPEAS" feature is supported. The application identifier and an indication on whether QoS monitoring in the default QoS flow is requested if no PCC rule is active may be provided.

10b. The SMF checks if there is an active PCC rule that includes a Data Collection Application Identifier that matches the received application identifier. If there is an active PCC rule or there is no active PCC rule but the SMF received the indication that the QoS monitoring is requested in the default QoS flow, the SMF may send an HTTP "201 Created" response. Otherwise (no PCC rule is identified and there is no indication that QoS monitoring is requested in the default QoS flow), the SMF rejects the request or accepts it indicating that QoS monitoring is postponed, as described in 3GPP TS 29.508 [8].

11. When the SMF receives the PCC rule, the SMF shall send a QoS Monitoring request to the UPF and NG-RAN as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

When the SMF receives the indication of direct QoS monitoring event notification within the PCC rule, the SMF shall send to the UPF the request to report directly to the NEF the QoS monitoring events. When the NEF receives the QoS monitoring report from the UPF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.564 [56], the NEF invokes the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Notify service operation as described in steps 13-14.

When the SMF receives the subscription to QoS monitoring notification in step 10a and if there is an active PCC rule for the referred application identifier, the SMF shall send to the UPF the request to report directly to the NF service consumer (e.g. NWDAF) the QoS monitoring events as specified in 3GPP TS 29.244 [59]

When the SMF receives the subscription to QoS monitoring notification in step 10a and when it receives the indication that the QoS monitoring report may be done in the default QoS flow and there is no active PCC rule, the SMF shall send an Indication of QoS Flow associated with the default QoS Rule to the UPF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.244 [59]. In this case the notification is directly sent from the UPF.

12A. In case in step 8 the PCF determines that the notification shall be sent to the PCF:

12a-12b. Upon receipt of the QoS monitoring report from the UPF, the SMF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual SM Policy" resource. The PCF sends an HTTP POST response to the SMF.

12c-12d. Upon receipt of the QoS monitoring event notification from the SMF, the PCF checks whether the notification needs to be sent to the NEF as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.3.25, and in that case,

the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the notification to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}/notify". The NEF sends an HTTP POST response to the PCF. Otherwise, these steps do not apply.

12B. In case in step 8 the PCF determines that the notification shall be sent to the NEF directly from the SMF:

12a-12b. Upon receipt of the QoS monitoring report from the UPF, the SMF invokes Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operation to forward the notification to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notifUri}" received in step 8. The NEF sends an HTTP POST response to the SMF.

13-14. Upon receipt of the QoS monitoring information in step 11, the NEF invokes the Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Notify service operation to forward the QoS monitoring information to the AF.

NOTE 1: For details of Nnef_AFsessionWithQoS_Create/Update/Delete/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.122 [34].

NOTE 2: For details of the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create/Update/Delete/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

NOTE 3: For details of the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify/Update service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

NOTE 4: For details of the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

NOTE 5: For details of the Nsmf_EventExposure_Subscribe and Nsmf_EventExposure_Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.508 [8].

5.5.10 AF-triggered dynamically changing AM policies

5.5.10.1 General

As described in clause 6.1.2.6 of 3GPP TS 23.503 [4], an AF may send requests to influence Access and Mobility related policies of a UE. The AF may also provide in its request subscriptions to events (e.g. related to service area coverage changes).

The following cases are included in this clause:

- AF requests targeting an individual UE without conditions related to the application traffic: these requests are routed (by the AF or by the NEF) to the PCF for the UE as described in clause 5.5.10.2.
- AF requests targeting an individual UE, a group of UEs, any UE accessing a combination of DNN and S-NSSAI, or all UEs using a specific application. For such requests the AF shall contact the NEF and the NEF stores the AF request information in the UDR. The PCF(s) for the UE receive a corresponding notification if they had subscribed to the creation / modification / deletion of the AF request information corresponding to the respective UDR Data Keys / Data Sub-Keys. This case is described in clause 5.5.10.3.

This clause applies to non-roaming and LBO roaming, i.e. to cases where the PCF, AF, AMF and SMF belong to the Serving PLMN or AF belongs to a third party with which the Serving PLMN has an agreement.

5.5.10.2 Access and Mobility policy authorization requests targeting an individual UE

This procedure concerns only non-roaming scenarios, i.e. to cases where the involved entities serving the UE (i.e. NEF, PCF, BSF, AMF) belong to the home PLMN. The AF may belong to the home PLMN (trusted AF) or to a third party (untrusted AF).

This procedure is used for individual UEs when the request shall be applied independently of conditions related to the application traffic. The AF may interact with NFs of the Core Network either directly or via the NEF. The procedure for the NEF-mediated case is described in Figure 5.5.10.2-1, while the procedure for the direct case is described in Figure 5.5.10.2-2.

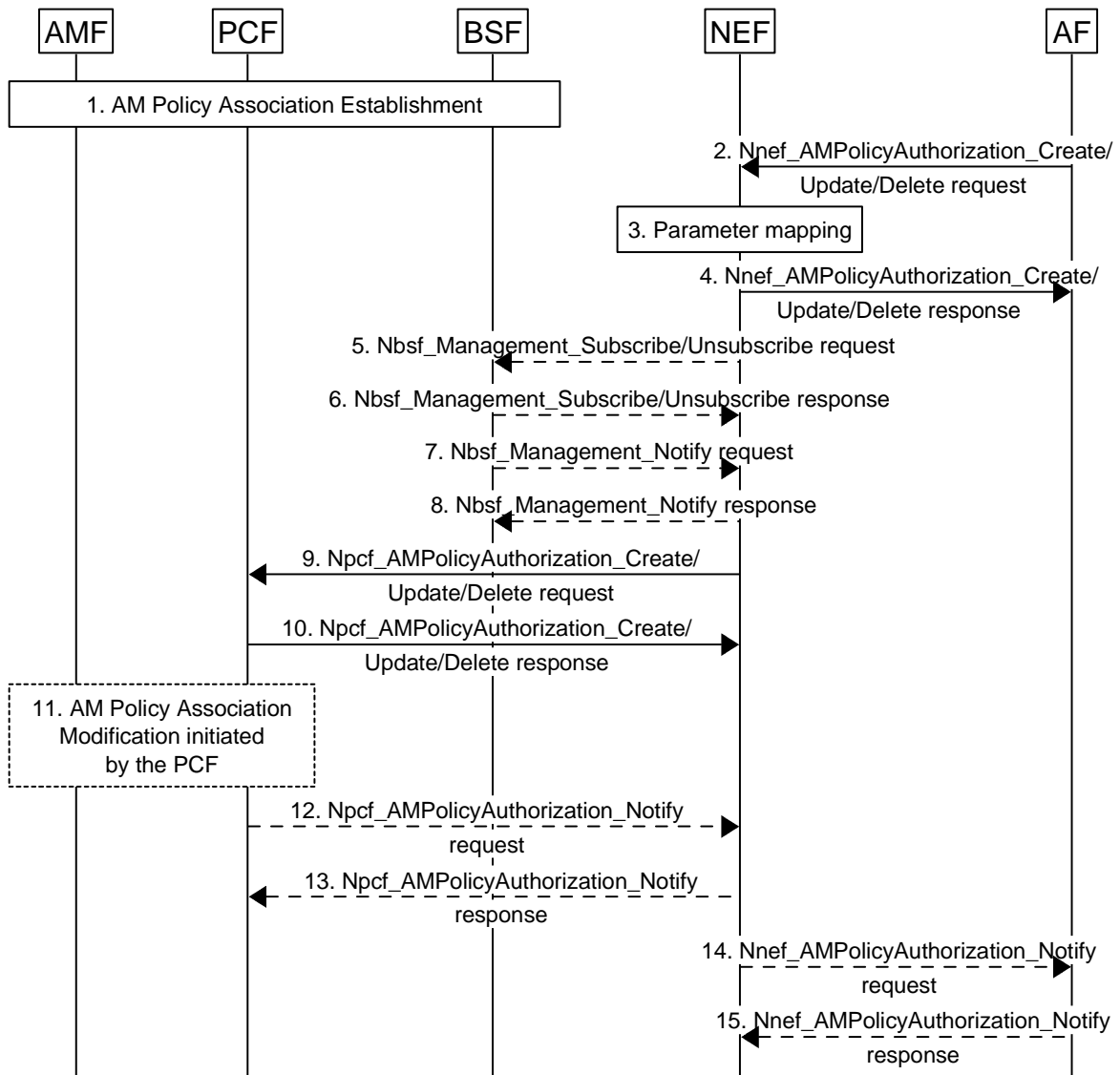


Figure 5.5.10.2-1: Processing NEF-mediated AF requests for Access and Mobility related policy authorization for a UE

1. An AM Policy Association is established as described in clause 5.1.1. This step can occur at any time before step 7.

2. To create a new AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application AM Contexts" resource as described in clause 4.4.26.2 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

To update an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.4.26.3 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

To remove an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.4.26.4 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

3. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it, stores it, and performs the mapping from the information provided by the AF into information needed by the 5GC (e.g. translate a GPSI into a SUPI) as described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] and 3GPP TS 23.502 [3].

4. The NEF responds to the AF request creation, update, or deletion as described respectively in clauses 4.4.26.2, 4.4.26.3, or 4.4.26.4 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

If the creation or update request included the subscription to event(s) together with the indication of immediate reporting of the currently available values of the subscribed events, the NEF includes in the response the applicable event(s) information, if available, as specified in clauses 4.4.26.2, or 4.4.26.4 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24]. In this case, the response is deferred after step 10.

5. The NEF may subscribe to (or unsubscribe from) the BSF using Nbsf_Management_Subscribe (or Nbsf_Management_Unsubscribe) to be informed about the PCF for a UE of the UE targeted in the AF request received in step 2, as described in clause 4.2.6 (for subscribing) or clause 4.2.7 (for unsubscribing) of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
6. The BSF responds by confirming the received request and, in the case of subscription, including the existing PCF for a UE registration in the response, if found, as described in clause 4.2.6.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
7. The BSF notifies the NEF once there is a PCF for a UE registration for the UE indicated in the subscription as described in clause 4.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
8. The NEF confirms the received notification by sending a "204 No Content" response as described in clause 4.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
9. The NEF forwards the AF request to the PCF.

If the NEF received the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create request in step 2, the NEF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application AM Contexts" resource as described in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

If the NEF received the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Update request in step 2, the NEF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

If the NEF received the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Delete request in step 2, the NEF invokes the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

10. The PCF responds to the creation, update, or deletion request as described respectively in clauses 4.2.2, 4.2.3, or 4.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

If the creation or update request included the subscription to event(s) together with the indication of immediate reporting of the currently available values of the subscribed events, the PCF includes in the response the applicable event(s) information, if available, as specified respectively in clauses 4.2.2 or 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

11. AM Policy Association modification initiated by the PCF may be performed as described in clause 5.1.2.2.
- 12-13. If an event (e.g. service coverage area change) occurs to which the NEF has previously subscribed, the PCF notifies the NEF using the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI included in the subscription, and the NEF responds by sending a confirmation, as described in clause 4.2.7 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].
- 14-15. When the NEF receives from the PCF an event (e.g. service coverage area change) to which the AF has previously subscribed, the NEF notifies the AF using the Nnef_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI included in the subscription, and the AF responds by sending a confirmation, as described in clause 4.4.26.7 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

NOTE: The subscriptions required for steps 12-15 can have happened either in the Create/Update steps or with a separate Subscribe message which is not shown in the call flow.

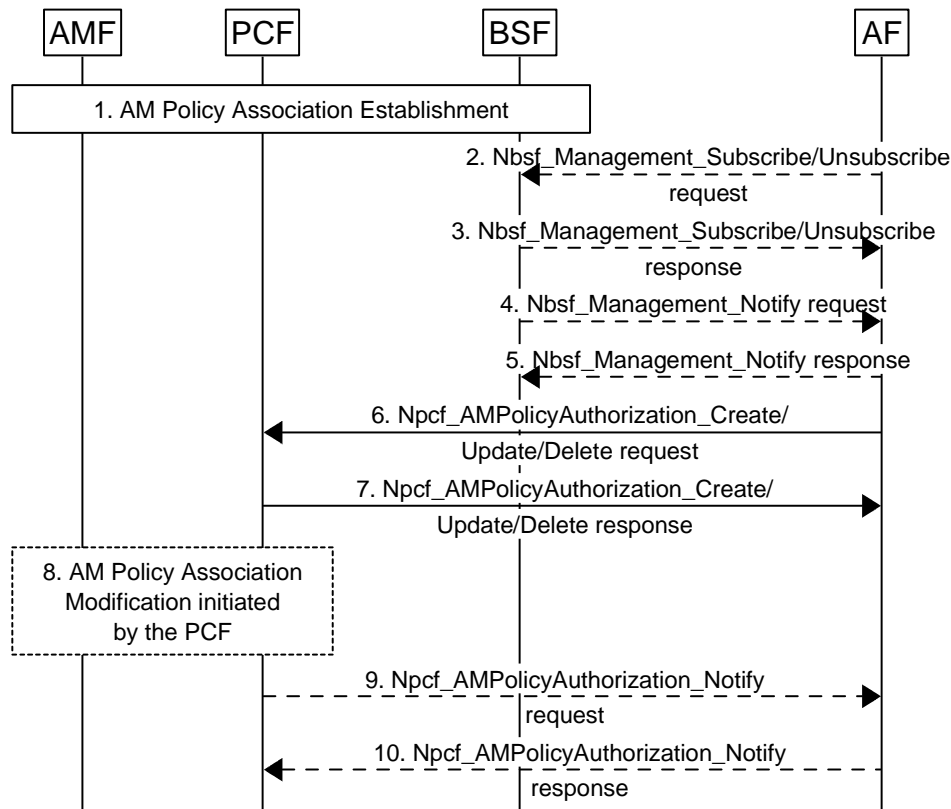


Figure 5.5.10.2-2: Processing direct AF requests for Access and Mobility related policy authorization for a UE

1. An AM Policy Association is established as described in clause 5.1.1. This step can occur at any time before step 4.
2. The AF may subscribe to (or unsubscribe from) the BSF using `Nbsf_Management_Subscribe` (or `Nbsf_Management_Unsubscribe`) to be informed about PCF for a UE registrations for the target UE, as described in clause 4.2.6 (for subscribing) or clause 4.2.7 (for unsubscribing) of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
3. The BSF responds by confirming the received request and, in the case of subscription, including the existing PCF for a UE registration in the response, if found, as described in clause 4.2.6.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
4. The BSF notifies the AF once there is a PCF for a UE registration for the UE indicated in the subscription as described in clause 4.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
5. The AF confirms the received notification by sending a "204 No Content" response as described in clause 4.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
6. To create a new AF request, the AF invokes the `Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create` service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application AM Contexts" resource as described in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

To update an existing AF request, the AF invokes the `Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

To remove an existing AF request, the AF invokes the `Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Delete` service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Application AM Context" resource as described in clause 4.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].
7. The PCF responds to the creation, update, or deletion request as described respectively in clauses 4.2.2, 4.2.3, or 4.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

If the creation or update request included the subscription to event(s) together with the indication of immediate reporting of the currently available values of the subscribed events, the PCF includes in the response the

applicable event(s) information, if available, as specified respectively in clauses 4.2.2 or 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

8. AM Policy Association modification initiated by the PCF may be performed as described in clause 5.1.2.2.

9-10. When an event (e.g. service coverage area change) occurs to which the AF has previously subscribed, the PCF notifies the AF using the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI included in the subscription, and the AF responds by sending a confirmation, as described in clause 4.2.7 of 3GPP TS 29.534 [50].

NOTE: The subscriptions required for steps 9-10 can have happened either in the Create/Update steps or with a separate Subscribe message which is not shown in the call flow.

5.5.10.3 AF requests to influence AM policies

This procedure concerns non-roaming and LBO roaming scenarios, i.e. to cases where the involved entities serving the UE (i.e. NEF, UDR, PCF, BSF, AMF) belong to the Serving PLMN. The AF may belong to the Serving PLMN (trusted AF) or to a third party with which the Serving PLMN has an agreement (untrusted AF). In LBO roaming, the AF requests target "any inbound roaming UEs identified by their home PLMN ID(s)" combined with DNN/S-NSSAI or Application Identifier(s).

This procedure is used by the AF to provide its AM policy related request for one or multiple UEs at any time.

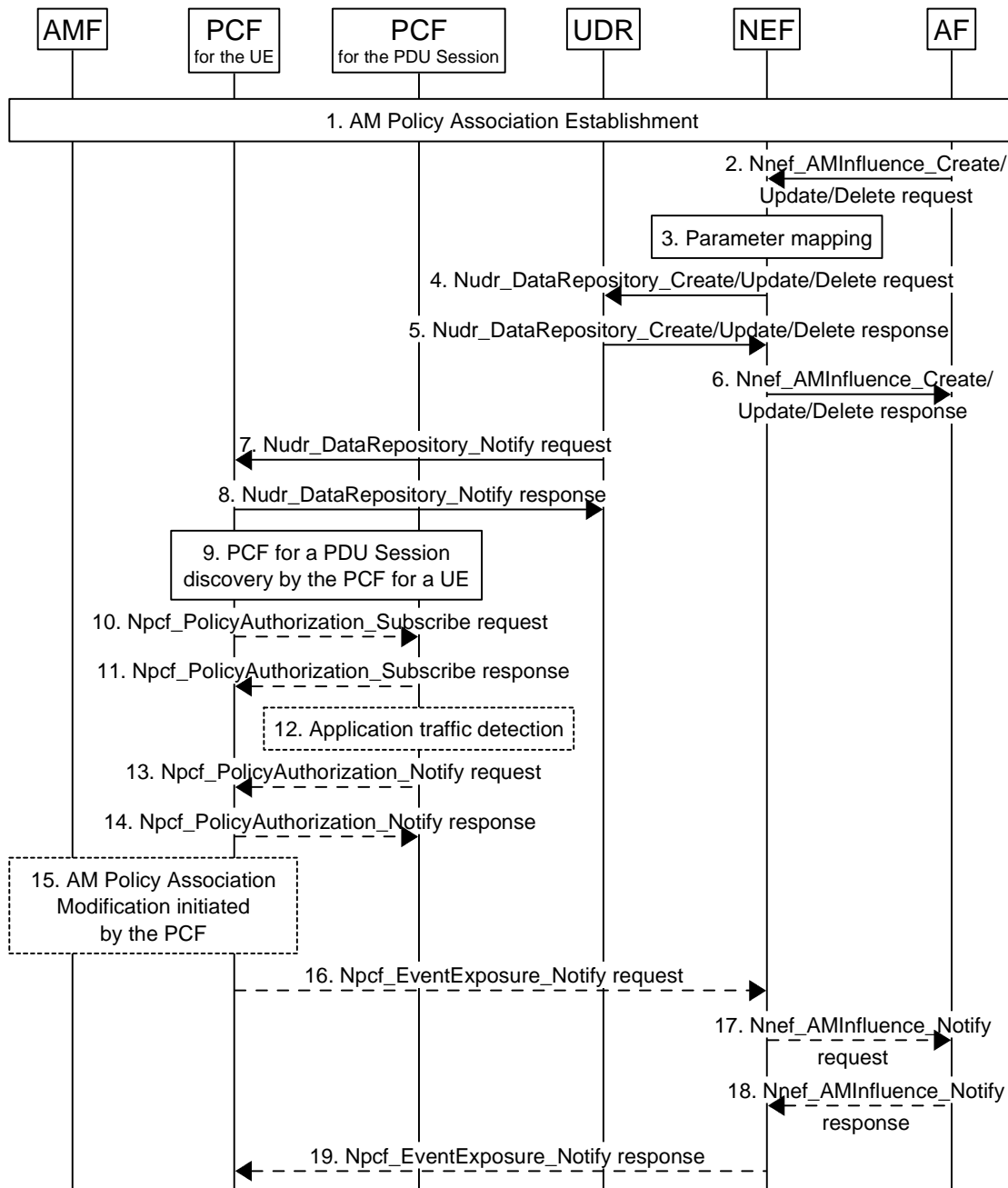


Figure 5.5.10.3-1: Processing AF requests to influence Access and Mobility related policy

1. An AM Policy Association is established as described in clause 5.1.1 (including the retrieval of and subscription to AM Influence data in steps 2 and 4). This step may occur at any time before step 7.
2. To create a new AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMInfluence_Create service operation to the NEF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "AM Influence Subscription" resource. The AF may subscribe to Access and Mobility management related events (e.g. about service area coverage change outcome) as part of this operation.

To update an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMInfluence_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT or PATCH request to the "Individual AM Influence Subscription" resource. The AF may subscribe to or unsubscribe from Access and Mobility management related events (e.g. about service area coverage change outcome) as part of this operation.

To remove an existing AF request, the AF invokes the Nnef_AMInfluence_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual AM Influence Subscription" resource. The AF may unsubscribe from Access and Mobility management related events (e.g. about service area coverage change outcome) as part of this operation.

3. Upon receipt of the AF request, the NEF authorizes it and then performs the mapping from the information provided by the AF into information needed by the 5GC (e.g. translate a GPSI into a SUPI) as described in clause 4.4.27 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
- 4-5. When receiving the Nnef_AMInfluence_Create request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Create service operation to store the AF request information in the UDR by sending an HTTP PUT request to the "Individual AM Influence Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "201 Created" response.

When receiving the Nnef_AMInfluence_Update request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to modify the AF request information in the UDR by sending an HTTP PATCH or PUT request to the resource "Individual AM Influence Data", and the UDR sends a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response accordingly.

When receiving the Nnef_AMInfluence_Delete request, the NEF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Delete service operation to delete the AF request information from the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual AM Influence Data" resource, and the UDR sends a "204 No Content" response.
6. The NEF sends an HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
- 7-8. The UDR notifies the PCF(s) that have subscriptions (from step 1) which match the received AF request using the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI of the PCF that was included in the subscription, and the PCF(s) send a "204 No Content" response.
9. If the received AM Influence data indicated that the AM policy depends on PDU session traffic events (e.g. the application start and application stop for an application Id or PDU session establishment and termination for a DNN and S-NSSAI combination), the PCF for the UE may discover the PCF(s) for a PDU Session that handle(s) the respective UE traffic as described in clause 8.4A.
- 10-11. If the received AM Influence data indicated that the request is dependent (or does not depend anymore) on the existence of UE traffic that matches one or more application identifiers and the feature "ApplicationDetectionEvents" defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] is supported, the PCF for the UE may subscribe (or unsubscribe) to the PCF(s) for the PDU Session for notifications about application traffic detection (e.g. start, stop) of the application(s) indicated in the AM Influence data using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.6.9. Otherwise, steps 10-14 are skipped.
12. The PCF for the PDU Session creates PCC rule(s) including the application ID(s) in the service data flow description, if they do not already exist, and installs the PCC rule(s) and the Policy Control request trigger(s), also if they do not already exist, to detect the start/stop of application traffic in the SMF as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. When the SMF detects that the Policy Control Request Trigger is met, the SMF reports to the PCF for the PDU session the start or stop of concerned the application traffic.
- 13-14. The PCF for the PDU Session may notify the PCF for the UE about the detected event using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the notification URI received in the subscription, and the PCF for the UE responds with "204 No Content", as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.5.19.
15. AM Policy Association modification initiated by the PCF may be performed as described in clause 5.1.2.2.
- 16-19. If the AF had subscribed to an Access and Mobility management related event (e.g. about service area coverage change outcome), the PCF may send respective notification(s) to the NEF using the Npcf_EventExposure_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST message as described in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.523 [49] to the notification URI that was included in the AM Influence data retrieved from the UDR. The NEF forwards such received notifications to the AF using the Nnef_AMInfluence_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST message to the notification URI previously received from the AF. The AF sends a "204 No Content" response to the NEF and the NEF sends a "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

5.5.11 Procedures for Time Synchronization Exposure

5.5.11.1 General

Time synchronization exposure allows an AF to configure time synchronization service(s) in 5GS and to monitor the time synchronization service status in 5GS.

For (g)PTP operations, the Time synchronization service allows an AF to subscribe to the UE and 5GC capabilities and availability for time synchronization services as described in clause 5.5.11.2, to configure the (g)PTP instance in 5GS as described in clause 5.5.11.3, and to monitor the service status as described in clause 5.5.11.5.

For the 5G access stratum time distribution, the AF can influence the 5G access stratum time distribution as described in clause 5.5.11.4 and monitor the service status as described in clause 5.5.11.5.

The time synchronization exposure is provided by the NEF, which uses the services provided by the TSCTSF. The AF that is part of the operator's trust domain may invoke the services directly with the TSCTSF; in such case, the TSCTSF directly responds/notifies the AF, accordingly.

5.5.11.2 Exposure of UE availability and capabilities for Time Synchronization service

The procedure is used by the AF to subscribe to notifications and to explicitly cancel a previous subscription for UE availability for time synchronization service.

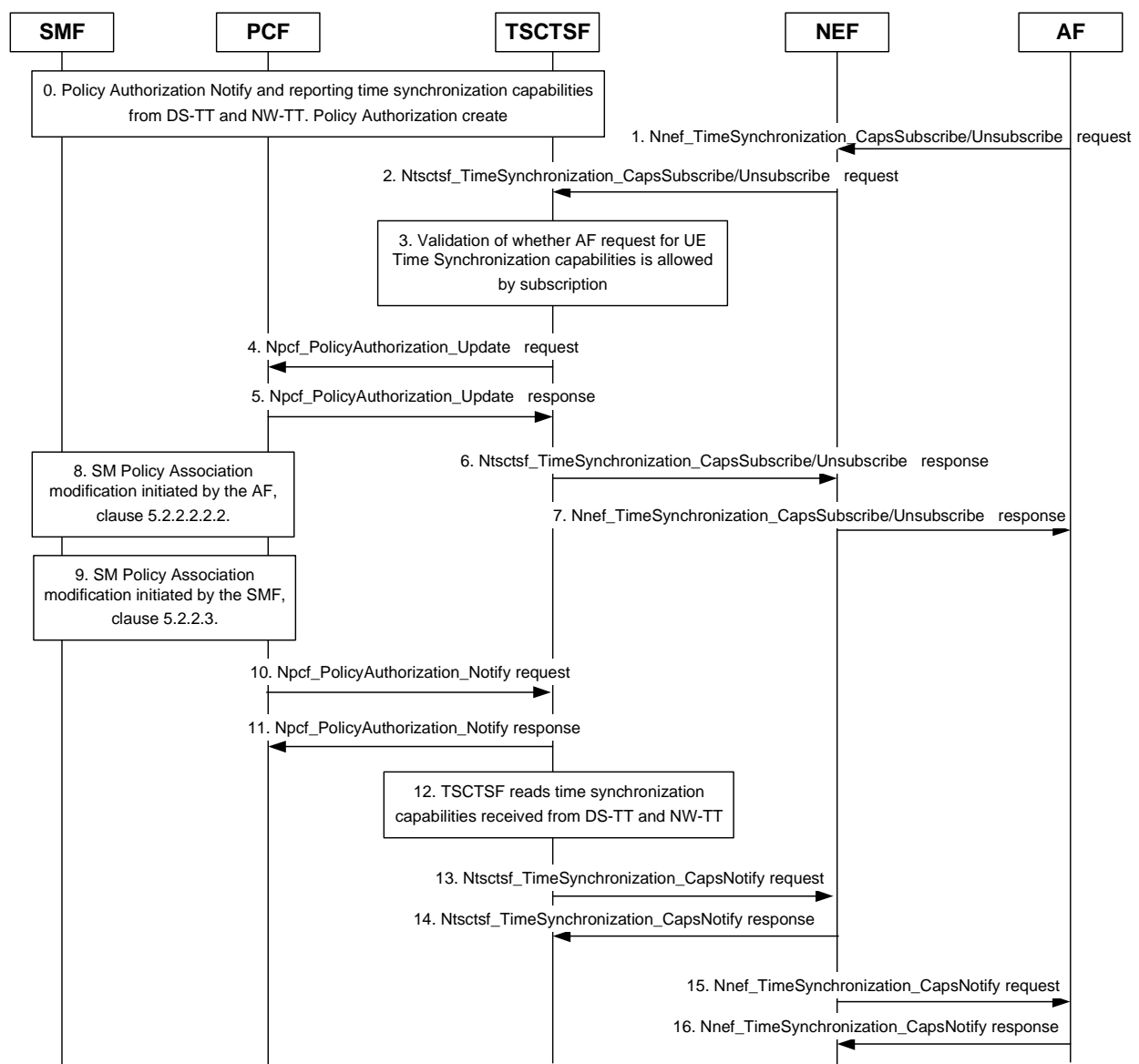


Figure 5.5.11.2-1: Exposure of UE availability and capabilities for Time Synchronization service

- 0. During SM Policy Association establishment, the PCF determines if the PDU Session is potentially impacted by time synchronization service (based on local configuration) and provides the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" policy

control request trigger to the SMF as described in figure 5.2.1-1, step 11. During SM Policy Association modification (triggered during PDU session establishment), the SMF may report it to the PCF to provide TSC user plane node information (device side port number, DS-TT MAC address (to identify the PDU session), if applicable, TSC user plane node Id and UE-DS-TT residence time, if available), and, if available, a UMIC and/or one or more PMIC(s), as described in figure 5.2.2.3-1, step 2. For IP PDU sessions, the PCF uses the UE IP address to identify the PDU session. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to notify to the TSCTSF the received TSC user plane node information for the PDU session, and, if available, the received UMIC/PMIC(s), as described in figure 5.2.2.3-1, step 5.

The TSCTSF retrieves the UE SUPI from the BSF using the UE IP address, and may get from UDM Time Synchronization Subscription Data, that may contain either one or more subscribed time synchronization service Id(s) (that map to a PTP instance configuration in the TSCTSF for the DNN/S-NSSAI) or an indication that an AF-requested (g)PTP time synchronization service is allowed for the given UE and DNN/S-NSSAI.

If an AF-requested (g)PTP time synchronization service is allowed for the UE and DNN/S-NSSAI, the TSCTSF then invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create request message to the PCF as described in clause 5.2.2.2.1 to create an AF-session. The TSCTSF may subscribe with the PCF to the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" event, to get notifications about PMIC/UMIC updates as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. For IP PDU sessions, the TSCTSF stores the DNN, S-NSSAI and IP address as received from PCF and SUPI as received from BSF and associates them with the AF-session, as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

The received PMIC(s)/UMIC, if available, may contain (g)PTP instance configuration for the reported DS-TT/NW-TT.

If the TSCTSF retrieves from UDM one or more time synchronization service Id(s) matching PTP instance configuration for the DNN/S-NSSAI, the TSCTSF distributes the PTP instance configuration as described in clause 5.5.11.3.

1. To subscribe to notifications of the UE availability for time synchronization service, the AF invokes the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Time Synchronization Exposure Subscriptions" resource as defined in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

To unsubscribe to the UE availability for time synchronization for a list of UE(s), the AF invokes Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsUnsubscribe service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource as defined in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

2. The NEF selects the TSCTSF and maps the received parameters to 5GC parameters, if applicable, as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] and invokes the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Time Synchronization Exposure" resource as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

In the case of Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsUnsubscribe, the NEF interacts with the TSCTSF by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

The AF that is part of operator's trust domain may invoke the requests directly to the TSCTSF.

3. If the request includes GPSI(s), an External Group Identifier or an Internal Group Identifier, the TSCTSF uses the Nudm_SDM_Get request as described in 3GPP TS 29.503 [61] to retrieve the subscription information for the target UEs (i.e., to retrieve the SUPI(s)) from the UDM, using each GPSI or the External Group Identifier as received from the NEF, or an Internal Group Identifier as provided directly by the AF).

For the retrieved SUPI(s), the TSCTSF requests the Time Synchronization Subscription Data from the UDM if not previously retrieved in step 0, to validate whether the AF request for (g)PTP-based time distribution for the DNN and S-NSSAI is allowed by the UE subscription.

4. The TSCTSF uses the parameters received in step 2 and step 3 (i.e. DNN, S-NSSAI and SUPI(s)) to find matching AF-session(s) as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

If the subscription data for the UE indicates that the AF is not allowed to request (g)PTP-based time synchronization for this UE, DNN and S-NSSAI combination, the corresponding AF-session is excluded from the list of matching AF-sessions.

For any AF-session in the list of matching AF-session(s), the TSCTSF interacts with the PCF by triggering a Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update request message as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], to provide/retrieve UMIC/PMIC information, if not available in the TSCTSF, from the NW-TT/DS-TT to read the (g)PTP capabilities as specified in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], K.2.2.1

In the case of Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsUnsubscribe, the TSCTSF, for the AF-session(s) in the list of matching AF-session(s), triggers a Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Delete request message as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], deletes the corresponding "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource and responds to the NEF (or AF) with a "204 No Content" status code. Steps 4-5 and 8-16 are skipped.

5. The PCF responds with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" status code to the received PATCH request.
6. The TSCTSF acknowledges the execution of Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe to the requester that initiated the request (NEF or AF) by sending a "201 Created" status code.

When the request was to unsubscribe to the UE availability for time synchronization, the TSCTSF deletes the corresponding "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource and responds to the NEF with a "204 No Content" status code.

7. The NEF acknowledges the execution of Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe to the AF by sending a "201 Created" status code.

When the request was to unsubscribe to the UE availability for time synchronization, the NEF deletes the corresponding "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource and responds to the AF with a "204 No Content" status code.

8. For each AF-session for which the TSCTSF triggered the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update request as described in step 4, the PCF provides to the SMF the UMIC/PMIC information received from the TSCTSF and for the concerned PDU session as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.
9. When the SMF detects UMIC/PMIC changes for the NW-TT/DS-TT for each concerned PDU sessions, the SMF provides the updated UMIC/PMIC information to the PCF as described in clause 5.2.2.3.
10. The TSCTSF receives UMIC/PMIC information from NW-TT/DS-TT ports from the PCF, with the notification of the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" event as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
11. The TSCTSF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.
12. The TSCTSF uses the procedures described in clause K.2.1 of TS 23.501 [2] to determine the (g)PTP capabilities from the DS-TT and, if not previously determined, the (g)PTP capabilities from the NW-TT.

The TSCTSF composes the time synchronization capabilities for the DS-TT/UE(s) connected to the NW-TT based on the capability information received from the DS-TT(s) and NW-TT for each AF-session. If the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe request included an Event Filter with one or more of the requested PTP instance type, requested transport protocol for PTP, or requested PTP Profile, the TSCTSF considers only the DS-TT(s) and NW-TT(s) with these capabilities as part of the time synchronization capability set that is reported to the NEF (or AF).

The TSCTSF maintains, for the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource, the association between the user-plane Node ID, the time synchronization capabilities, the Event Filter(s) (if available), the NEF or AF Notification Target Address and list of the matching AF-sessions with PCFs with this user-plane Node ID.

13. The TSCTSF sends Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_CapsNotify to the NEF by invoking the HTTP POST request, as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. The message includes the time synchronization capabilities as composed for all the matching AF-sessions in step 12. The message contains one or more user-plane Node ID(s), a list of UE identities associated to each user-plane Node ID and time synchronization capabilities for each set of DS-TTs (UEs) connected to given user-plane Node ID. The user-plane Node ID identifies the NW-TT to where the UE/DS-TT(s) are connected to.
14. The NEF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.

15. The NEF forwards the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsNotify with Time Synchronization capability event to the AF by invoking the HTTP POST request as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

16. The AF responds the NEF with a "204 No Content" status code.

At PDU Session Establishment as defined in step 0, steps 3-5 and steps 8-16 are repeated for the new PDU Session/AF-session and the TSCTSF may notify the NEF (or AF) for the Time Synchronization capability event, optionally with the updated time synchronization capabilities.

Upon PDU Session release indication from a PCF, the TSCTSF removes the corresponding AF-session from the list of AF-sessions associated with the time synchronization exposure subscription resource, once the corresponding AF-session is removed from the list of AF-sessions associated with the time synchronization configuration, as described in clause 5.5.11.3. The changes in the set of capabilities are notified to the NEF and AF as described in steps 13 to 16.

5.5.11.3 Time Synchronization service activation, modification, and deactivation

The AF may use Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsSubscribe service operation as described in clause 5.5.11.2 to learn the UE capabilities for time synchronization service for a list of UE identities. The Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsNotify service operation indicates the list of UE identities per User-plane Node ID that match the provided time synchronization capabilities.

The AF can use the user-plane node ID received in the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_CapsNotify service operation as a target of the configuration of a PTP instance in the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate request. The Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate/ConfigUpdate request create/update a time synchronization configuration per user plane node ID based on the parameters indicated in the request for the NW-TT(s) and DS-TT(s). The AF may subscribe to time synchronization status reports via Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate/ConfigUpdate service operation(s) and may receive a time synchronization service status report via Nnef_TimeSynchronization_UpdateNotify service operation.

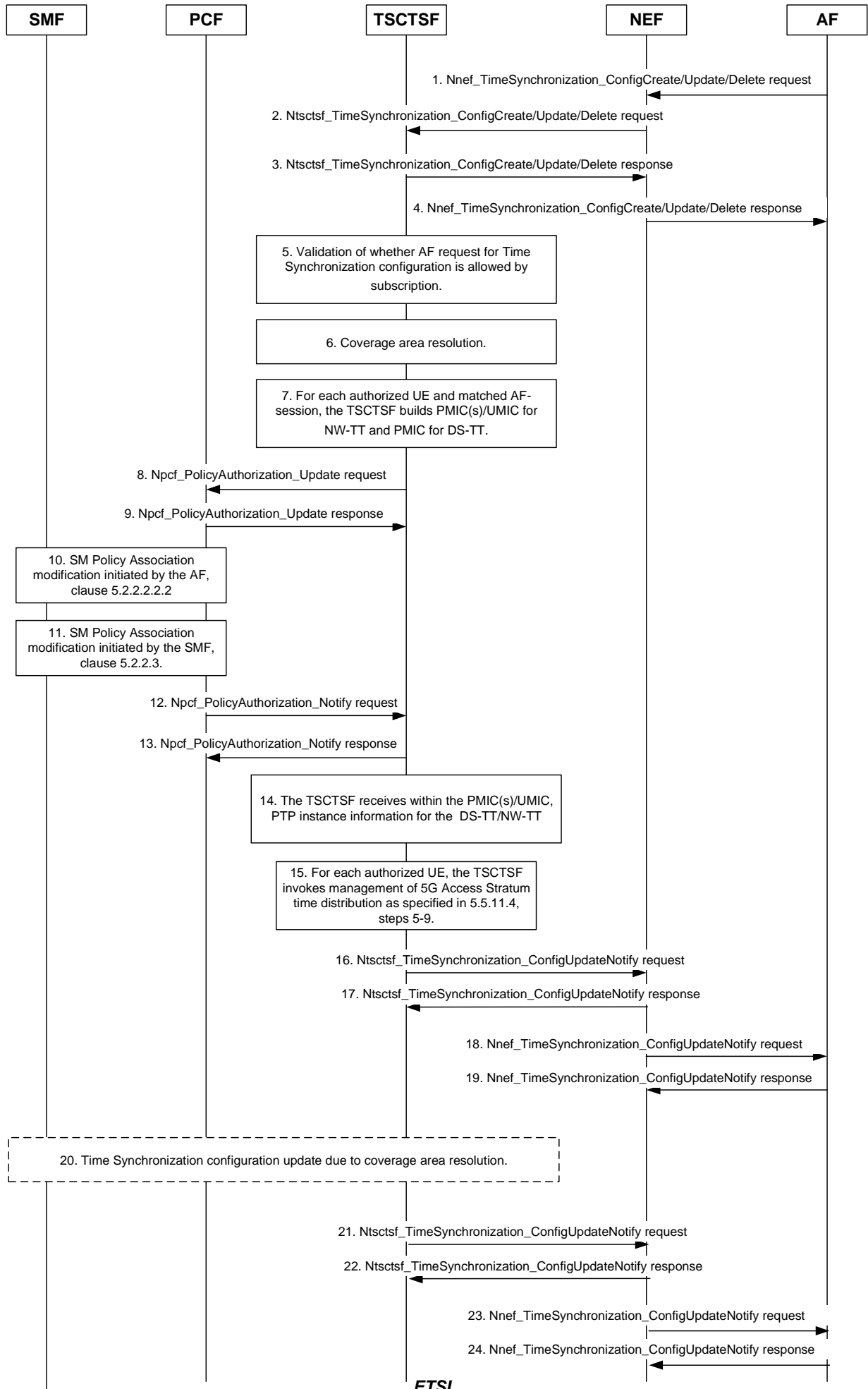


Figure 5.5.11.3-1: Time Synchronization service activation, modification and deactivation

1. To create a time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and user-plane node ID, the AF invokes the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Time Synchronization Exposure Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

To update an existing time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and user-plane node ID, the AF invokes the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdate service operation by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Configuration" resource.

To remove an existing time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and user-plane node ID, the AF invokes the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigDelete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Configuration" resource.

The NEF authorizes the AF request. The request contains user-plane node ID as reference to the target of UEs and AF-sessions held in the TSCTSF in the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource for the indicated user-plane node ID.

The Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate/Update request creates/updates also a subscription to notifications for the changes in the time synchronization service configuration.

The AF may also subscribe to time synchronization status report by including (optionally) the clock quality detail level set to "acceptable/not acceptable indication" and providing clock quality acceptance criteria.

- NOTE 1: The AF request for PTP service activation, modification cannot indicate that the clock quality detail level to provide is "metrics", i.e. if the AF includes the clock quality detail level, its value needs to set to "acceptable/not acceptable indication" and accompanied with "clock quality acceptance criteria". The UE/DS-TT retrieves detailed information (timing synchronization metrics) from Announce messages sent for (g)PTP services.

2. The NEF authorizes the AF request and translates the received parameters into 5GC parameters as described in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] before invoking the TSCTSF services (e.g., if the AF request includes a time synchronization coverage area formulated using a geographical description of the area(e.g., civic addresses or shapes), the NEF transforms this information into 3GPP identifiers (e.g. TA(s)) based on pre-configuration).

When the NEF receives the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate request, the NEF invokes the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate service operation to create time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and a user-plane node ID in an "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource in the TSCTSF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "Time Synchronization Exposure Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. If the "CoverageAreaSupport" feature is supported, the NEF may include the coverage area where the indicated service configuration applies.

When the NEF receives the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdate request, the NEF invokes the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdate service operation to update time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and a user-plane node ID in an "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource in the TSCTSF by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Configuration" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. If the "CoverageAreaSupport" feature is supported, the NEF may include the coverage area where the indicated service configuration applies.

When the NEF receives the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigDelete request, the NEF invokes the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigDelete service operation to delete time synchronization service configuration for a PTP instance and a user-plane node ID in an "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource in the TSCTSF by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Configuration" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. The TSCTSF sends a "204 No Content" response.

An AF that is part of operator's trust domain may invoke the TSCTSF services directly with TSCTSF.

3. The TSCTSF acknowledges the NEF request including:
 - For a creation request response, a "201 Created" status code, including a reference to the time synchronization service configuration created (PTP instance created) represented by the "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Configuration" resource.

- For an update request response, a "200 OK" or a "204 No Content" status code.
 - For a delete request response, a "204 No Content" status code.
4. The NEF sends the HTTP response message to the AF correspondingly.
 5. The TSCTSF checks with the UDM if the concerned UE(s) are allowed to receive the time sync service configuration.

The TSCTSF uses user-plane node ID and the PTP instance information (PTP instance type, transport protocol and PTP profile) of the request and the related "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource, to determine the target UEs (SUPI(s)) and checks whether the AF requested parameters comply with the stored Time Synchronization Subscription Data retrieved from the UDM as described in clause 5.5.11.2.

If the "AF request Authorization" in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data for the affected SUPI indicates that the AF is allowed to request PTP instance configuration, the TSCTSF proceeds with the configuration. Otherwise (i.e., the "AF request Authorization" is not allowed), steps 6-19 are skipped for this UE.

NOTE 2: The AF-sessions that are not associated with a time synchronization configuration (for a user-plane node Id, specific PTP instance information, and the related "Individual Time Synchronization Exposure Subscription" resource), are available to be selected as suitable AF-sessions in another Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate/Update request.

If the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate request contains a temporal validity condition with a start-time and/or the stop-time that is in the future, the TSCTSF maintains the start-time and stop-time for the time synchronization service for the corresponding time synchronization configuration. If the start-time is in the past, the TSCTSF treats the request as if the time synchronization service is activated immediately. When the start-time is reached, the TSCTSF proceeds with the activation of the service. When the stop-time is reached for an active time synchronization service configuration, the TSCTSF proceeds as if an Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigDelete request is received.

If in step 1 the AF subscribes to time synchronization status report, the TSCTSF determines whether the received AF-requested clock quality information complies with the authorized clock quality detail level and the clock quality acceptance criteria (if applicable) stored in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data and then decides whether to reject the AF request as described in clause 5.27.1.11 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] or to subscribe for notifications in step 7. If the request is rejected, steps 7 to 19 are skipped.

6. If the "CoverageAreaSupport" feature is supported, the NEF may include in step 2 the coverage area where the indicated service configuration applies. The TSCTSF determines the authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area by selecting the TA(s) that are part of both, the list of TA(s) provided by the NEF and the list of TA(s) stored in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data. Then, the TSCTSF performs the following operations:
 - The TSCTSF subscribes with the AMF(s) for UE presence in Area of Interest composed by the TA(s) as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - Based on the received notification from the AMF and the authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area, the TSCTSF determines whether to activate time synchronization service for this UE:
 - a. If the UE presence is within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to activate the received PTP instance configuration for the authorized UE.
 - b. If the UE presence is not within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to set to inactive the received PTP instance configuration for the authorized UE.
7. For each authorized UE (in step 5 and step 6) and matched AF-session, the TSCTSF uses the procedures described in clause K.2.2 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] to configure and initialize the PTP instance in the DS-TT(s) and NW-TT according to the parameters received in step 2. The TSCTSF constructs a PMIC to each DS-TT/UE to activate the time synchronization service in DS-TT and constructs PMIC(s) and UMIC to NW-TT to activate the time synchronization service in NW-TT.

If in step 1 the AF subscribes to time synchronization status report and if in step 5 the TSCTSF determines the clock quality information, then the TSCTSF subscribes for notifications about changes in NG-RAN and UPF/NW-TT (if applicable) timing synchronization status as described in clause 5.5.11.5.

6. If the "CoverageAreaSupport" feature is supported, the NEF may include in step 2 the coverage area where the indicated service configuration applies. The TSCTSF determines the Time Synchronization Coverage Area by selecting the TA(s) that are part of both, the list of TA(s) provided by the NEF and the list of TA(s) stored in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data. Then, the TSCTSF performs the following operations:
 - The TSCTSF subscribes with the AMF(s) for UE presence in Area of Interest composed by the TA(s) as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - Based on the notification from the AMF, the TSCTSF determines whether to activate time synchronization service for this UE:
 - a. If the UE presence is within any of the TAs from the time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to activate the received PTP instance configuration for the authorized UE.
 - b. If the UE presence is not within any of the TAs from the time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to set to inactive the received PTP instance configuration for the authorized UE.
7. For each authorized UE (in step 3 and step 4) and matched AF-session, the TSCTSF uses the procedures described in clause K.2.2 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] to configure and initialize the PTP instance in the DS-TT(s) and NW-TT according to the parameters received in step 2. The TSCTSF constructs a PMIC to each DS-TT/UE to activate the time synchronization service in DS-TT and constructs PMIC(s) and UMIC to NW-TT to activate the time synchronization service in NW-TT.

If in step 1 the AF subscribes to time synchronization status report, the TSCTSF may subscribe for notifications about changes in NG-RAN and UPF/NW-TT (if applicable) timing synchronization status as described in clause 5.5.11.5.
8. For each authorized UE and matched AF-session, the TSCTSF delivers the PMIC(s) and UMIC to NW-TT and the PMIC(s) to DS-TT/UE by invoking the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service procedure as specified in clause 5.2.2.2.2.2.
9. The PCF acknowledges the request with a "200 OK" or a "204 No Content" status code.
10. For each AF-session for which the TSCTSF triggered the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update request, the PCF provides the UMIC/PMIC information for the concerned PDU session as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.2.
11. The DS-TT(s) and the NW-TT response is encoded in the corresponding PMIC(s)/UMIC containers which are delivered by the SMF to the PCF in an SM Policy Association modification initiated by the SMF procedure, as described in clause 5.2.2.3.
12. The TSCTSF receives UMIC/PMIC information from NW-TT/DS-TT ports from the PCF with the notification about BRIDGE_INFO events for each AF-session, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
13. The TSCTSF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.
14. Upon reception of responses from each DS-TT and the NW-TT (for all affected AF sessions), the TSCTSF determines the state of the time synchronization configuration for the indicated PTP instance and user-plane node ID.
15. The TSCTSF uses the procedure in clause 5.5.11.4, steps 5-9, to activate or modify the 5G access stratum time distribution for the UEs that are part of the indicated PTP instance.
16. For an active PTP instance, the TSCTSF notifies the NEF (or AF), with the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdateNotify service operation, by sending to the NEF (or AF) callback URI the HTTP POST request containing notification correlation identifier and the current state of the time synchronization service configuration for the NW-TT and DS-TTs (of the indicated PTP instance and user-plane node ID) as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

If the TSCTSF determines an authorized spatial validity condition in step 6, the TSCTSF may indicate to the AF whether a PTP port of the PTP instance is activated or deactivated whenever the UE moves in or out of the authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area.

If the feature "NetTimeSynchStatus" is supported and the state of the time synchronization service configuration for the NW-TT and/or DS-TT changes because the TSCTSF detects failure, degradation or improvement in the status of the time synchronization service, the TSCTSF may indicate to the AF/NEF whether the PTP port of the PTP instance is activated or deactivated together with the acceptable/not-acceptable time synchronization service status of the PTP port of the PTP instance.

17. The NEF (or AF) acknowledges the notification request by replying with a "204 No Content" status code.
18. The NEF forwards to the AF in the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdateNotify service operation the current state of the time synchronization service configuration for the NW-TT and DS-TT (for the active PTP instance and user-plane node ID) by invoking the HTTP POST request to the AF callback URI.
19. The AF acknowledges the notification request by replying with a "204 No Content" status code.
20. If TSCTSF receives a time synchronization coverage area as part of the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigCreate request in step 2 and determines an authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area, upon the reception of a change in the UE presence in Area of Interest notification, the TSCTSF determines whether the authorized time synchronization coverage area condition shall trigger an activation or deactivation of the PTP instance configuration:
 - If the UE moves within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, then the TSCTSF adds the UE/DS-TT port to the PTP instance.
 - If the UE moves outside all of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, then the TSCTSF removes the UE/DS-TT port from the PTP instance.

The TSCTSF configures the Grandmaster functionality, as applicable, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. The TSCTSF delivers the PMIC and/or UMIC as described in steps 8-15. The TSCTSF updates the state of the time synchronization configuration and may notify the NEF (or AF) as described in step 16-19.

21. For an active PTP instance, the TSCTSF notifies the NEF (or AF), with the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdateNotify service operation as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
22. The NEF (or AF) acknowledges the notification request by replying with a "204 No Content" status code.
23. The NEF forwards to the AF in the Nnef_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdateNotify service operation.
24. The AF acknowledges the notification request by replying with a "204 No Content" status code.

NOTE 3: If the AF receives a clock quality acceptance criteria result (acceptable/not acceptable), the AF decides whether to modify the service configured for the UE of a PTP instance or whether to deactivate it (deleting the PTP instance configuration).

A change in the PTP instance in the DS-TT or NW-TT triggers a notification of PMIC/UMIC change towards the TSCTSF as described in clause 5.2.2.3 and steps 11-14. The change of PTP instance is notified to the NEF and AF as described in steps 16 to 19.

Upon PDU Session release indication from a PCF, the TSCTSF removes the corresponding AF-session from the list of AF-sessions associated with the time synchronization configuration. The TSCTSF uses the procedure in clause 5.5.11.4 to remove the 5G access stratum time distribution parameters for the UE that is removed from the impacted PTP instance. The changes in the configured PTP instance are notified to the NEF and AF as described in steps 16 to 19.

At PDU Session Establishment step 0, step 5, and steps 8-11 of figure 5.5.11.2-1 are repeated for a new PDU Session and AF-session. The NEF (or AF) may use the Ntsctsf_TimeSynchronization_ConfigUpdate service operation as described in figure 5.5.11.3-1 to add the DS-TT/UE to the existing PTP instance and corresponding time synchronization service configuration.

If the TSCTSF received a temporal validity condition, the TSCTSF checks the activation or deactivation of the time synchronization service as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

5.5.11.4 Management of 5G Access Stratum Time distribution

The AF can use the procedure to activate, update or delete the 5G access stratum time distribution for one UE or a group of UE(s). The AF may also use this procedure to indicate a clock quality detail level to provide to the UE or group of UE(s) and, optionally, to subscribe for time synchronization status reports.

The AF may query the status of the 5G access stratum time distribution using Nnef_ASTI_Get service operation. The Nnef_ASTI service is specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

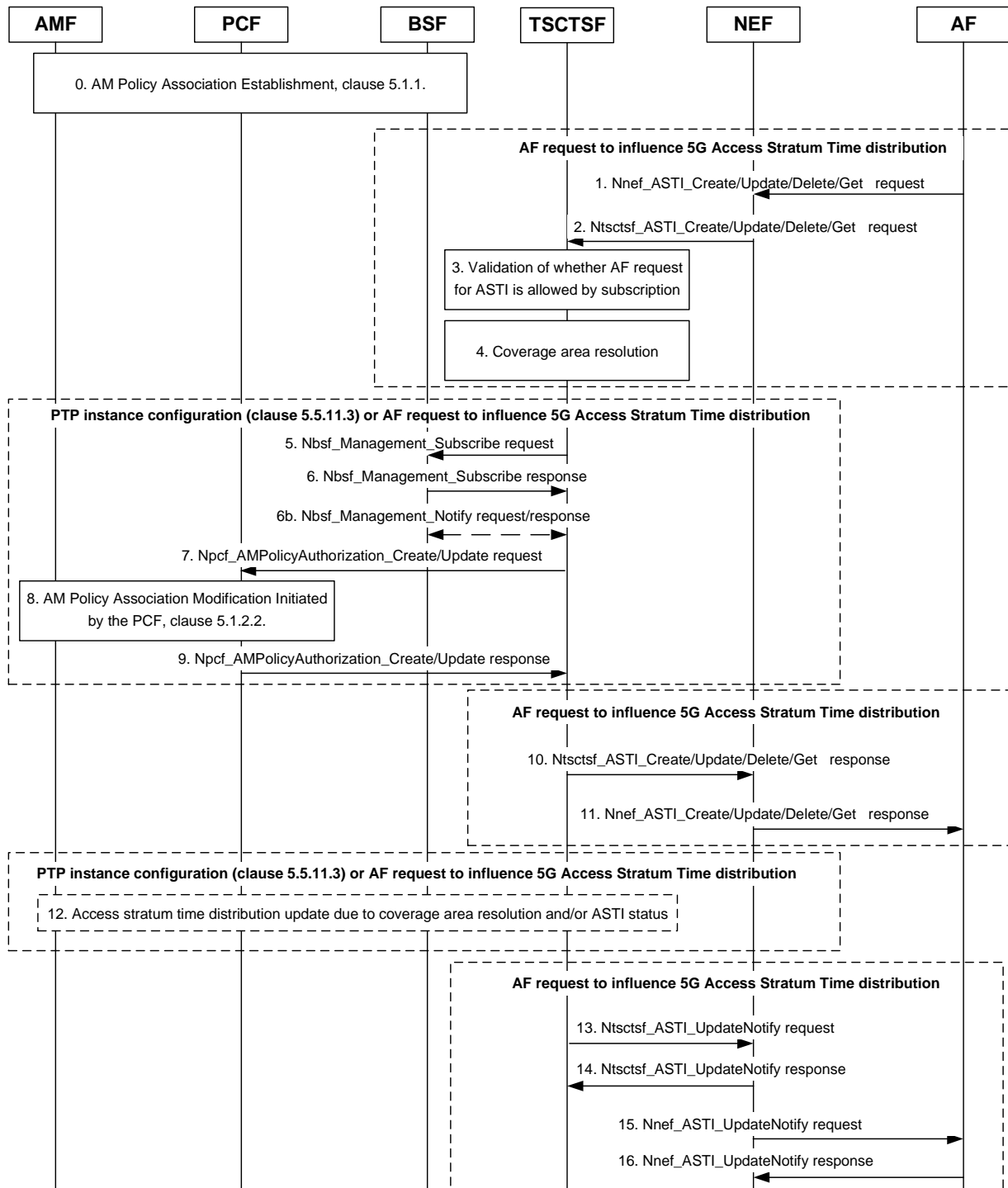


Figure 5.5.11.4-1: Management of 5G Access Stratum Time distribution

- 0. AM Policy Association establishment as described in clause 5.1.1.
- 1. To provide access stratum time distribution parameters to the NEF, the AF invokes the Nnef_ASTI_Create service operation to the NEF by sending the HTTP POST request to the "ASTI Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].

To update previously provided access stratum time distribution parameters, the AF invokes an Nnef_ASTI_Update by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual ASTI Configuration" resource.

To remove previously provided access stratum time distribution parameters, the AF invokes the Nnef_ASTI_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual ASTI Configuration" resource.

To query the status of the access stratum time distribution, the AF invokes Nnef_ASTI_Get service operation by sending the "retrieve" custom operation (HTTP POST request) to the "ASTI Configurations" resource.

If the feature "NetTimeSyncStatus" is supported, the AF request may indicate the clock quality detail level of the information to provide to the UE and, if required, include the clock quality acceptance criteria for the UE.

NOTE: If the AF requests clock quality detail level to be "acceptable/not acceptable indication", the AF needs to provide the clock quality acceptance criteria.

By including the clock quality acceptance criteria in a Nnef_ASTI request, the AF indicates to the TSCTSF (via the NEF) to create a subscription at the TSCTSF to get notified about the changes in 5G access stratum time distribution status.

2. The NEF authorizes the request and maps the received parameters to 5GC parameters as specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] (e.g., the NEF transforms a geographical area description provided as a spatial validity condition into 3GPP identifiers (e.g. TAIs) based on configuration). After successful authorization, the NEF invokes:
 - The Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to the "ASTI Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - The Ntsctsf_ASTI_Update service operation by sending the HTTP PUT request to the "Individual ASTI Configuration" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - The Ntsctsf_ASTI_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual ASTI Configuration" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - The Ntsctsf_ASTI_Get service operation by sending the "retrieve" custom operation (HTTP POST request) to the "ASTI Configurations" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

If the TSCTSF determines the targeted UE is part of a PTP instance in 5GS (see clause 5.5.11.3), the TSCTSF rejects the request (steps 3 to 9 are skipped).

The AF that is part of operator's trust domain may invoke the services directly with the TSCTSF and identifies the targeted UE(s) using SUPI(s) or an Internal Group Identifier.

3. If the targeted UE(s) are identified by GPSI(s) or External/Internal Group Identifier, the TSCTSF interacts with UDM by invoking the Nudm_SDM_Get request as specified in 3GPP TS 29.503 [61] to retrieve the Time Synchronization Subscription Data for each affected SUPI.

If the "AF request Authorization" in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data for the affected SUPI indicates that the AF is allowed to request 5G access stratum-based time distribution, the TSCTSF proceeds with ASTI service configuration. Otherwise, if the AF is not authorized, steps 4 and 7-19 are skipped for this UE.

If in step 1 the AF subscribes to time synchronization status report, the TSCTSF determines whether the received AF-requested clock quality information complies with the authorized clock quality detail level and the clock quality acceptance criteria (if applicable) stored in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data and then decides whether to reject the AF request as described in clause 5.27.1.11 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] or to subscribe for notifications in step 4. If the request is rejected, steps 4 to 9 are skipped.

Then, the TSCTSF compares the AF request with the stored Time Synchronization Subscription Data to determine if the requested ASTI configuration and, if available, the provided ASTI clock quality reporting control information is allowed. If the request is not authorized, steps 5 to 9 are skipped.

If the Time Synchronization Subscription Data contains periods of authorized start and stop times, the TSCTSF checks whether the AF requested temporal validity condition included in the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create request in step 2 satisfies (i.e. within) any of the periods of authorized start and stop times. The TSCTSF then maintains the start-time and stop-time for the ASTI service configuration and proceeds to enable the ASTI service while the current time is within an authorized time period. When the stop-time is reached for active ASTI service configuration, the TSCTSF proceeds as if an Nnef_ASTI_Delete request is received.

4. If the feature "CoverageAreaSupport" is supported, the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create request in step 2 may contain the coverage area where the Access Stratum Time Distribution service applies. The TSCTSF determines the authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area by selecting the TA(s) that are part of both, the list of TA(s) provided by the NEF and the list of TA(s) stored in the Time Synchronization Subscription Data. Then, the TSCTSF performs the following operations:
- The TSCTSF subscribes with the AMF(s) for UE presence in Area of Interest composed by the TA(s) in the time synchronization coverage area as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].
 - Based on the received notification from the AMF and the authorized time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines whether to activate the ASTI service for this UE:
 - If the UE location is within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to enable access stratum time distribution for the UE.
 - If the UE location is not within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, the TSCTSF determines to disable access stratum time distribution for the UE.

If the AF subscribes to time synchronization status reports (by providing a clock quality reporting control information indicating clock quality detail level "acceptable/not acceptable" and the clock quality acceptance criteria in step 1) and if in step 3 the TSCTSF determines the clock quality information, then, the TSCTSF subscribes for notification about changes in NG-RAN and UPF/NW-TT timing synchronization status as described in clause 5.5.11.5.

5. To search for the PCF for the UE, the TSCTSF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Binding Subscriptions" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to subscribe to notifications of PCF_UE_BINDING_REGISTRATION event for the indicated SUPI.
6. If matching entries already existed in the BSF when step 5 is performed, this entry is immediately reported to the TSCTSF in the "201 created" response.
- 6.b. If the matching entry does not exist, the BSF provides to the TSCTSF the identity of the PCF for the UE for the requested SUPI via an Nbsf_Management_Notify operation once the PCF is registered as described in clause 5.1.1.
7. If the AF requested Uu time synchronization error budget is authorized in step 3, the TSCTSF enables the Access Stratum Time Distribution service for the UE and calculates the Uu time synchronization error budget as described in clause 5.27.1.9 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

When the procedure is triggered by PTP instance activation, modification, or deactivation in the TSCTSF as described in clause 5.5.11.3, the TSCTSF calculates the Uu time synchronization error budget as described in clause 5.27.1.9 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] for the SUPIs that are part of the PTP instance.

The TSCTSF sends to the PCF for the UE the access stratum time distribution request using Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create/Update request as described in 3GPP TS 29.534 [50], containing the 5G access stratum time distribution indication (enable, disable) and optionally the calculated Uu time synchronization error budget. If the feature "NetTimeSynchStatus" is supported, and the AF requested clock quality reporting control information is authorized in step 3, the TSCTSF provides to the PCF for the UE the authorized clock quality detail level and clock quality acceptance criteria, if available.

8. If the PCF receives multiple time synchronization error budgets for a given UE, then the PCF picks the most stringent budget. The PCF may initiate an AM Policy Association Modification procedure as described in clause 5.1.2.2 to provide the AMF with the 5G access stratum time distribution parameters. If the feature "NetTimeSynchStatus" is supported, the PCF for the UE provides the AMF the AF requested clock quality detail level and clock quality acceptance criteria, if available.

As part of this procedure, the AMF, if supported, stores the 5G access stratum time distribution indication (enable, disable), the Uu time synchronization error budget, the clock quality detail level and the clock quality acceptance criteria, if available, in the UE context in the AMF and sends the 5G access stratum time distribution indication (enable, disable), the Uu time synchronization error budget, the clock quality detail level and the clock quality acceptance criteria, when they are available, to NG-RAN (during mobility registration, AM policy modification, Service Request, N2 Handover and Xn handover) as specified in 3GPP TS 38.413 [62]. The NG-RAN node, if supported, stores the information in the UE Context. Based on this information, the NG-RAN node provides the 5GS access stratum time to the UE according to the Uu time synchronization error budget as

provided by the TSCTSF (if supported by UE and NG-RAN) and timing synchronization status reports to the UE.

9. The PCF of the UE replies to the TSCTSF with a "201 Created" status code to the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Create service request and with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" status code to the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization_Update service request.
10. The TSCTSF responds the AF/NEF with the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create/Update/Delete/Get service operation response using the "201 Created"/"200 OK" or "204 No Content"/"204 No Content"/"200 OK" status code respectively.
11. The NEF informs the AF about the result of the Nnef_ASTI_Create/Update/Delete/Get service operation performed in step 2 using the "201 Created"/"200 OK" or "204 No Content"/"204 No Content"/"200 OK" status code respectively.
12. If the TSCTSF receives a time synchronization coverage area as part of the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create request in step 2 or as part of the (g)PTP time synchronization service configuration, as described in clause 5.5.11.3 and determines the authorized Time Synchronization Coverage Area, upon the reception of a change in the UE presence in Area of Interest notification, the TSCTSF determines if the authorized time synchronization coverage area condition shall trigger an activation or deactivation of the access stratum time distribution:
 - If the UE moves within any of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, then the TSCTSF determines to enable access stratum time distribution for the UE.
 - If the UE moves outside all of the TAs from the authorized time synchronization coverage area, then the TSCTSF determines to disable access stratum time distribution for the UE.

The TSCTSF updates the previously provided 5GS access stratum time distribution parameters as described in steps 7-9.

13. If the TSCTSF determines to update the enable/disable the 5G access stratum time distribution for the UE in step 12, and the TSCTSF received the time synchronization coverage area as part of the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create/Update request in step 2, the TSCTSF notifies the update of the service status to AF/NEF by sending an HTTP POST to the received callback URI as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

If the TSCTSF receives clock quality acceptance criteria as part of the Ntsctsf_ASTI_Create request in step 2 and the TSCTSF determines a change in the fulfillment of the clock quality acceptance criteria for the UE for which the AF has requested the access stratum time distribution as described in clause 5.5.11.5, the TSCTSF reports the clock quality acceptance criteria result (acceptable/not acceptable) to the AF/NEF. Based on this notification, the AF/NEF decides whether to modify the ASTI service configured for the UE using Ntsctsf_ASTI_Update service.

14. The NEF/AF replies with a "204 No Content" status code.
15. The NEF forwards the received notification to the AF by sending an HTTP POST to the received callback URI as specified in 3GPP TS 29.522 [24].
16. The NEF/AF replies with a "204 No Content" status code.

5.5.11.5 Management of network timing synchronization status monitoring

This procedure is used to notify the AF about the network time synchronization status monitoring for the time synchronization service offered in the (g)PTP based time distribution and in the 5G access stratum time distribution service described in clauses 5.5.11.3 and clause 5.5.11 correspondingly.

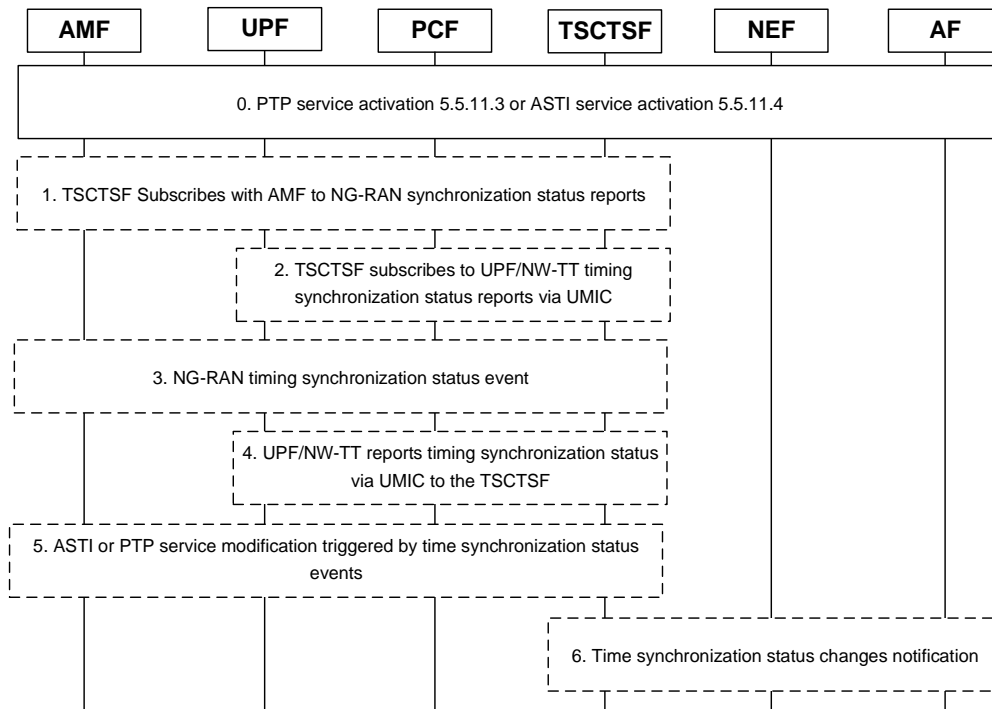


Figure 5.5.11.5-1: Management of network timing synchronization status monitoring

0. An AF requests creation or modification of a (g)PTP-based or an ASTI-based time synchronization service as described in clauses 5.5.11.3 and 5.5.11.4; and to subscribe to time synchronization status notification(s), the AF provides clock quality detail level and, if applicable, clock quality acceptance criteria in the request.

If network timing synchronization status reports are provisioned to the TSCTSF using node-level signalling via control plane, the TSCTSF determines the serving AMF(s) and the UPF/NW-TT nodes (in cases where UPF/NW-TT is involved in providing time information to DS-TT) for the UE(s) that needs to initiate network timing synchronization status monitoring.

1. For 5G access stratum time distribution or PTP instance activation, modification, if the UE/DS-TT obtains time information from NG-RAN and if network timing synchronization status reports are provisioned using node-level signalling via control plane:
- The TSCTSF subscribes with the determined AMF(s) to NG-RAN timing synchronization status updates at the NG-RAN nodes that may provision 5G access stratum time distribution information to the target UE.

NOTE 1: The provisioning of the NG-RAN timing synchronization status attributes can be configured via OAM or via TSCTSF and AMF with node-level signalling. The RAN node is pre-configured with the thresholds for each timing synchronization status attribute as described in clause 5.27.1.12 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]. When the network timing synchronization status exceeds or meets again any of the pre-configured thresholds, the NG-RAN node detects a change of its timing synchronization status (e.g., degradation, failure, improvement) and reports it.

2. For PTP instance activation, modification, if the UPF/NW-TT is involved in providing time information to DS-TT and if network timing synchronization status reports are provisioned using node-level signalling via control plane:

The TSCTSF subscribes to timing synchronization status updates with the UPF/NW-TT that may provision time information via PTP to the target UE.

NOTE 2: The UPF/NW-TT timing synchronization status updates provisioning can be configured via OAM or via UMIC.

3. When timing synchronization status reporting in NG-RAN is configured by the TSCTSF via the AMF in step 1, if the NG-RAN node detects a change on its timing synchronization, the TSCTSF receives an NG-RAN timing

synchronization status update via the AMF. The update contains a scope of the timing synchronization status (as described in clause 5.27.1.12 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]) and some or all of the information elements listed in Table 5.27.1.12-1 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

4. When timing synchronization status reporting in the UPF/NW-TT is configured by the TSCTSF via UMIC in step 2, if the UPF/NW-TT detects a change on its timing synchronization status, the TSCTSF receives a UPF/NW-TT timing synchronization status update from the UPF/NW-TT via UMIC. The update contains some or all of the information elements listed in Table 5.28.3.1-2 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
5. Upon the reception of an update on the NG-RAN and/or NW-TT timing synchronization status, the TSCTSF determines the impacted UE(s) and, if applicable, whether the clock quality acceptance criteria can still be met.

NOTE 3: When the status update indicates degradation in the NG-RAN, the TSCTSF subscribes to notifications about UE presence in an Area of Interest for the gNB node ID(s) or Cell IDs that reported the timing synchronization status degradation/improvement in order to determine the affected UE(s).

NOTE 4: NG-RAN and/or UPF/NW-TT timing synchronization status update can be configured via OAM instead of node-level signalling via control plane.

For each affected UE, if the TSCTSF determines that the clock quality acceptance criteria can still be met, then TSCTSF may update, for (g)PTP, the clockQuality information sent in Announce messages for the PTP instance and/or may activate/deactivate the time synchronization service (If the TSCTSF determines that the clock quality acceptance criteria provided by AF) using PMIC/UMIC reporting, and for ASTI service, the TSCTSF notifies the service status to AF, as described in step 6, which based on this notification decides whether to modify the ASTI service configured for the UE.

NOTE 5: The handling of Announce messages follows existing procedures as described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

6. If the clock quality acceptance criteria cannot be met or can be met again, then TSCTSF informs the NEF/AF about the acceptance criteria result (e.g., acceptable/not acceptable), for PTP based or ASTI time synchronization service as described in clauses 5.5.11.3 and 5.5.11.4.

5.5.12 Deterministic Networking specific parameter provisioning

5.5.12.1 General

The 5G System is integrated with the Deterministic Network as defined in IETF RFC 8655[63] as a logical DetNet transit router as specified in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 4.4.8.4.

Deterministic Networking parameter provisioning allows a DetNet controller to configure deterministic networking parameters in 5GS and provide time-sensitive features that guarantee almost zero packet loss rates and bounded latency.

The DetNet support is achieved by reusing the TSC framework for deterministic QoS and time synchronization services. To enable deterministic networking in 5GS, the DetNet controller collects interface information from the 5GS DetNet node using the 5GS DetNet node information reporting procedure as described in clause 5.5.12.2 and configures the reported interfaces as described in clause 5.5.12.3.

5.5.12.2 5GS DetNet node information reporting

The TSCTSF may provide exposure information to the DetNet controller using information collected from the UPF/NW-TT via parameters in PMIC, and for the device side ports, using parameters provided from the SMF to the TSCTSF via PCF, as described in figure 5.5.12.2-1.

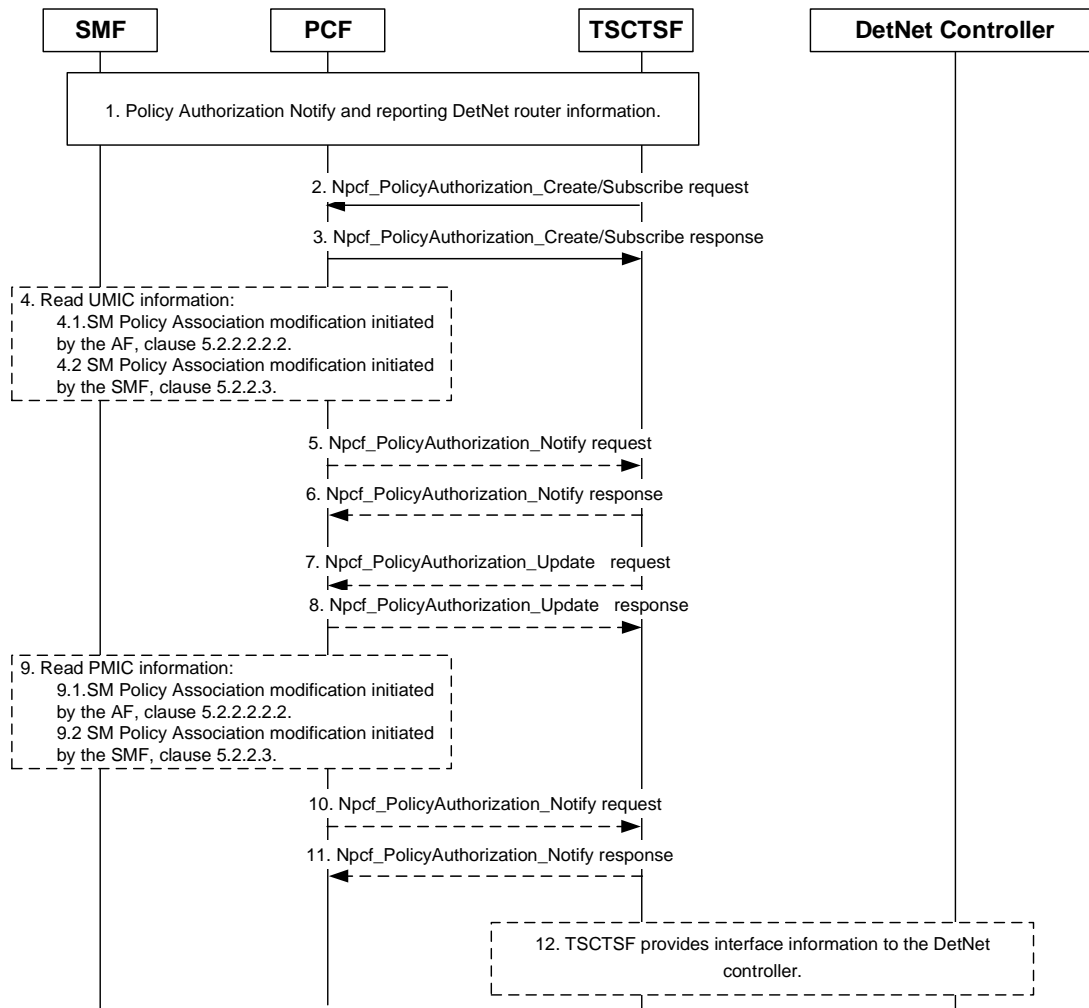


Figure 5.5.12.2-1: 5GS DetNet node information reporting

1. During SM Policy Association establishment, if the feature "TimeSensitiveCommunication" is supported, the PCF based on local configuration for the DNN and S-NSSAI determines that the SM Policy Association enables Deterministic Networking and provides to the SMF the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" policy control request trigger as described in figure 5.2.1-1, step 11.

When the trigger is met, the PCF receives the TSC User Plane information from the SMF (for DetNet it represents 5GS Router information) and the device side information: port number, User Plane node ID and, if available and the feature "MTU_Size" is supported, MTU size for IPv4 and MTU size for IPv6 as described in figure 5.2.2.3-1, step 2. The PCF may also receive NW-TT PMIC (with network side interface configuration information). The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to notify to the TSCTSF the received TSC User Plane information and the device side information, and if available, NW-TT PMIC(s)/UMIC, as described in figure 5.2.2.3-1, step 5 and includes the UE IP address to identify the PDU session.

During SM Policy Association establishment (clause 5.2.1), and when Framed Routes applies, the PCF receives Framed Route information from the SMF during SM Policy Association creation. During SM Policy Association update (figure 5.2.2.3), and when prefix delegation applies, the SMF reports to the PCF the prefix delegated to the UE by IPv6 prefix delegation. When the "ExtraUEaddrReport" feature is supported, and the PCF receives the Framed Route information or IPv6 prefix(es) delegation then the PCF shall invoke the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to notify to the TSCTSF about this event related information if previously TSCTSF subscribed to the "EXTRA_UE_ADDR" event.

2. The TSCTSF then invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create request message to the PCF as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2.1 to create an AF-session. The TSCTSF shall subscribe with the PCF to the

"TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" event, to get notifications about NW-TT PMIC(s)/UMIC updates as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

If the "ExtraUEaddrReport" feature is supported, the TSCTSF shall subscribe to the "EXTRA_UE_ADDR" event to receive information about the one or more Framed Routes available for the PDU session or about the IPv6 prefixes delegated to the UE by IPv6 Prefix Delegation.

Using the User Plane node Id received in step 1, the TSCTSF may subscribe with the NW-TT to receive UMIC information for the indicated User Plane node Id, if not previously received, by provisioning the concerned UMIC container.

3. If the information is available in the PCF, the PCF returns the event related information in the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create response (e.g. framed route information, if the TSCTSF subscribed to notifications on reporting of extra addresses, and frame routes are available).

The TSCTSF stores the DNN, S-NSSAI and IP address(es) as received from PCF and associates them with the AF-session, as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

If the TSCTSF determines the interface configuration information for the created AF-session is complete, the TSCTSF may report to the DetNet controller the collected interface(s) information as described in step 12.

4. The PCF subscribes to UMIC changes with the SMF:
 - 4.1 The PCF provides to the SMF the UMIC information received from the TSCTSF as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2, and the SMF sends the received UMIC to the NW-TT/UPF.
 - 4.2 When the SMF receives the UMIC reported from the UPF/NW-TT, the SMF provides the received UMIC information to the PCF as described in clause 5.2.2.3.
5. The TSCTSF receives from the PCF the notification of the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" event, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], containing the UMIC information with the NW-TT ports of the indicated User Plane node Id. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
6. The TSCTSF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.
7. The TSCTSF shall request PMIC information from the NW-TT using the User Plane node Id received in step 1 and the port number(s) received in step 5, to read network interface configuration for the indicated ports, as specified in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]. The TSCTSF interacts with the PCF by triggering a Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update request message as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
8. The PCF responds with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" status code in response to the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization request.
9. The PCF subscribes to PMIC changes from the SMF:
 - 9.1. The PCF provides to the SMF the PMIC information received from the TSCTSF as described in clause 5.2.2.2.2, which sends the received PMIC to the NW-TT/UPF.
 - 9.2 When the SMF detects PMIC changes for the NW-TT, the SMF provides the received PMIC information to the PCF as described in clause 5.2.2.3.
10. The TSCTSF receives the PMIC information from the NW-TT ports via the PCF with the notification of the "TSN_BRIDGE_INFO" event, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
11. The TSCTSF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.
12. After the TSCTSF determines that the interface information for the AF session is complete, the TSCTSF may provide the collected network and device side interface configuration to the DetNet controller as defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].

When both, the TSCTSF and the DetNet controller support the 3GPP Extension 3gpp-5gs-detnet-node as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60], the TSCTSF may use the user-plane node ID received in step 1 to generate an identifier of the 5GS DetNet node and provide it to the DetNet controller.

NOTE: The 5GS node identification can be realized by providing an identifier of the 5GS DetNet node to the DetNet controller using the exposure of 5GS DetNet node identification specified in the 3GPP Extension 3gpp-5gs-detnet-node in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60], or the TSCTSF can provide different termination points (addresses) for the signalling between the DetNet controller and the TSCTSF, each one representing different 5GS nodes.

5.5.12.3 5GS DetNet node configuration

The DetNet controller triggers the 5GS DetNet node configuration procedure to provide Deterministic Networking specific parameters to 5GS as described in figure 5.5.12.2-1.

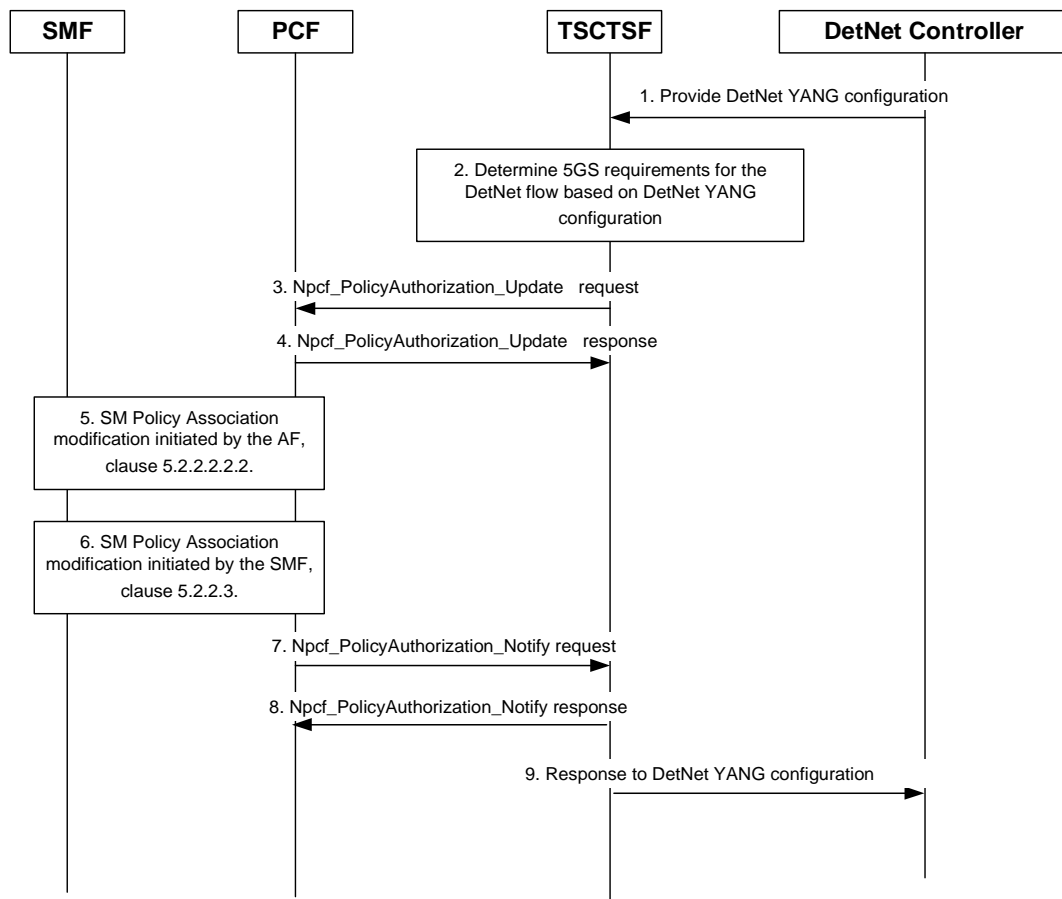


Figure 5.5.12.3-1: DetNet Node configuration

1. The DetNet controller provides YANG data model configuration to the TSCTSF. The TSCTSF uses the identifier of the incoming and outgoing interfaces, as provided in step 10 of figure 5.5.12.2-1, to determine the affected PDU Session(s) and flow direction, whether it is uplink or downlink. The TSCTSF also determines if the flow is UE to UE in which case two PDU sessions will be affected for the flow and the TSCTSF breaks up the requirements to individual requirements for the PDU Sessions.
2. The TSCTSF determines the 5GS requirements for the DetNet flow.

When both, the TSCTSF and the DetNet controller support the 3GPP Extension 3gpp-5gs-detnet-node as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60], the TSCTSF maps the received 5GS maximum latency and/or 5GS maximum loss to QoS parameters to PCF as specified in clause 5.5.12.4. When the TSCTSF and/or the DetNet controller do not support the 3GPP Extension 3gpp-5gs-detnet-node or the DetNet YANG configuration includes the E2E traffic requirements, the TSCTSF derives 5GS requirements based on pre-configured mapping as described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60]. The TSCTSF also constructs a TSCAC for each flow description.

The TSCTSF provides the mapped parameters and the flow description to the PCF(s) on a per AF Session basis for the given UE address.

3. The TSCTSF interacts with the PCF by triggering a `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update` request message as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], to provide the required QoS for each flow description. The TSCTSF subscribes to the report of successful/unsuccessful resource allocation outcome as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
4. The PCF authorizes the request from TSCTSF and responds with a "200 OK" or "204 No Content" status code to the received PATCH request. If the PCF determines that the requirements can't be authorized, it rejects the request with the appropriate status code and error cause. In case the request is rejected, the TSCTSF informs the DetNet controller about the unsuccessful outcome as described in step 9.
5. Once the PCF authorizes the request, the PCF updates the SMF with corresponding new PCC rule(s) and policy control request triggers as specified in the PCF initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure described in clause 5.2.2.2.2. The QoS flow is established according to the 5GS QoS requirements for the DetNet flow.
6. The SMF reports to the PCF the outcome about the successful/unsuccessful establishment of the QoS flow as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
7. The PCF invokes the `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify` request service operation to provide to the TSCTSF the outcome of the QoS provisioning parameters by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI as specified in clause 5.2.2.3.
8. The TSCTSF responds to the PCF with a "204 No Content" status code.
9. The TSCTSF responds to the DetNet controller.

When both, the TSCTSF and the DetNet controller support Extension `3gpp-5gs-detnet-node` as specified in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60], the TSCTSF may provide 5GS specific status code information on the result of the configuration to the DetNet controller. If the status of the flow changes later for any reason (e.g., service data flow deactivation) or the PDU session is released, the TSCTSF notifies the DetNet controller on the status of the flow with 5GS specific information.

5.5.12.4 QoS parameter mapping functions at TSCTSF

The TSCTSF may receive from a DetNet Controller DetNet YANG configuration describing the traffic characteristics and QoS requirements for a DetNet flow(s) as described in IETF RFC 9633 [64] and, if supported, in the 3GPP extension `3gpp-5gs-detnet-node` described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60].

The TSCTSF maps the DetNet configuration as follows before interacting with the PCF:

Table 5.5.12.4-1: QoS parameter mapping functions at the TSCTSF

traffic-profile IETF RFC 9633 [64]		Media Component 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]		
"traffic-requirements"	"min-bandwidth"	"mirBwUI", "mirBwDI" (NOTE 2): Minimum requested bandwidth. Represents the requested guaranteed bit rate.		
	"max-latency"	"tsnQos"	"tscPackDelay": Represents the requested Packet Delay Budget. The provided value is based on a pre-configured mapping for the given deployment.	
	"_3gpp-5gs-node-max-latency" (NOTE 1)	"tsnQos"	"tscPackDelay": Represents the requested Packet Delay Budget. It is the result of subtracting the UE-DS-TT residence time (either provided by the PCF or pre-configured at TSCTSF) from the "_3gpp-5gs-node-max-latency".	
	"max-loss"	"tsnQos"	"maxPer": Represents the requested maximum Packet Error Rate. The provided value is based on a pre-configured mapping for the given deployment.	
	"_3gpp-5gs-node-max-loss" (NOTE 1)	"tsnQos"	"maxPer": Represents the requested maximum Packet Error Rate.	
	"max-consecutive-loss-tolerance"	"tscaInputUI", "tscaInputDI" (NOTE 2)	"surTimeInNumMsg", "surTimeInTime": Represents the survival time (when the mapping is possible, e.g. when there is only a single packet per interval).	
"traffic-spec"	"interval"	"tscaInputUI", "tscaInputDI" (NOTE 2)	"periodicity": Represents the periodicity between the start of two data bursts.	
	"max-pkts-per-interval"	"tsnQos"	"maxTscBurstSize": Represents the maximum burst size. It is calculated as the max-pkts-per-interval * (max-payload-size + protocol header size).	
	"max-payload-size"			
	"protocol header-size"			
	"interval"	"marBwUI", "marBwDI" (NOTE 2): Maximum requested bandwidth. Represents the requested maximum bit rate. It is calculated as the max-pkts-per-interval * (max-payload-size + protocol header size)/interval.		
	"max-pkts-per-interval"			
	"max-payload-size"			
"protocol header-size"				
NOTE 1: When both the TSCTSF and the DetNet controller support 3GPP extensions described in 3GPP TS 29.565 [60] to the IETF RFC 9633 [64], the DetNet controller may provide the "_3gpp-5gs-node-max-latency" and "_3gpp-5gs-node-max-loss" specific to the 5GS system.				
NOTE 2: The UL flow direction represents the traffic at the ingress interface of the DS-TT/UE. The DL flow direction represents the traffic at the ingress interface of the NW-TT.				

The DetNet flow specification for the application flow(s) is based on the IP source and destination addresses, IPv4 protocol or IPv6 next header, IPv4 type of service or IPv6 traffic class, IPv6 flow label, TCP or UDP source or destination ports, and IPsec SPI header fields as defined in section 5.1 of IETF RFC 8939 [32]. The DetNet flow specification is mapped into the corresponding UL and/or DL fields of the 5GS Flow Description, within the media subcomponent, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [20].

Based on the mapping of the received traffic profile and/or 3GPP extended parameters, the TSCTSF provides the derived TSC Assistance Container and the related QoS information to the PCF as specified in table 5.5.12.4-1.

5.5.13 Negotiation for planned data transfer with QoS requirements

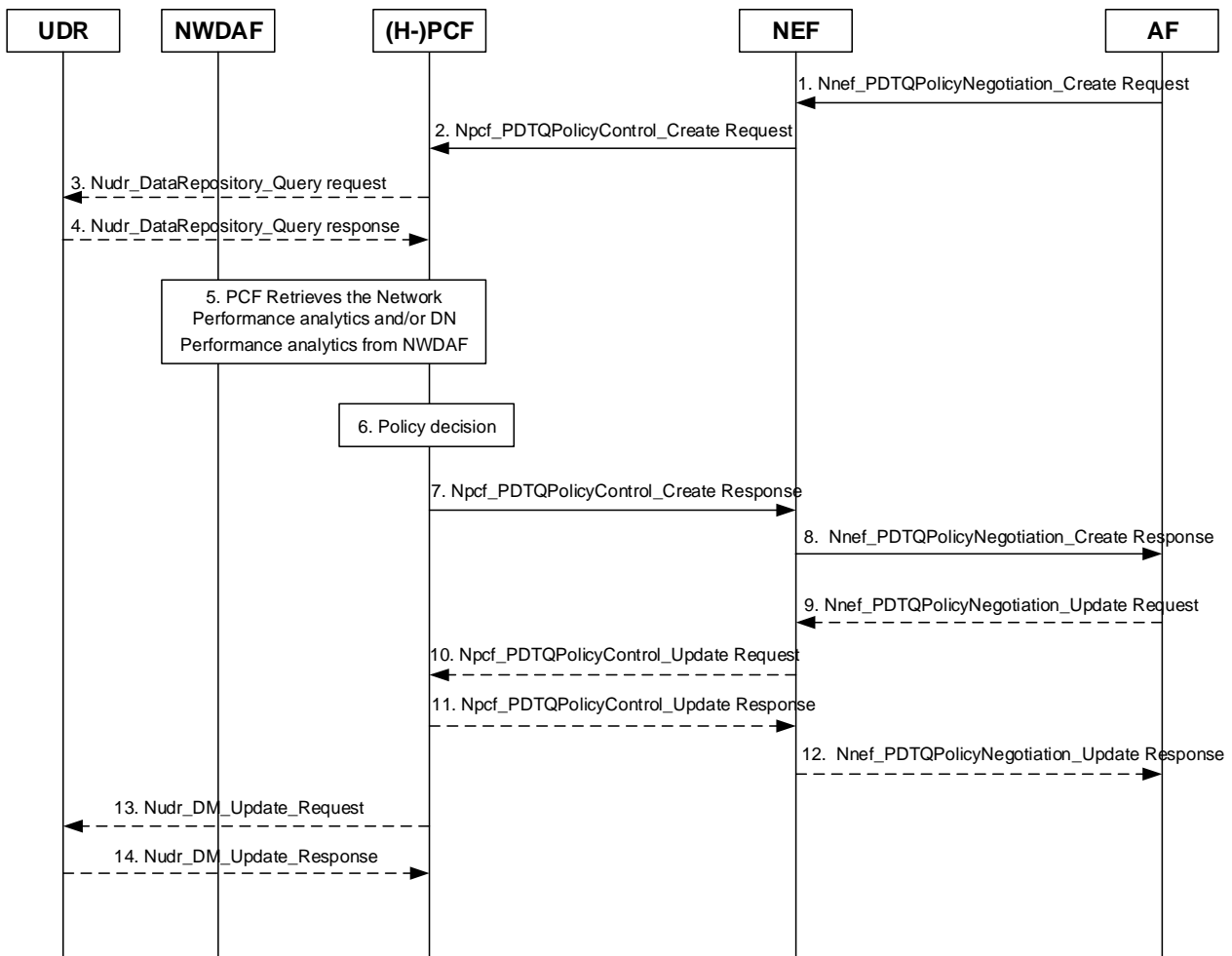


Figure 5.5.13-1: Negotiation for PDTQ procedure

1. The AF invokes the Nnef_PDTQPolicyNegotiation_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the resource "PDTQ Policy Subscriptions" to negotiate the PDTQ policies. The detailed information contained in AF request is described in clause 4.4.34 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24]. When the AF provides a geographical area, then the NEF maps it based on local configuration into a short list of TAs and/or NG-RAN nodes and/or cells identifiers, which are provided to the (H-) PCF.

NOTE 1: The AF can determine the minimum QoS requirements based on the UEs who are expected to participate in the PDTQ transfer window, the network input data and the group application data transfer trigger conditions.

The NEF may map the ASP ID into DNN and S-NSSAI to be used in step 2.

NOTE 2: The Application ID provided by the AF and the Application ID that is provided to NWDAF can be different, and the mapping will be performed in the PCF.

2. Upon receipt of a PDTQ policies request from the AF, the NEF invokes the Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Create service operation to the (H-) PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the resource "PDTQ policies". The detailed information contained in NEF request is described in clause 5.2.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.543 [68].

- 3-4. The (H-) PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request to the resource "PdtqData" as defined in clause 5.2.17.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to request from the UDR all existing PDTQ policies. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with all the stored PDTQ policies and corresponding related information to the (H-) PCF.

NOTE 3: In case only one PCF is deployed in the network, PDTQ policies can be locally stored in the PCF and the interaction with the UDR is not required.

5. The PCF requests and/or subscribes to the "Network Performance Analytics" from NWDAF as defined in clause 5.7.5 of 3GPP TS 29.552 [48] and/or the "DN Performance Analytics" as defined in clause 5.7.16 of 3GPP TS 29.552 [48].
6. The (H-) PCF determines one or more PDTQ policies based on the information received from the NEF and other available information (e.g. network policy, existing PDTQ policies, network area information and performance analytics from the NWDAF). Each PDTQ policy includes a recommended time window for the traffic transfer for each of the AF session for each of the UEs involved.
7. The (H-) PCF sends a "201 Created" response to the Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Create service operation with the acceptable one or more PDTQ policies and a PDTQ Reference ID.
8. The NEF sends a "201 Created" response to forward the received PDTQ policies to the AF. If the NEF received only one PDTQ policy from the (H-) PCF, steps 9-12 are not executed and the flow proceeds to step 13. Otherwise, the flow proceeds to step 9.
9. If more than one PDTQ policies were provided to the AF, the AF invokes the Nnef_PDTQPolicyNegotiation_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual PDTQ Policy Subscription" as described in clause 4.4.34 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] to provide the NEF with the selected PDTQ policy. The AF may also send an HTTP PATCH to request to disable/enable the PDTQ warning notification.
10. The NEF invokes the Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual PDTQ Policy" as described in clause 5.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.543 [68] to provide the (H-) PCF with the selected PDTQ policy and/or PDTQ warning notification information.
11. The (H-) PCF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the NEF.
12. The NEF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the AF.
- 13-14. If the (H-) PCF does not locally store the PDTQ policy and if applicable, PDTQ warning notification information, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PUT request to the resource "IndividualPdtqData", to store for the provided ASP identifier the new PDTQ policy and if applicable, warning notification information together with the information defined in clause 5.4.2.33 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the (H-) PCF.

5.5.13A Modification of PDTQ warning notification request indication procedure

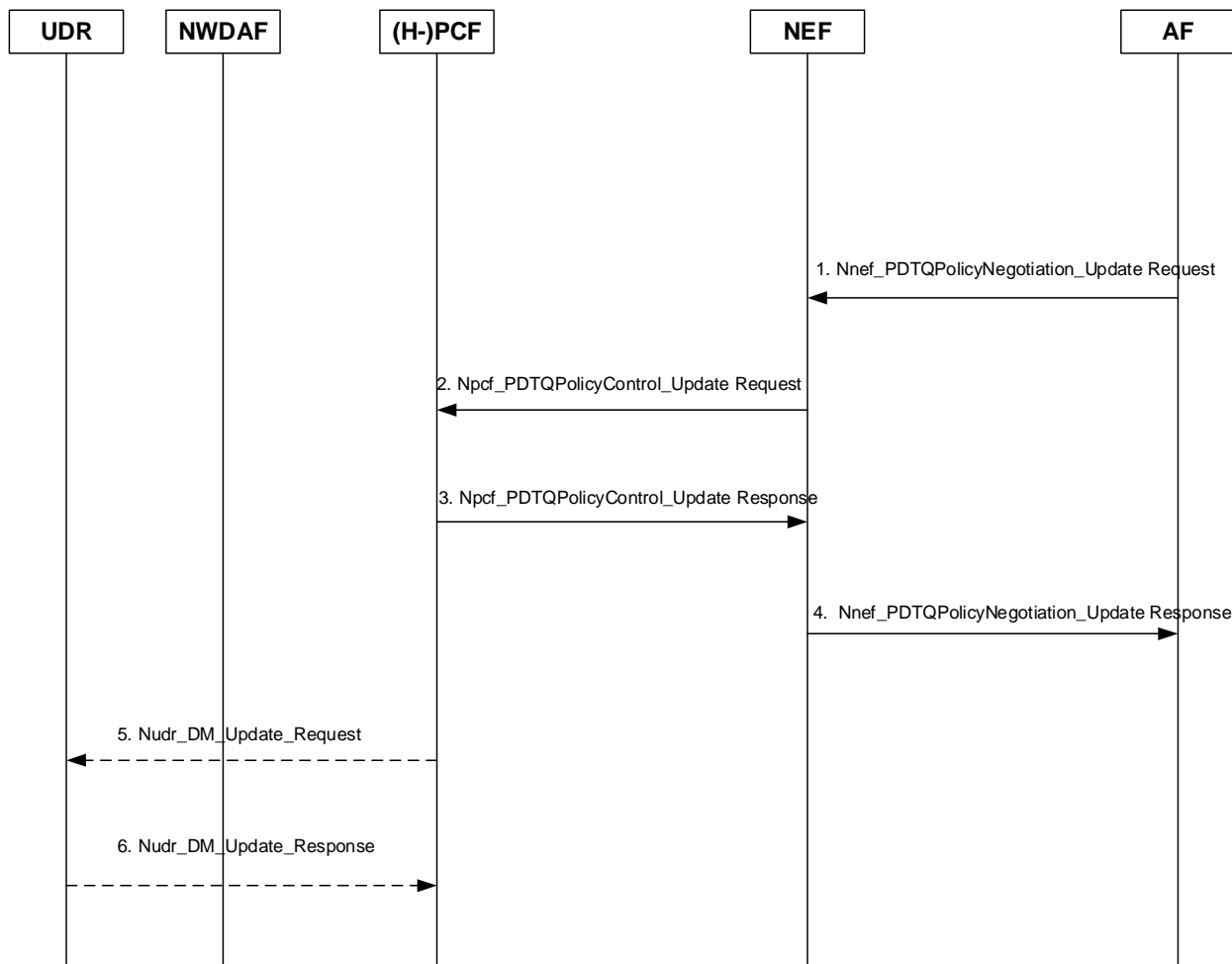


Figure 5.5.13A-1: Modification of PDTQ warning notification request indication procedure

1. The AF sends an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual PDTQ Policy Subscription" as described in clause 4.4.34 of 3GPP TS 29.522 [24] to disable/enable the PDTQ warning notification.
2. The NEF invokes the Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "Individual PDTQ Policy" as described in clause 5.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.543 [68] to provide the (H-) PCF with the PDTQ warning notification information.
3. The (H-) PCF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the NEF.
4. The NEF sends an HTTP PATCH response message to the AF.
- 5-6. If the (H-) PCF does not locally store the PDTQ warning notification information, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the resource "IndividualPdtqData", to store the warning notification information together with the information defined in clause 5.4.2.33 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]. The UDR responds to the (H-) PCF.

5.5.14 PDTQ warning notification procedure

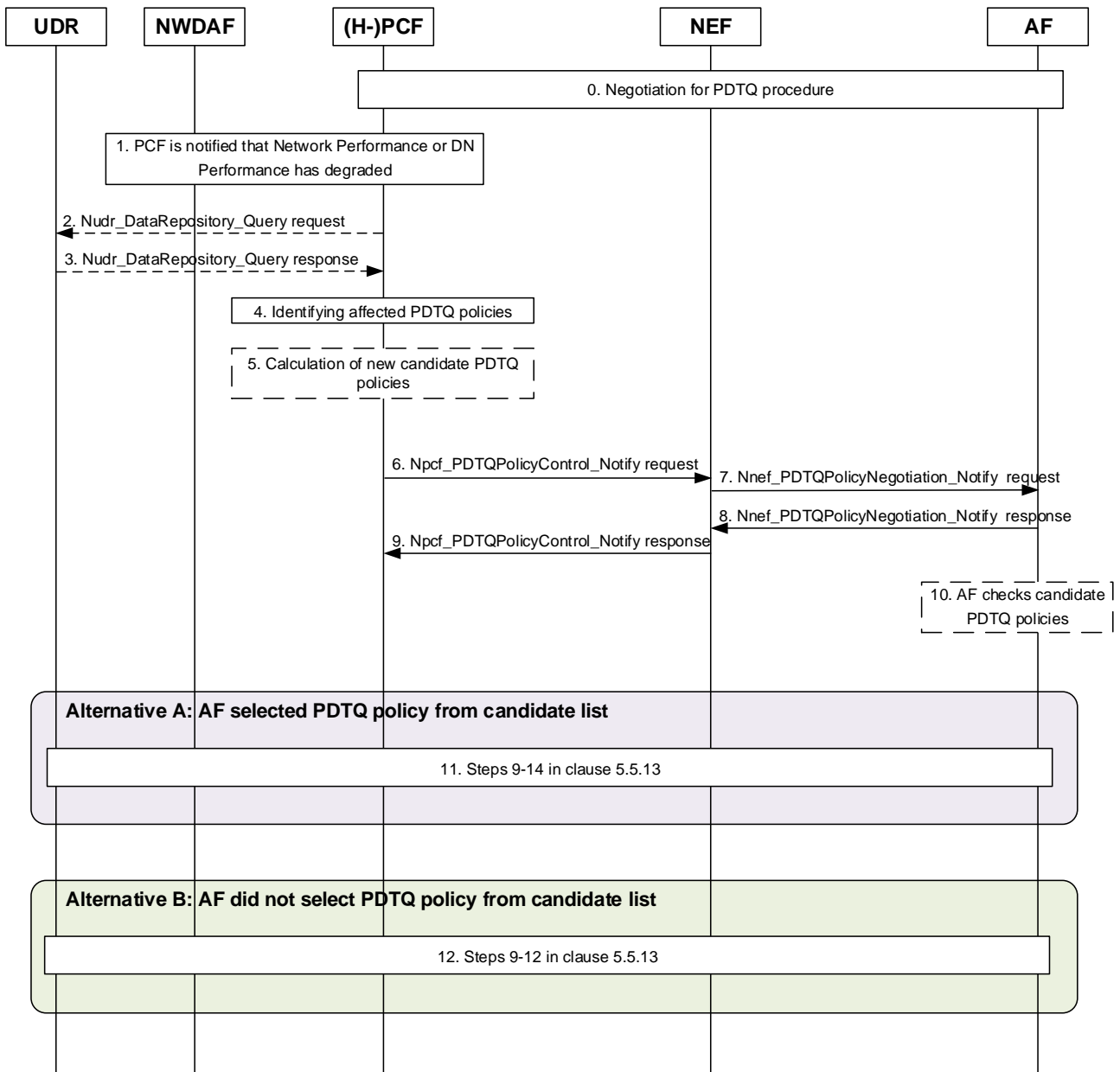


Figure 5.5.14-1: PDTQ warning notification procedure

0. The negotiation for PDTQ policy as described in clause 5.5.13 is completed. In addition, the PCF has subscribed to "Network Performance Analytics" and/or "DN Performance Analytics" from NWDAF for the area of interest and time window of a PDTQ policy following the procedure and services described in 3GPP TS 29.552 [48]. The AF subscribes to PDTQ warning notification from the (H-)PCF via NEF during Negotiation for PDTQ procedure (see clause 5.5.13).

1. The (H-)PCF is notified when the subscribed "Network Performance Analytics" and/or "DN Performance Analytics" from the NWDAF in the area of interest reaches the Reporting Threshold as described in clause 5.7.5 and clause 5.7.16 of 3GPP TS 29.552 [48] respectively.

2-3. The (H-)PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request to the "PdtqData" resource, to request from the UDR all stored PDTQ policies. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with all the stored PDTQ policies and corresponding related information to the (H-)PCF.

NOTE 1: If only one PCF is deployed in the network, PDTQ policies might be locally stored in the PCF and the interaction with the UDR is not required.

4. The (H-)PCF identifies the PDTQ policies that are affected by degradation of the performance. For each affected PDTQ policy the (H-)PCF determines the ASP of which the PDTQ traffic will be influenced by the degradation of performance analytics and which requested the (H-)PCF to send the notification.
5. Based on the operator policies, the (H-)PCF decides for each of the affected PDTQ policies whether a new list of candidate PDTQ policies has to be calculated.

NOTE 2: If the (H-)PCF does not find any new candidate PDTQ policies, the previously negotiated PDTQ policy is kept and no interaction with the AF occurs, i.e. steps 6 to 12 are not performed.

6. The (H-)PCF invokes the Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with the PDTQ warning notification to the Notification URI which was received in Npcf_PDTQPolicyControl_Create request.

The PDTQ warning notification includes PDTQ Reference ID and a list of candidate PDTQ policies as described in clause 5.2.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.543 [68].

7. Upon the reception of the PDTQ warning notification from the (H-)PCF, the NEF invokes the Nnef_PDTQPolicyNegotiation_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with the PDTQ warning notification to the Notification URI, which was received in Nnef_PDTQPolicyNegotiation_Create request.
8. The AF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the NEF.
9. The NEF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the (H-)PCF.
10. When the AF receives the PDTQ warning notification, the AF checks new candidate PDTQ policies.
11. If the AF selects one of the new PDTQ policies from the candidate list, the steps 9 - 14 from clause 5.5.13 are executed with the difference that the AF has to invoke the Nnef_PDTQPolicyNegotiation_Update service operation as well when only one PDTQ policy was provided by the (H-)PCF and the (H-)PCF removes the no longer valid PDTQ policy from the UDR for the corresponding PDTQ Reference ID.
12. If the AF does not select any of the PDTQ policies, the steps 9 - 12 from clause 5.5.13 are executed and the selected PDTQ policy ID shall be set to value "0" in the HTTP PATCH request, and the previously negotiated PDTQ policy shall be kept.

NOTE 3: Steps 5 to 12 can occur multiple times, i.e. for each affected PDTQ policy.

5.6 UE Policy Association Management

5.6.1 UE Policy Association Establishment

5.6.1.1 General

The procedures in this clause, which may take place for a UE registered in the same AMF or different AMFs for 3GPP access and non-3GPP access, are performed when the UE initially registers with the network, when the UE registers with 5GS during the UE moving from EPS to 5GS and if there is no existing UE Policy Association, when the new AMF establishes the UE Policy Association with the new PCF during AMF relocation, or when interworking between 5GS and EPS if a UE Policy Container is received from the UE via SMF+PGW-C for URSP provisioning in EPS.

NOTE 1: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Query/Update/Subscribe service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 2: For details of the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create/Update service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

NOTE 3: For details of the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer/N1N2MessageSubscribe/N1MessageNotify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.518 [32].

NOTE 4: For URSP provisioning in EPS the (V-)PCF for a PDU session replaces the AMF in the procedure described in clauses 5.6.1.2 and 5.6.1.3. The PCF does not use the Namf_Communication service to provision URSP to the (V-)PCF for a PDU session (i.e., steps 10 o 15 in clause 5.6.1.2 do not apply), but the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service.

NOTE 5: For details of the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.594 [23].

5.6.1.2 Non-roaming

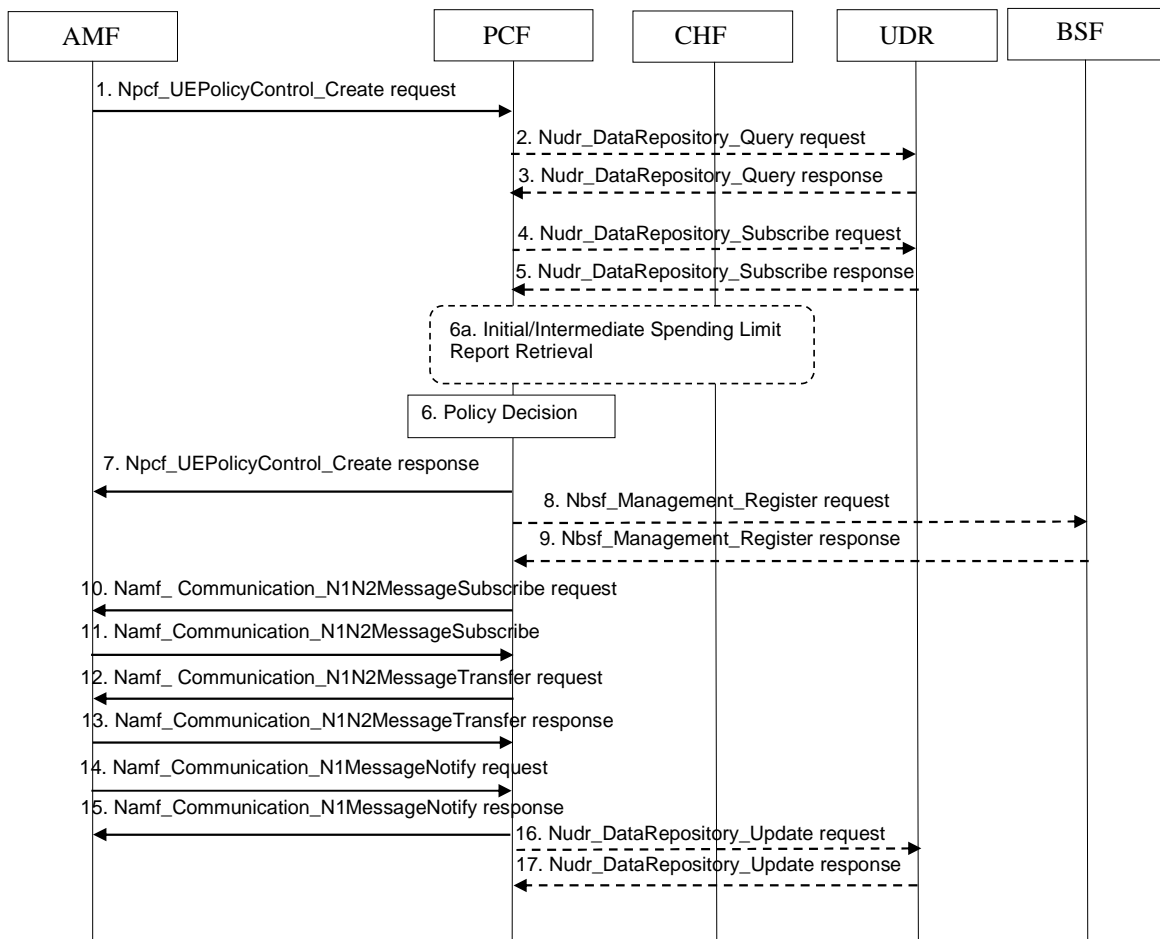


Figure 5.6.1.2-1: UE Policy Association Establishment procedure – Non-roaming

1. The AMF receives the registration request from the AN.

Based on local policy, and the authorized capabilities received from the UE (e.g., V2X capabilities, A2X capabilities, 5G ProSe capabilities, Ranging/SL capabilities), as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], the AMF decides to select and contact the PCF to create the UE policy association. The AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "UE Policy Associations" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

- For URSP provisioning in EPS, if the "EpsUrsp" feature is supported and a UE Policy Container is received from the UE via SMF+PGW-C, the PCF for a PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "UE Policy Associations" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
- If the "EpsUrsp" feature is supported and the PCF for the PDU session determines that the 5GS to EPS mobility scenario applies as specified in clause 5.2.2.3, then PCF for the PDU session selects the PCF for the UE as described in clause 5.2.2.3, invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31] and retrieves from the UE policy association previously established in 5GS the available UE policy section(s) and/or triggers as defined in clause 4.2.2.1.1a of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

When multiple PCF for the PDU sessions invoke the UE Policy Association establishment procedure, the PCF for the UE selects, based on operator policies or implementation specific means, the UE Policy Association in use for the the delivery of URSP and the provisioning of the applicable Policy Control Request Trigger(s) as described in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

- 2-3. If the PCF does not have the subscription data or the latest list of UPSIs for the UE, it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request to the "UEPolicySet" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the latest UPSIs and its content, and/or the subscription data.

Additionally, if the "EnhancedBackgroundDataTransfer" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] is supported, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "Applied BDT Policy Data" resource to retrieve the applied BDT Policy Data. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored applied BDT Policy Data. And then, if the corresponding transfer policy is not locally stored in the PCF, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending the HTTP GET request to the "IndividualBdtData" resource or the "BdtData" collection resource with the URI query parameter "bdt-ref-ids" as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], to retrieve the related Background Data Transfer policy information (i.e. Time window and Location criteria) stored in the UDR. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF.

Additionally, if the "AfGuideURSP" feature is supported and URSPs are influenced by the AF, and/or V2XP and/or A2XP if the "A2X" feature is supported, and/or the "ProSe" feature is supported and ProSeP policies and/or RSLPP if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported may be delivered to the UE, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "Service Parameter Data" resource to retrieve the service parameter data. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response with the stored service parameter data.

Additionally, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending the HTTP GET request to the "5GVnGroupsInternal" resource to retrieve the group configuration of the received 5G VN Group Id as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47], if not internally available.

NOTE 1: The PCF can internally store the retrieved 5G VN group configuration data for later use for other SUPIs that belong to the same Internal-Group-Id.

- 4-5. The PCF may request notifications from the UDR on changes in the policy data subscription information (e.g. UE Policy Set resource), and in this case, the PCF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PolicyDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, if the "EnhancedBackgroundDataTransfer" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.504 [27] is supported, to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the applied BDT Policy Data, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "ApplicationDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, if the PCF requests notifications from the UDR on changes in the service parameter data, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "ApplicationDataSubscriptions" resource. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

Additionally, to request notifications from the UDR on changes in the 5G VN group configuration data associated to each of the Internal-Group-Id provided to the PCF, the PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "SubscriptionDataSubscriptions" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47], if not internally available. The UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription.

- 6a Based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF, and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF determines that the status of additional policy counters is required, the PCF initiates an Intermediate Spending Limit Report Retrieval as defined in clause 5.3.3.

6. The PCF determines whether and which UE policy has to be provisioned or updated as defined in clause 4.2.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], and may determine applicable Policy Control Request Trigger(s).

The PCF determines whether and which ANDSP and/or URSP has to be provisioned or updated based on the NF service consumer inputs, the received list of UPSIs from the UE, if available, the UE Policy Sections stored in the UDR, if available, other received UE parameters, if available, the policy subscription and application data retrieved from UDR, if available, analytics information received from NWDAF (applicable to URSP), if available, and local policies as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.1, 4.2.2.2.2 (for ANDSP) and/or 4.2.2.2.3 (for URSP) of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "V2X" feature is supported, the PCF determines whether the V2XP and the V2X N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.2 and 4.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "A2X" feature is supported, the PCF determines whether the A2XP and the A2X N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.4 and 4.2.2.5 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "ProSe" feature is supported, the PCF determines whether the ProSeP and the 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.3 and 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported, the PCF determines whether the RSLPP and the Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clause 4.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

In addition, the PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 2: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in PCF is related to that limitation.

- If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in a single Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation and messages 10 to 13 are thus executed one time.
 - If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. Each UE policy information fragment will be then sent in separated Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operations and messages 10 to 13 are thus executed several times, one time for each UE policy information fragment.
7. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the AMF with the Policy Control Request Trigger(s) if applicable, and potentially further information as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - For URSP provisioning in EPS, if the PCF decided to provision or update the URSP in step 6, the PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create response service operation to provision or update the URSP and the PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. Steps 10-15 are not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.
 - 8-9. If the "ProSe" feature is supported for the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service and/or the "EpsUrsr" feature is supported for the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service and the UE indicated in step 1 that the UE supports URSP provisioning in EPS, the PCF may register with the BSF as the PCF serving this UE, if not already registered at the AM Policy Association establishment. This is performed by using the Nbsf_Management_Register operation, providing as inputs the SUPI, the GPSI, if available, and the PCF end points related to the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization service.
 10. To subscribe to notifications of N1 message for UE Policy Delivery Result, or subsequent UE policy requests (e.g. for V2XP and/or A2XP and/or ProSeP and/or RSLPP), the PCF invokes Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageSubscribe service operation to the AMF by sending the HTTP POST method with the URI of the "N1N2 Subscriptions Collection for Individual UE Contexts" resource.
 11. The AMF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the PCF.
 12. If the PCF determines to provision or update the UE policy in step 6, the PCF sends the UE policy to the UE via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "V2X" feature is supported and the PCF determines to provision V2XP and V2X N2 PC5 policy in step 6, the PCF sends the V2XP to the UE and the V2X N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "ProSe" feature is supported and the PCF determines to provision ProSeP and 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy in step 6, the PCF sends the ProSeP to the UE and the 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "A2X" feature is supported and the PCF determines to provision A2XP and A2X N2 PC5 policy in step 6, the PCF sends the A2XP to the UE and the A2X N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported and the PCF determines to provision RSLPP and Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy in step 6, the PCF sends the RSLPP to the UE and the Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

The PCF can provision the UE policy (including V2XP and/or A2XP and/or ProSeP and/or RSLPP) and V2X N2 PC5 policy and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 Policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 Policy in the same message.

13. The AMF sends a response to the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

14. When receiving the UE Policy container, the AMF forwards the response of the UE to the PCF using Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service operation.

15. The PCF sends a response to the Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service operation.

NOTE 3: Steps 7 and 10-15 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create request and can be received by the AMF in any order; e.g., all or some of the steps 10-15 can be received by the AMF prior to step 7. Note that, to ensure the UE Policy delivery response within the N1MessageNotify is received, the PCF should wait for the reception of a successful N1N2MessageSubscribe response (step 11) before sending the N1N2MessageTransfer request (step 12).

16-17. The PCF maintains the latest list of UE policy sections delivered to the UE (in step 12) and updates the UE policy information for the subscriber including the latest list of UPSIs and its content in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation.

- If there is no UE policy information retrieved in step 3, the PCF sends an HTTP PUT request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response.
- Otherwise, the PCF sends an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response accordingly.

If the "EpsUrsp" feature is supported for the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service and the UE indicated in step 1 that the UE supports URSP provisioning in EPS, the PCF shall update the UDR with the received UE support of URSP provisioning in EPS.

5.6.1.3 Roaming

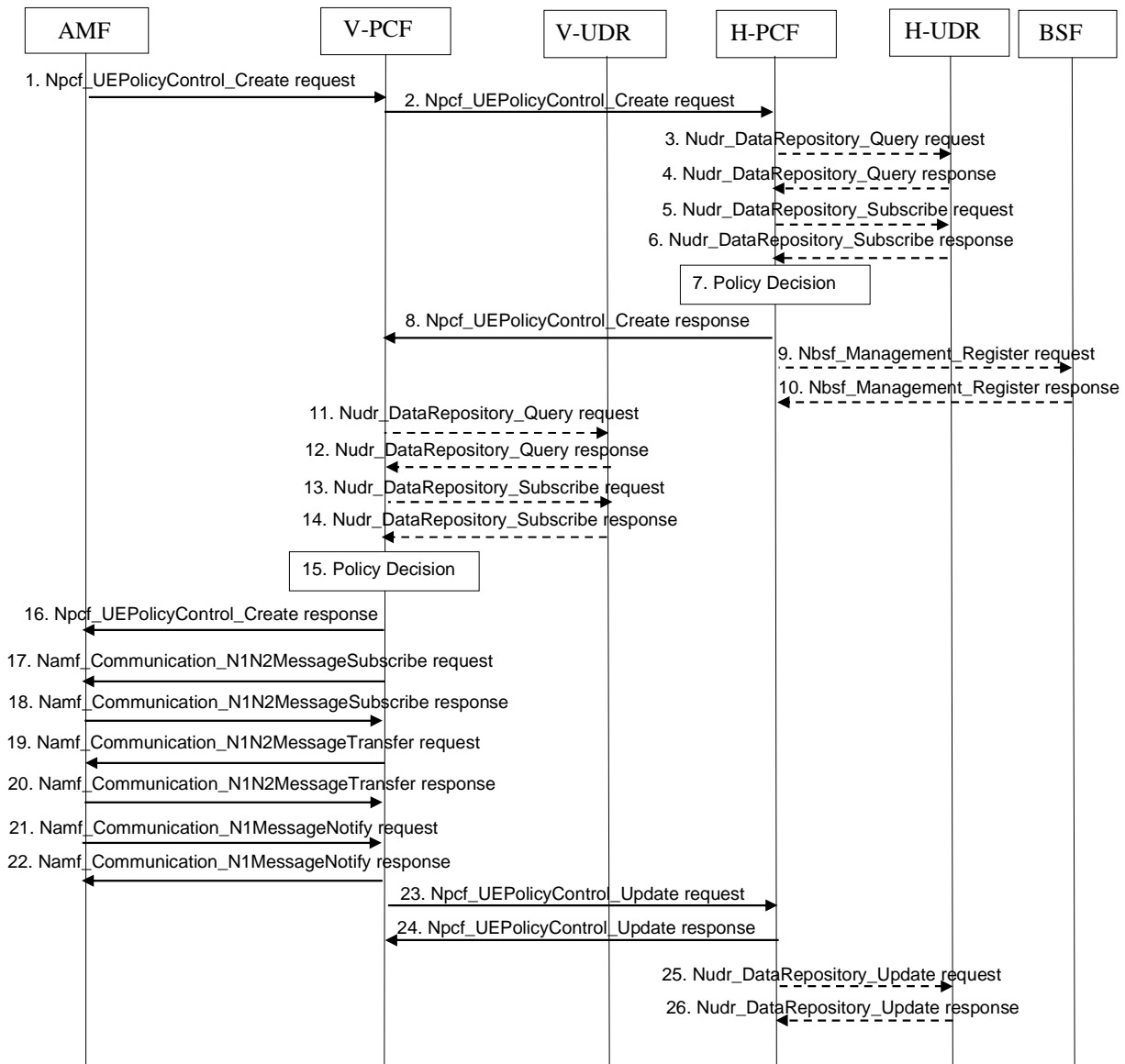


Figure 5.6.1.3-1: UE Policy Association Establishment procedure - Roaming

1. The AMF receives the registration request from the AN.

Based on local policy, and the capabilities received from the UE (e.g. V2X capabilities and/or A2X capabilities) , as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], the AMF decides to establish UE Policy Association with the V-PCF. The AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "UE Policy Associations" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

- For URSP provisioning in EPS, if the "EpsUrsp" feature is supported:

- a. if a UE Policy Container is received from the UE via SMF+PGW-C; or
- b. if the V-PCF for the PDU session determines that the 5GS to EPS mobility scenario applies as specified in clause 5.2.2.3;

then the V-PCF for a PDU session selects the V-PCF for the UE as described in in clause 5.6.1.2 and invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "UE Policy Associations" resource as defined in clause 4.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

2. The V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "UE Policy Associations" resource to forward the information received from AMF to the H-PCF. The request

includes the parameters received in step 1. The V-PCF also provides the H-PCF the Notification URI where to send a notification when the policy is updated.

- 3-6. These steps are the same as steps 2-5 in clause 5.6.1.2, except the description of "EnhancedBackgroundDataTransfer" feature is not applicable.
7. The H-PCF determines whether and which ANDSP and/or URSP has to be provisioned or updated based on the NF service consumer inputs, the received list of UPSIs from the UE, if available, the UE Policy Sections stored in the UDR, if available, other received UE parameters, if available, the policy subscription and application data retrieved from UDR, if available, analytics information received from NWDAF (applicable to URSP), if available and local policies as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.1, 4.2.2.2.2 (for ANDSP) and/or 4.2.2.2.3 (for URSP) of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the H-PCF does not receive information from the UE (the list of UPSIs and/or other UE parameters, as e.g. the ANDSP support indication) in step 2, and this information is available in the UDR and the H-PCF determines the information in UDR is reliable, the H-PCF uses the UE information retrieved from the UDR in the determination of whether and which ANDSP and/or URSP has to be provisioned. In this case, the UE parameters retrieved from UDR (e.g. the ANDSP support indication) are included in step 8 as described in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "V2X" feature is supported, the H-PCF determines whether the V2XP and the V2X N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.2 and 4.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "ProSe" feature is supported, the H-PCF determines whether the ProSeP and the 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.3 and 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "A2X" feature is supported, the H-PCF determines whether the A2XP and the A2X N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.4 and 4.2.2.5 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported, the H-PCF determines whether the RSLPP and the Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy have to be provisioned as defined in clause 4.2.2.2.1.5 and 4.2.2.6 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

In addition, the H-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 1: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in H-PCF is related to that limitation.

If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create response service operation.

- If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the H-PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. One fragment will be sent in Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create response service operation, and others will be sent by initiating the PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure specified in clause 5.6.2.2.3.

8. The H-PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the V-PCF with the decided UE policy, Policy Control Request Trigger(s) N2 PC5 policy and UE parameters, if available.
- 9-10. If the "ProSe" feature is supported for the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service, the H-PCF may register with the BSF as the PCF serving this UE. This is performed by using the Nbsf_Management_Register operation, providing as inputs the SUPI, the GPSI, if available, and the PCF end points related to the Npcf_AMPolicyAuthorization service.
11. The V-PCF invokes Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request to the "PlmnUePolicySet" resource to retrieve the list of UPSIs and its content stored in the V-UDR for the PLMN ID of this UE. Alternatively, the V-PCF can have this information configured locally.
12. The V-UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the V-PCF with the UE policy information.
13. The V-PCF may request notifications from the V-UDR on changes in UE policy information, and in this case, the PCF shall invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PolicyDataSubscriptions" resource.
14. The V-UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to acknowledge the subscription from the V-PCF.

15. The V-PCF determines whether and which UE policy has to be provisioned or updated as defined in clause 4.2.2.2.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], and may determine applicable Policy Control Request Trigger(s).

The V-PCF determines whether and which visited ANDSP has to be provisioned based on the NF service consumer inputs, the received list of UPSIs from the UE, if available, the UE Policy Sections locally configured or stored in the UDR for the UE PLMN, other received UE parameters, if available, and local policies as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.1, and 4.2.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

If the V-PCF does not receive information from the UE (the list of UPSIs and/or other UE parameters, as e.g. the ANDSP support indication) in step 1, the "UECapabilityIndication" feature is supported, and UE parameters are received from the H-PCF as defined in in step 8, the V-PCF uses the received UE parameters in the determination of whether and which ANDSP has to be provisioned.

If the "V2X" feature is supported and the V-PCF received the V2XP and the V2X N2 PC5 policy, the V-PCF sends the V2XP to the UE and the V2X N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "ProSe" feature is supported and the V-PCF received the ProSeP and the 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, the V-PCF sends the ProSeP to the UE and the 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

If the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported and the V-PCF received the RSLPP and Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy, the V-PCF sends the RSLPP to the UE and the Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy to the NG-RAN via the AMF by invoking the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

The PCF can provision the UE policy (including V2XP and/or A2XP and/or ProSeP and/or RSLPP) and V2X N2 PC5 policy and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 Policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 Policy in the same message.

In addition, the V-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 2: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in V-PCF is related to that limitation.

- If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in a single Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation and messages 19 to 24 are thus executed one time.
 - If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the V-PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. Each UE policy information fragment will be then sent in separated Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operations and messages 19 to 24 are thus executed several times, one time for each UE policy information fragment.
16. The V-PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the AMF with the Policy Control Request Trigger(s) if available, and potentially further information as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
- For URSP provisioning in EPS, and LBO roaming scenarios, if the V-PCF received the URSP in step 15, the V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create response service operation to provision or update the URSP and the V-PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the V-PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. Steps 17-22 are not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.
17. To subscribe to notifications of N1 message for UE Policy Delivery Result, or subsequent UE policy requests (e.g. for V2XP and/or A2XP and/or ProSeP and/or RSLPP), the V-PCF invokes Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageSubscribe service operation to the AMF by sending the HTTP POST method with the URI of the "N1N2 Subscriptions Collection for Individual UE Contexts" resource.
18. The AMF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the V-PCF.
19. The V-PCF invokes the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation to send the policy decided locally in step 13 and to forward the policy received from the H-PCF in step 8.
20. The AMF sends a response to the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation.

21. When receiving the UE Policy container for the result of the UE policy, the AMF forwards the response of the UE to the V-PCF using Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service operation.
22. The V-PCF sends a response to the Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service operation.
23. Upon receipt of the UE Policy container belonging to the H-PLMN in step 21, the V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource to forward the response of the UE to the H-PCF.
 - For URSP provisioning in EPS, and LBO roaming scenarios, the UE Policy container belonging to the H-PLMN is received from the V-PCF for the PDU session using the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation.
24. The H-PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the V-PCF.

NOTE 3: Steps 16-24 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create request and can be received by the AMF in any order, e.g., all or some of the steps 17-24 can be received by the AMF prior to step 16. Note that, to ensure the UE Policy delivery response within the N1MessageNotify is received, the PCF should wait for the reception of a successful N1N2MessageSubscribe response (step 18) before sending the N1N2MessageTransfer request (step 19).

- 25-26. The H-PCF maintains the latest list of UE policy information delivered to the UE and updates UE policy including the latest list of UPSIs and its content in the H-UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation.
 - If there is no UE policy information retrieved in step 4, the H-PCF sends an HTTP PUT request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the UDR sends an HTTP "201 Created" response.
 - Otherwise, the H-PCF sends an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the H-UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" or "204 No Content" response accordingly.

5.6.2 UE Policy Association Modification

5.6.2.1 UE Policy Association Modification initiated by the AMF

5.6.2.1.1 General

The procedures in this clause are performed when a Policy Control Request Trigger condition is met or when the new AMF reuses the UE Policy Association established by the old AMF with the PCF during AMF relocation.

NOTE 1: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 2: For details of the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update/UpdateNotify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

NOTE 3: For details of the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer/N1MessageNotify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.518 [32].

NOTE 4: When the UE Policy Association is for URSP provisioning in EPS the (V-)PCF for a PDU session replaces the AMF in the procedure described in clause 5.6.2.1.2.

5.6.2.1.2 Non-roaming

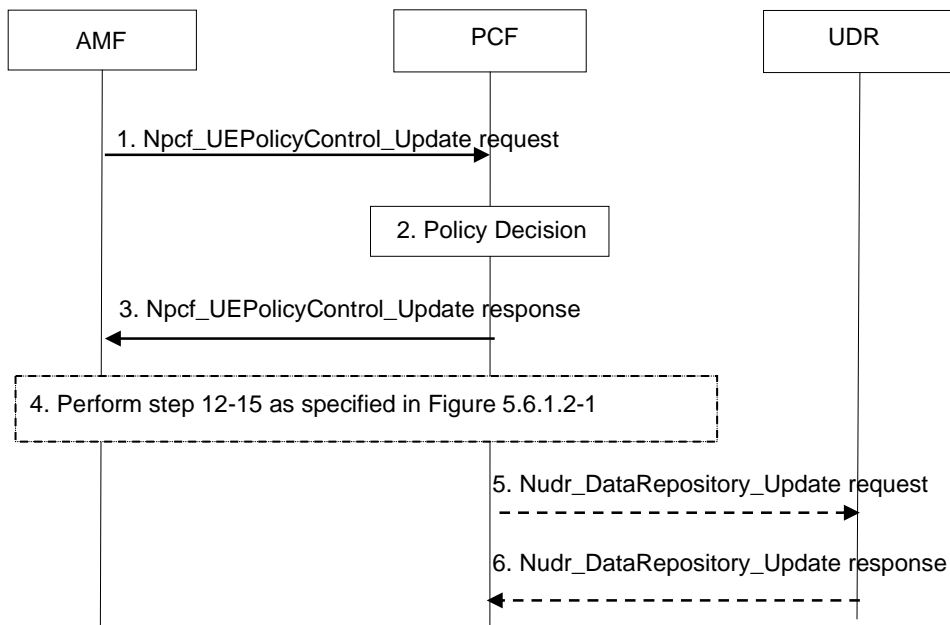


Figure 5.6.2.1.2-1: AMF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure – Non-roaming

1. When the AMF detects a Policy Control Request Trigger condition is met or the old AMF transfers to the new AMF the UE Policy Association information, it invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource with information on the conditions that have changed.

NOTE 1: The old AMF transfers to the new AMF the UE Policy Association when the old AMF and the new AMF belong to the same PLMN or equivalent PLMN or belong to the same SNPN or equivalent SNPN.

During AMF relocation, when the new AMF decides to reuse the UE Policy Association established by the old AMF with the PCF:

- a. If the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, the new AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource, and includes the supported features, the feature(s) related information, if applicable and other information on the conditions that have changed as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - b. If the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the new AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource with information on the conditions that have changed.
2. The PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s). When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, and the PCF received the features supported by the AMF, the PCF re-evaluates the negotiated features and makes the policy decision considering the resulting negotiated features and the information provided by the new AMF.

The policy decision contains the applicable Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy and/or updated V2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "V2X" feature is supported, and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "A2X" feature is supported, and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, if the "ProSe" feature is supported, , and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy, if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported. The PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit the same as step 6 in clause 5.6.1.2.

The PCF determines whether and which UE policies have to be provisioned or updated based on the NF service consumer inputs, policy subscription and application data, if available, the UE Policy Sections previously delivered to the UE, if available, other UE parameters previously received from the UE, if available, the reported information by the AMF and local policies, as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

3. The PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the AMF with:
 - a. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s), and potentially further information as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - b. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, the complete "Individual UE Policy Association" resource representation together with the negotiated supported features as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - For URSP provisioning in EPS, if the PCF decided to update the URSP in step 2, the PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update response service operation to update the URSP and the PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. Step 4 is not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.
 4. If the PCF decided to update the UE policy, A2X N2 PC5 policy, V2X N2 PC5 policy, 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy in step 2, steps 12-15 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.2-1 are executed.
- NOTE 2: The messages of step 4 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request and some or all of them can be received by the AMF before step 3.
- 5-6. If the PCF decided to update the UE policy information in step 2, the PCF maintains the latest list of UE policy information delivered to the UE and updates UE policy including the latest list of UPSIs and its content in the UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation. The PCF sends an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response.

5.6.2.1.3 Roaming

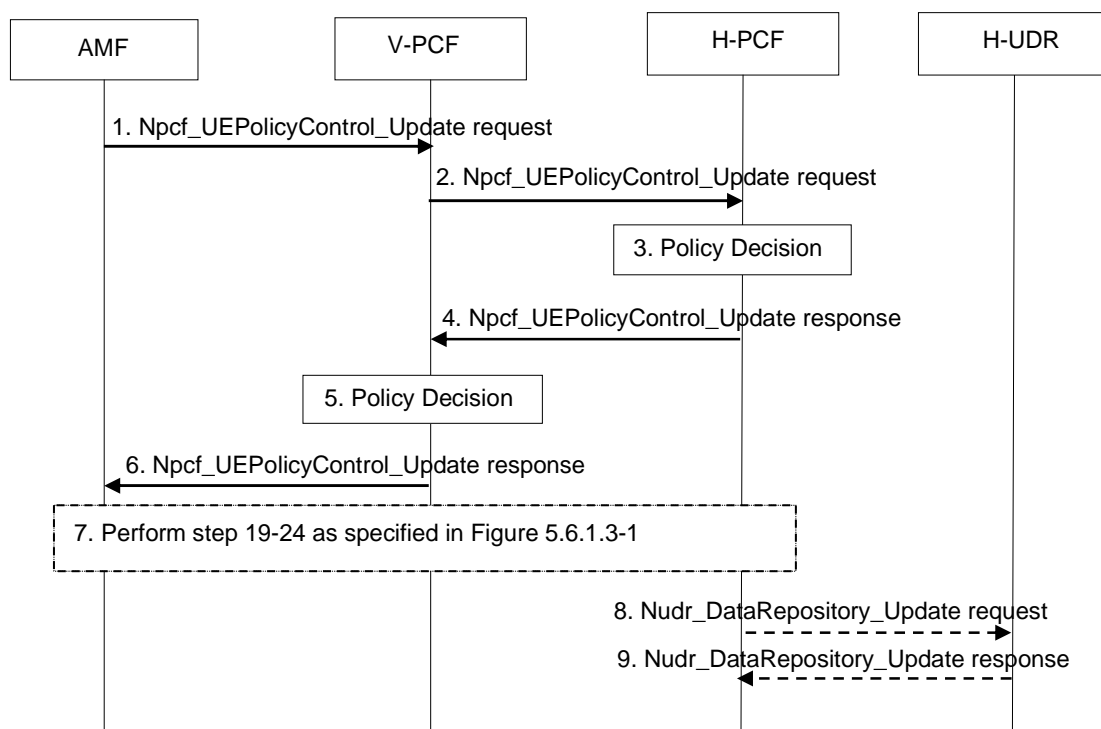


Figure 5.6.2.1.3-1: AMF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure - Roaming

1. When the AMF detects a Policy Control Request Trigger condition is met the old AMF transfers to the new AMF the UE Policy Association information, it invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the V-PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource with information on the conditions that have changed.

NOTE 1: The old AMF transfers to the new AMF the UE Policy Association when the old AMF and the new AMF belong to the same PLMN or equivalent PLMN or belong to the same SNPN or equivalent SNPN.

During AMF relocation, when the new AMF decides to reuse the UE Policy Association established by the old AMF with the V-PCF:

- a. If the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, the AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource, and includes the supported features, the feature(s) related information elements, if applicable and other information on the conditions that have changed as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - b. If the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the new AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource with information on the conditions that have changed.
2. The V-PCF forwards the information received from AMF in step 1 to the H-PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource if the H-PCF has subscribed the notification.

If the V-PCF received a Namf_Communication_N1MessageNotify service request with a UE Policy container and/or the V-PCF is made aware of the delivery outcome of previously provided UE Policy, the V-PCF forwards the received information to the H-PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource.

NOTE 2: The V-PCF is aware of the delivery outcome either based on the response with the result of UE policy delivery from the UE or based on the AMF knowledge that the UE is temporarily unavailable.

3. The H-PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy, and/or updated V2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "V2X" feature is supported, and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "A2X" feature is supported, and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, if the "ProSe" feature is supported, and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy, if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported.

If the H-PCF received the response of the UE Policy delivery outcome from the V-PCF and the AF subscribed to notifications about the outcome of UE Policies delivery, steps 7-10 of clause 5.5.8 are executed.

The H-PCF determines whether and which UE Policies have to be provisioned or updated based on NF service consumer inputs, policy subscription and application data, if available, the UE Policy Sections previously delivered to the UE, if available, other UE parameters previously received from the UE, if available, the reported information by the V-PCF and local policies, as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

In addition, the H-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 3: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in H-PCF is related to that limitation.

- If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update response service operation.
 - If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the H-PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. One fragment will be sent in Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update response service operation, and others will be then sent by initiating the PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure specified in clause 5.6.2.2.3.
4. The H-PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the V-PCF with the updated policy information decided in step 3.
 5. The V-PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy information, if applicable. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, and the V-PCF received the features supported by the AMF, the V-PCF re-evaluates the negotiated features and makes the policy decision considering the resulting negotiated features and the information provided by the new AMF. The V-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit the same as step 13 in clause 5.6.1.3.

The V-PCF determines whether VPLMN ANDSP has to be provisioned or updated based on NF service consumer inputs, policy subscription for the UE PLMN, other UE parameters previously received from the UE, if available, and local policies, as defined in clauses 4.2.2.2.1.1, 4.2.2.2.2 (for ANDSP) of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

6. The V-PCF sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the AMF:

- a. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is not supported, the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s), and potentially further information as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
 - b. When the feature "FeatureRenegotiation" is supported, and the V-PCF received the features supported by the AMF, the complete "Individual UE Policy Association" resource representation together with the negotiated supported features as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
- For URSP provisioning in EPS, and LBO roaming scenarios, if the V-PCF received the URSP in step 4, the V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify request service operation to update the URSP and the V-PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the V-PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
7. If the V-PCF decided to update the UE policy information in step 5 or the V-PCF received the UE Policy, V2X N2 PC5 policy and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy in step 4, steps 19-24 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.3-1 are executed.
- For URSP provisioning in EPS, steps 19-22 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.3-1 are not applicable.
- NOTE 4: The messages of step 7 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request and some or all of them can be received by the AMF before step 6.
- 8-9. If the H-PCF decided to update the UE policy information in step 3, the H-PCF maintains the latest list of UE policy information delivered to the UE and updates UE policy including the latest list of UPSIs and its content in the H-UDR by invoking the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation. The PCF sends an HTTP PUT/PATCH request to the "UEPolicySet" resource, and the UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response.

5.6.2.2 UE Policy Association Modification initiated by the PCF

5.6.2.2.1 General

The procedures in this clause are performed when the UE policy (roaming case) and/or Policy Control Request Trigger(s) are changed, and/or for notifying the AMF about a successful delivery of ANDSP/WLANSP to the UE.

NOTE 1: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 2: For details of the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

NOTE 3: For details of the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer/N1MessageNotify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.518 [32].

NOTE 4: When the UE Policy Association is for URSP provisioning in EPS the (V-)PCF for a PDU session replaces the AMF in the procedure described in clause 5.6.2.2.2.

NOTE 5: For details of the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Subscribe/Notify service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.594 [23].

5.6.2.2.2 Non-roaming

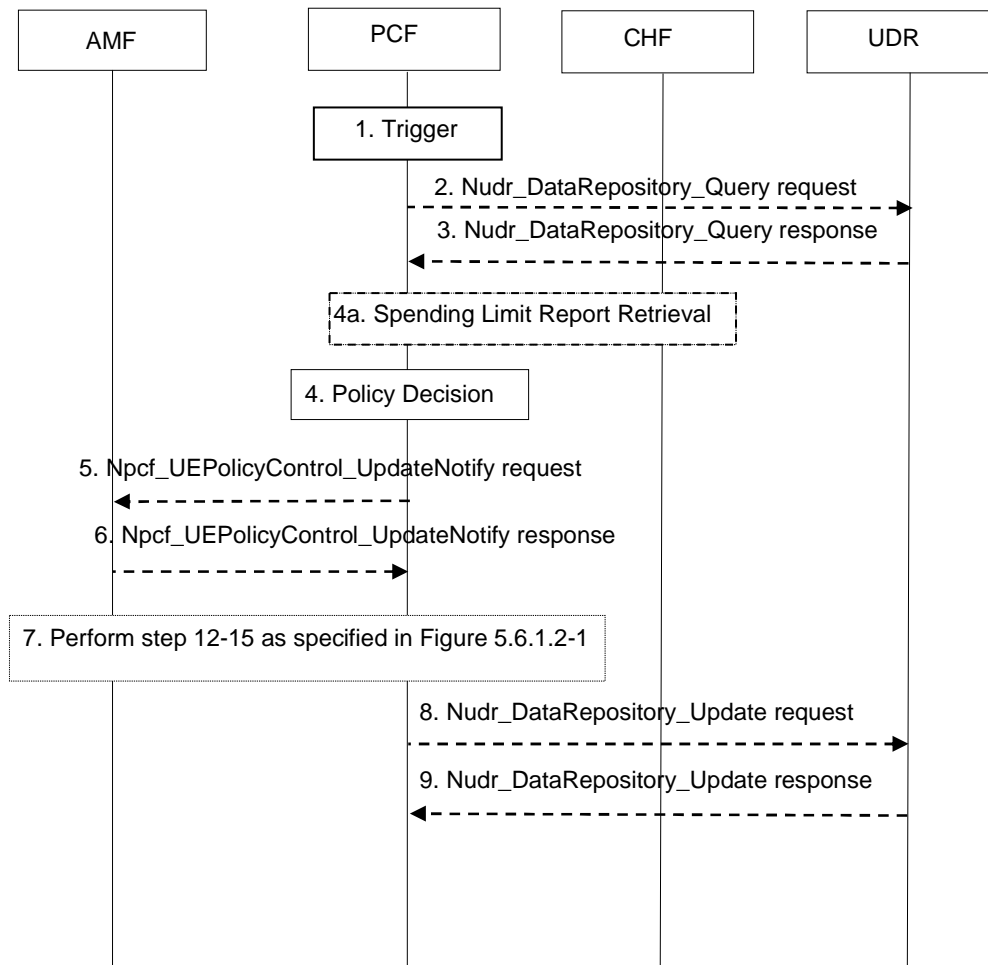


Figure 5.6.2.2.2-1: PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure – Non-roaming

1. The PCF receives an external trigger (e.g. the subscriber policy data of a UE is changed, the applied BDT Policy Data is changed, or subscription data for the 5G VN group data is changed, or application detection), or the PCF receives an internal trigger (e.g. operator policy is changed, or a pending policy counter becomes active) to re-evaluate UE policy decision for a UE.

NOTE 1: When the external trigger affects more than one UE (e.g. when Network Performance is degraded in a network area info) the PCF will apply the next steps to all the affected active UE Policy Associations.

- 2-3. If the applied BDT policy Data is changed in step 1, and if the corresponding transfer policy is not locally stored in the PCF, the PCF sends the HTTP GET request to the "IndividualBdtData" resource to retrieve the related Background Data Transfer policy information (i.e. Time window and Location criteria) stored in the UDR. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF.
- 4a. Based on the spending limit control indication received from the UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12], if the PCF determines that the policy context depends on the status of the policy counters available at the CHF and policy counter status reporting is not established for the subscriber, the PCF initiates an Initial Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.2. If policy counter status reporting is already established for the subscriber, and the PCF decides to modify the list of subscribed policy counters, the PCF sends an Intermediate Spending Limit Report as defined in clause 5.3.3. If the PCF decides to unsubscribe any future status notification of policy counters, it sends a Final Spending Limit Report Request to cancel the request for reporting the change of the status of the policy counters available at the CHF as defined in clause 5.3.4.
4. The PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy and/or updated V2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "V2X" feature is supported, and/or updated A2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "A2X" feature is supported and/or updated 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, if the "ProSe" feature

is supported, and/or updated Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported. The PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit the same as step 6 in clause 5.6.1.2.

5. If the PCF decided to update the Policy Control Request Trigger(s) in step4 or it needs to report the successful delivery of ANDSP/WLANSP to the AMF, the V-PCF shall invoke the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update".
 - For URSP provisioning in EPS, if the PCF decided to update the URSP in step 4, the PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify request service operation to update the URSP and the PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. Step 7 is not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.
6. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
7. If the PCF decided to update the UE policy, V2X N2 PC5 policy and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy in step 4, steps 12-15 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.2-1 are executed.
- 8-9. If the PCF decided to update the UE policy in step 4, steps 5-6 in clause 5.6.2.1.2 are executed.

NOTE 2: When the trigger to update the UE policy is AF-based service parameter provisioning as described in clause 5.5.8, the AF requested to be notified of the outcome of the UE Policy delivery and the PCF initiated step 7 based on the AF request, then steps 7 - 10 specified in clause 5.5.8 are executed.

5.6.2.2.3 Roaming

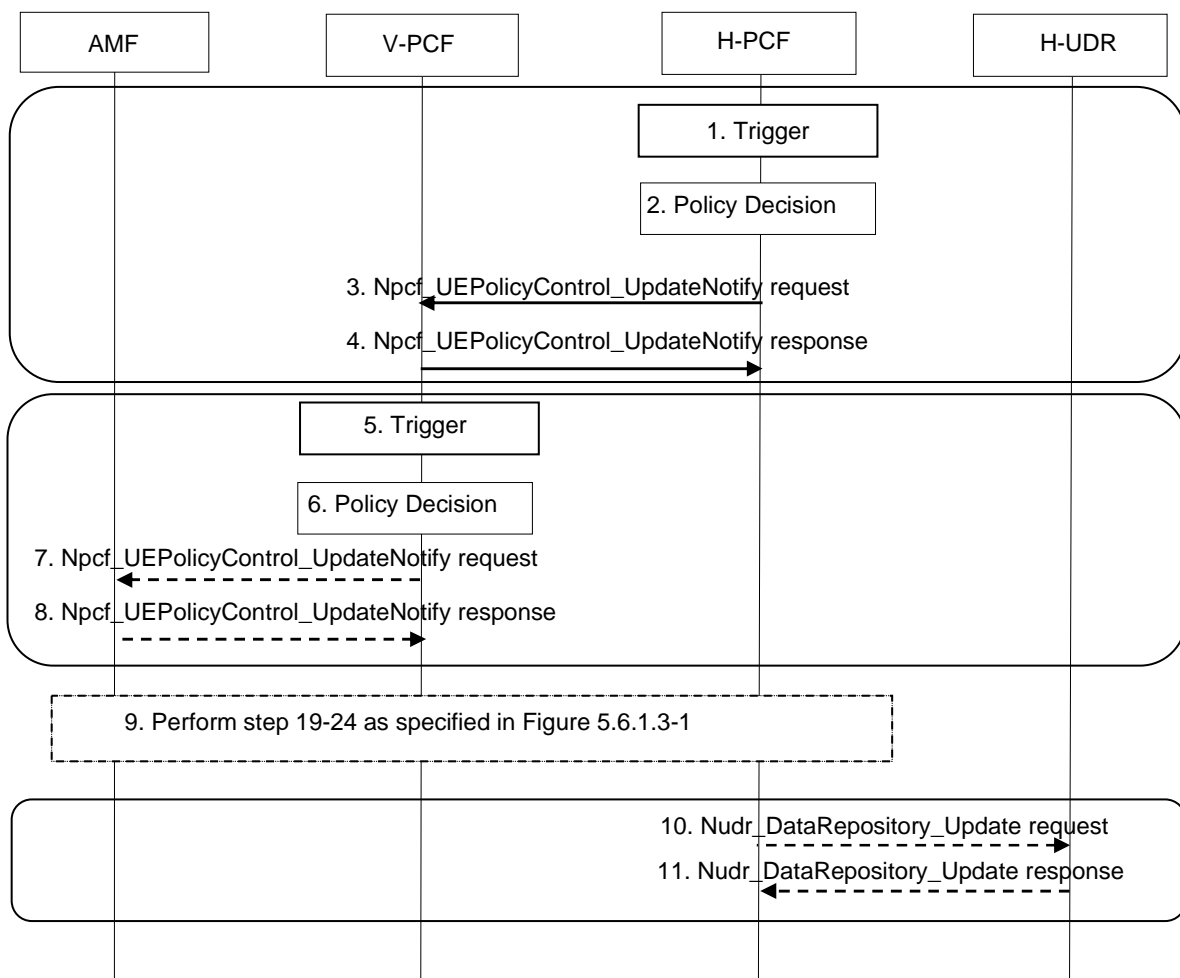


Figure 5.6.2.2.3-1: PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Modification procedure – Roaming

If the H-PCF receives a trigger, steps 1 to 4 and 10 to 11 are executed and steps 5 to 8 are omitted.

If the V-PCF receives a trigger, steps 1 to 4 and 10 to 11 are omitted and steps 5 to 8 are executed.

1. The H-PCF receives an external trigger, e.g. the subscriber policy data of a UE is changed, or the PCF receives an internal trigger, e.g. operator policy is changed, to re-evaluate UE policy decision for a UE.
2. The H-PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy and/or updated V2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "V2X" feature is supported, and/or updated A2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "A2X" feature is supported and/or updated 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, if the "ProSe" feature is supported, and/or updated Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported.

The H-PCF determines whether and which UE Policies have to be provisioned or updated based on policy subscription and application data, if available, the UE Policy Sections previously delivered to the UE, if available, other UE parameters previously received from the UE, if available, and local policies, as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

In addition, the H-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 1: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in H-PCF is related to that limitation.

- If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in a single Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation and messages 3 to 4 are thus executed one time.
 - If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. Each UE policy information fragment will be then sent in separated Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operations and messages 3 to 4, and 9 are thus executed several times, one time for each UE policy information fragment.
3. The H-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update" with the updated UE policy and/or the updated V2X N2 PC5 policy and/or the updated A2X N2 PC5 policy, and/or the updated 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy and/or Policy Control Request Trigger(s) if applicable.
 4. The V-PCF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the H-PCF.
 5. The V-PCF receives an external trigger, e.g. operator policy in the V-UDR for the PLMN ID of this UE is changed, or the V-PCF receives an internal trigger, e.g. local policy is changed, to re-evaluate UE policy decision for a UE.

NOTE 2: When the V-PCF receives an internal or external trigger to re-evaluate the UE policy decision for the roaming UEs of a PLMN ID, the PCF applies control mechanisms to avoid signalling storms and potential network overload, as e.g. limiting the number of simultaneous updates distributing the base of visiting UEs in a time dispersion interval.

6. The V-PCF makes the policy decision including the applicable updated Policy Control Request Trigger(s) and/or updated UE Policy.

In addition, the V-PCF checks if the size of determined UE policy and received UE policy from H-PCF in step 3 exceeds a predefined limit.

NOTE 3: NAS messages from AMF to UE do not exceed the maximum size limit allowed in NG-RAN (PDCP layer), so the predefined size limit in V-PCF is related to that limitation.

- If the size is under the limit then the UE policy information is included in a single Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operation and message 9 is thus executed one time.
 - If the size exceeds the predefined limit, the V-PCF splits the UE policy information in smaller logical independent UE policy information fragments and ensures the size of each is under the predefined limit. Each UE policy information fragment will be then sent in separated Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageTransfer service operations and message 9 is thus executed several times, one time for each UE policy information fragment.
7. If the V-PCF needs to update the Policy Control Request Trigger(s), forward the Policy Control Request Trigger(s) received from the H-PCF in step 3, or report the successful delivery of ANDSP/WLANSP to the

AMF, the V-PCF shall invoke the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/update".

- For URSP provisioning in EPS, and LBO roaming scenarios, if the V-PCF received the URSP in step 3, the V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify request service operation to update the URSP and the PCF for the PDU session invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update request service operation to forward the response of the UE to the V-PCF as specified in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
- 8. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
- 9. If the V-PCF decided to update the UE policy in step 6 or the V-PCF received the UE Policy and/or V2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "V2X" feature is supported, and/or A2X N2 PC5 policy, if the "A2X" feature is supported, and/or 5G ProSe N2 PC5 policy, if the "ProSe" feature is supported, and/or Ranging/SL N2 PC5 policy if the "Ranging_SL" feature is supported, in step 3, steps 19-24 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.3-1 are executed.
 - For URSP provisioning in EPS, steps 19-22 as specified in Figure 5.6.1.3-1 are not applicable.
- 10-11. If the H-PCF decided to update the UE policy information in step 2, the steps 8-9 in clause 5.6.2.1.3 are executed.

5.6.3 UE Policy Association Termination

5.6.3.1 UE Policy Association Termination initiated by the AMF

5.6.3.1.1 General

This procedure is performed when the UE deregisters from the network and the UE is only registered in that access type, when the UE deregisters from 5GS during the UE moving from 5GS to EPS and the UE is only connected or registered in 3GPP access (i.e., if the UE is not connected to the 5GC over a non-3GPP access in the same PLMN) or when the old AMF removes the UE Policy Association during AMF relocation. When the UE Policy Association is for URSP provisioning in EPS, and the "EpsUrsp" feature is supported for the Npcf_SMPolicyControl service, this procedure is also triggered when the PCF for the PDU session determines EPS to 5GS mobility applies based on the indication of RAT type and/or Access type change received from the SMF+PGW-C, or when the PCF for the PDU session receives the last SM policy association termination from the SMF+PGW-C.

NOTE 1: The old AMF removes the UE Policy Association during AMF relocation when the old AMF decides that the PCF instance Id is not sent to the new AMF (e.g. inter-AMF mobility with PLMN change, where the new PLMN is not an equivalent PLMN), or when the new AMF indicates to the old AMF that the received UE Policy Association will not be reused.

NOTE 2: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 3: For details of the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

NOTE 4: For details of the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageUnsubscribe service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.518 [32].

NOTE 5: When the UE Policy Association is for URSP provisioning in EPS the (V-)PCF for a PDU session replaces the AMF in the procedure described in clause 5.6.3.1.2.

NOTE 6: For details of the Nchf_SpendingLimitControl_Unsubscribe service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.594 [23].

5.6.3.1.2 Non-roaming

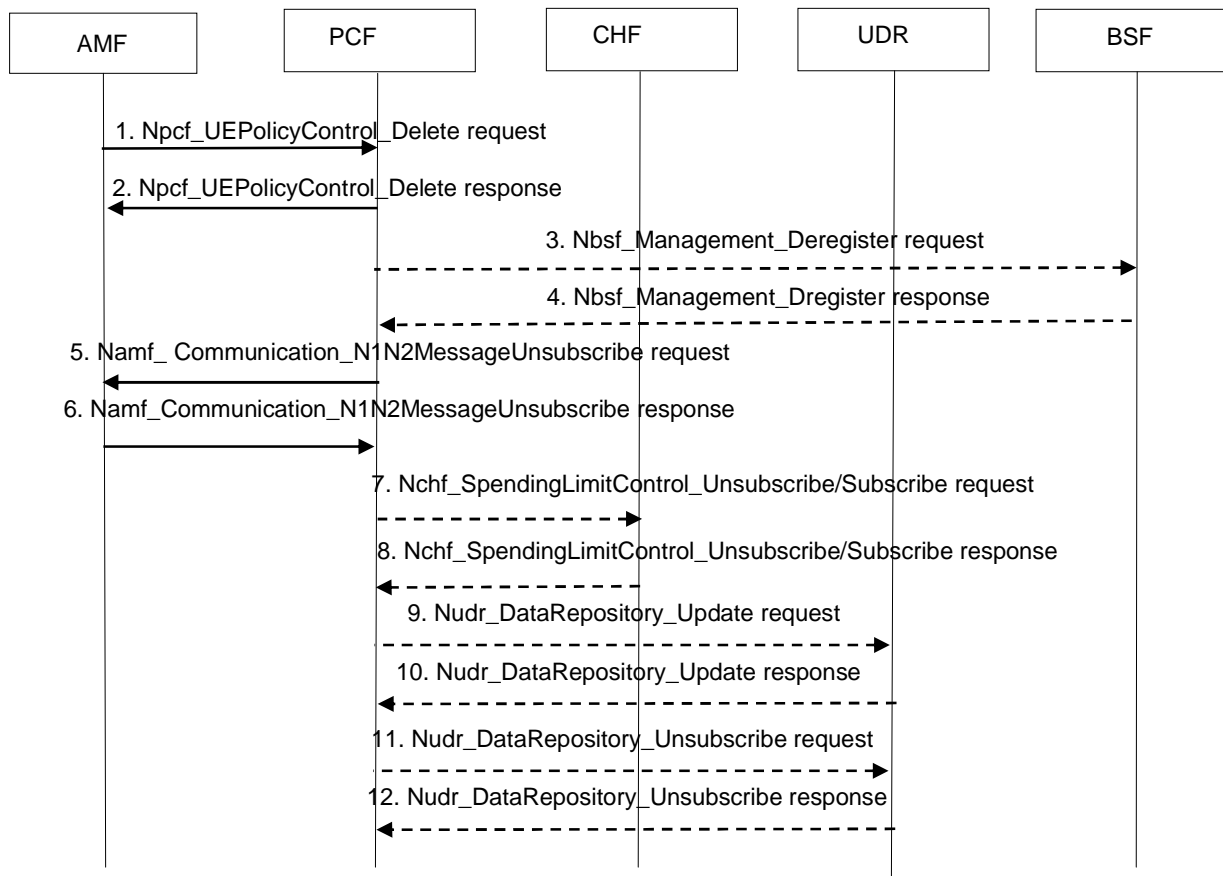


Figure 5.6.3.1.2-1: AMF-initiated UE Policy Association Termination procedure – Non-roaming

1. The AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource to delete the policy context in the PCF.
2. The PCF removes the policy context for the UE and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AMF.
- 3-4. If the PCF has previously registered to the BSF as the PCF that is serving this UE, the PCF deregisters from the BSF if no AM Policy Association nor UE Policy Association for this UE exists anymore. This is performed by using the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation.
5. To unsubscribe to notifications of N1 message for UE Policy Delivery Result, the PCF invokes Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageUnsubscribe service operation to the AMF by sending the HTTP DELETE method with the URI of the "N1N2 Individual Subscription" resource.
6. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

NOTE 1: Steps 5-6 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete request and can be received by the AMF before step 2.

NOTE 2: Steps 5-6 are not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.

7-8. If the PCF has previously subscribed to the policy counter status to the CHF, and if the PCF determines that the Policy Context does not depend on policy counters, it invokes the procedure Final Spending Limit Report Request defined in clause 5.3.4 to unsubscribe to policy counter status reporting, otherwise the PCF may invoke the Intermediate Spending Limit Report procedure as defined in clause 5.3.3 to modify the list of subscribed policy counters.

9. If the feature "SLAMUP" is supported, the PCF may invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "UEPolicySet" resource as specified in

3GPP TS 29.519 [12] to store the "spendLimInfo" attribute in the UDR as defined in clause 5.4.2.17 of 3GPP TS 29.519 [12] at the termination of the UE Policy Association procedure based on operator policies.

NOTE 3: When the "SLAMUP" is supported, if the "spendLimInfo" attribute is available in the UDR, the PCF could use it for policy decision by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Query service before the PCF retrieves it from the CHF during the UE Policy Association establishment procedure described in clause 5.6.1).

10. The UDR responds with HTTP "204 No Content" to the PCF.

11. The PCF unsubscribes the notification of subscriber policy data modification from the UDR by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification.

- The PCF invokes also the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications about applied BDT Policy Data changes and service parameter data changes at the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualApplicationDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notifications.

- The PCF invokes also the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications about 5G VN group configuration data changes at the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualSubscriptionDataSubscription" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47] if it has subscribed such notification.

NOTE 4: The PCF will not invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation when the PCF has internally stored the retrieved 5G VN group configuration data for later use for other SUPIs that belong to the same Internal-Group-Id

12. The UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

5.6.3.1.3 Roaming

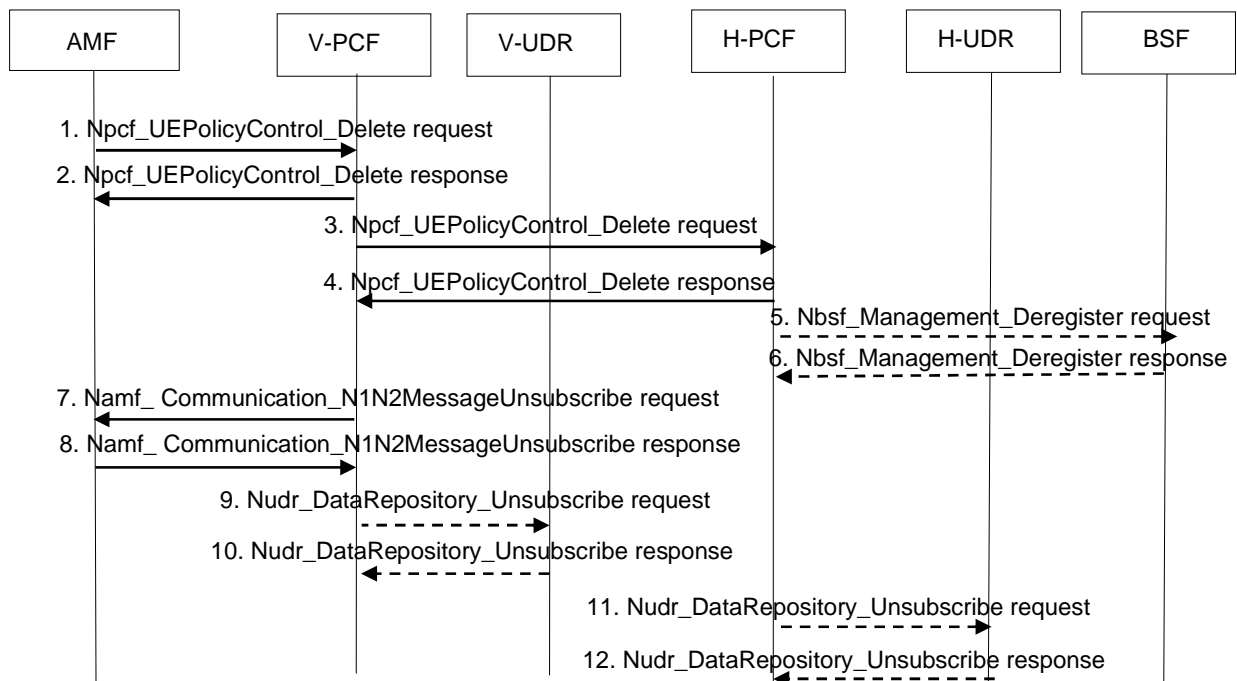


Figure 5.6.3.1.3-1: AMF-initiated UE Policy Association Termination procedure – Roaming

1. The AMF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource to delete the policy context in the V-PCF. The V-PCF interacts with the H-PCF.

2. The V-PCF removes the policy context for the UE and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the AMF.
3. The V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual UE Policy Association" resource to delete the policy context in the H-PCF.
4. The H-PCF removes the policy context for the UE and sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
- 5-6. If the H-PCF has previously registered to the BSF as the PCF that is serving this UE, the H-PCF shall deregister from the BSF if no AM Policy Association nor UE Policy Association for this UE exists anymore. This is performed by using the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation.
7. To unsubscribe to notifications of N1 message for UE Policy Delivery Result, the V-PCF invokes Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageUnsubscribe service operation to the AMF by sending the HTTP DELETE method with the URI of the "N1N2 Individual Subscription" resource.
8. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.

NOTE 1: Steps 7-8 are triggered by the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Delete request and can be received by the AMF before step 2.

NOTE 2: Steps 7-8 are not applicable for URSP provisioning in EPS.

9. The V-PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource to unsubscribe the notification from the V-UDR on changes in UE policy information if it has subscribed such notification.
 10. The V-UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
 11. The H-PCF unsubscribes the notification of subscriber policy data modification from the H-UDR by invoking Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification.
 - The PCF invokes also the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications about service parameter data changes at the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualApplicationDataSubscription" resource if it has subscribed such notification.
 - The PCF invokes also the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation to unsubscribe from notifications about 5G VN group configuration data changes at the UDR by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualSubscriptionDataSubscription" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.505 [47] if it has subscribed such notification.
- NOTE 3: The PCF will not invoke the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation when the PCF has internally stored the retrieved 5G VN group configuration data for later use for other SUPIs that belong to the same Internal-Group-Id.
12. The H-UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the H-PCF.

5.6.3.2 UE Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF

5.6.3.2.1 General

This procedure is performed when the (H-)UDR notifies the (H-)PCF that the policy profile is removed.

NOTE 1: For details of the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

NOTE 2: For details of the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify/Delete service operations refer to 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].

NOTE 3: For details of the Namf_Communication_N1N2MessageUnsubscribe service operation refer to 3GPP TS 29.518 [32].

NOTE 4: When the UE Policy Association is for URSP provisioning in EPS the (V-)PCF for a PDU session replaces the AMF in the procedure described in clause 5.6.3.2.2.

5.6.3.2.2 Non-roaming

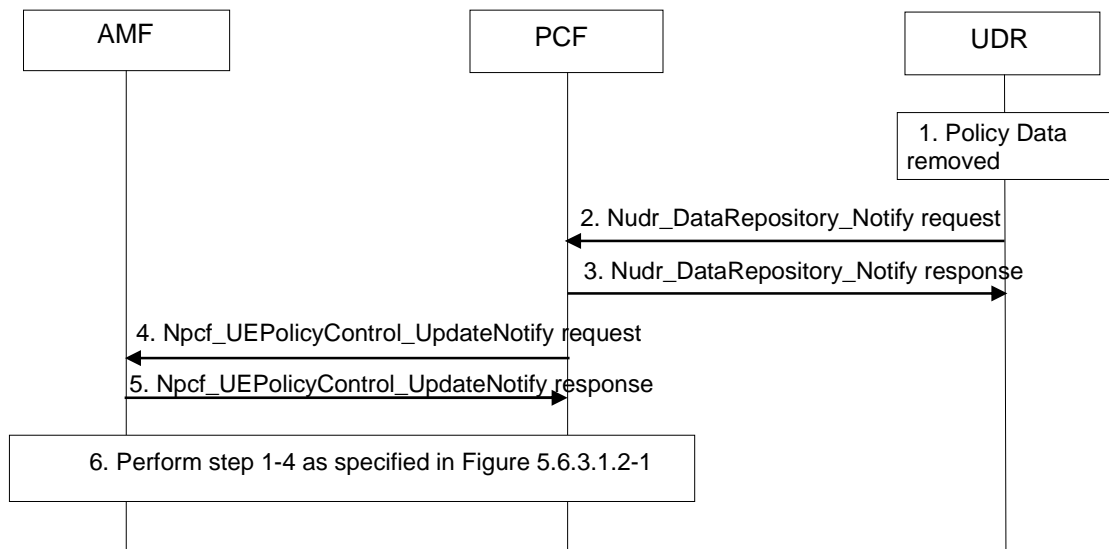


Figure 5.6.3.2.2-1: PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Termination procedure – Non-roaming

1. The subscriber policy control data is removed from the UDR.
2. The UDR invokes the `Nudr_DataRepository_Notify` service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to callback URI "`{notificationUri}`" to notify the PCF that the policy profile is removed if PCF has subscribed such notification.
3. The PCF sends HTTP "204 No Content" response to confirm reception and the result to UDR.
4. The PCF may, depending on operator policies, invoke the `Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify` service operation to the AMF of the removal of the UE policy control information by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "`{notificationUri}/terminate`".

Alternatively, the PCF may decide to maintain the UE Policy Association if a default profile is applied, and then step 4 through 6 are not executed.

5. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
6. Steps 1 to 4 as specified in Figure 5.6.3.1.2-1 are executed.

5.6.3.2.3 Roaming

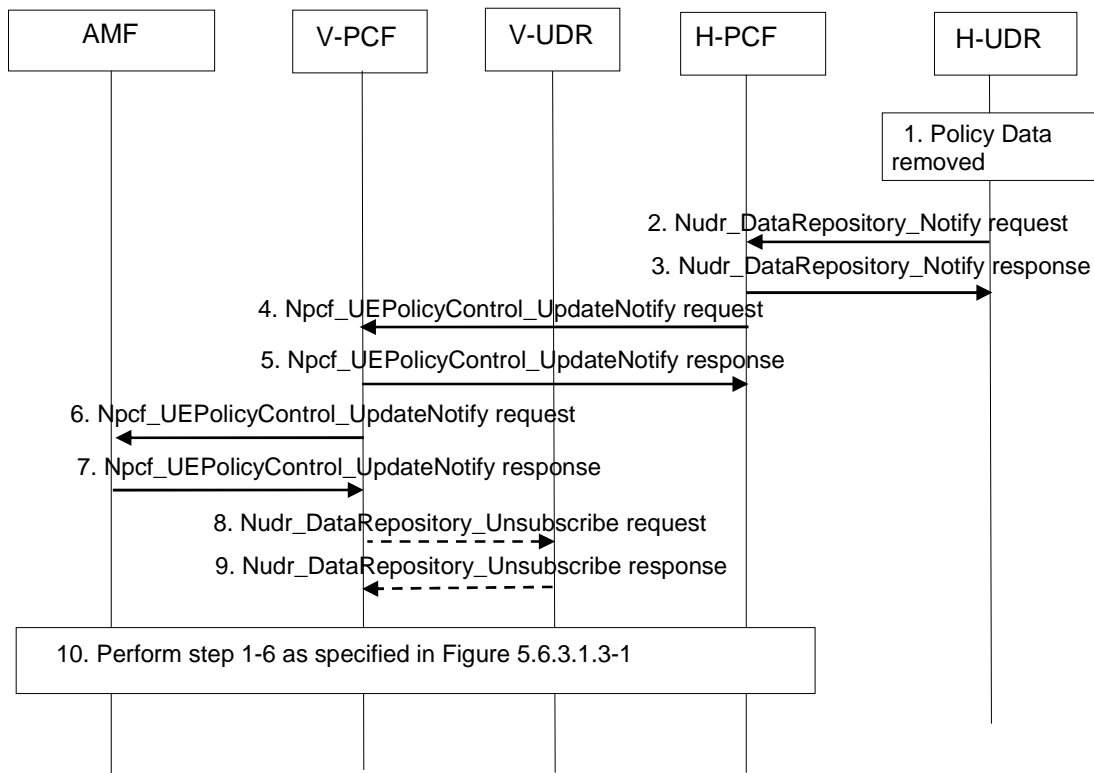


Figure 5.6.3.2.3-1: PCF-initiated UE Policy Association Termination procedure – Roaming

1. The subscriber policy control data is removed from the H-UDR.
2. The H-UDR invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Notify service operation by sending the HTTP POST request to callback URI "{notificationUri}" to notify the H-PCF that the policy profile is removed if H-PCF has subscribed such notification.
3. The H-PCF sends HTTP "204 No Content" response to confirm reception and the result to H-UDR.
4. The H-PCF may, depending on operator policies, invoke the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation to the AMF of the removal of the UE policy control information by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/terminate".

Alternatively, the H-PCF may decide to maintain the UE Policy Association if a default profile is applied, and then step 4 through 10 are not executed.

5. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
6. The V-PCF invokes the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_UpdateNotify service operation to the AMF of the removal of the UE policy control information by sending the HTTP POST request to the callback URI "{notificationUri}/terminate".
7. The AMF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
8. The V-PCF invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Unsubscribe service operation by sending the HTTP DELETE request to the "IndividualPolicyDataSubscription" resource to unsubscribe the notification from the V-UDR on changes in UE policy information if it has subscribed such notification.
9. The V-UDR sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the V-PCF.
10. Steps 1 to 6 as specified in Figure 5.6.3.1.3-1 are executed.

5.7 MBS Policy Association Management

5.7.1 General

Clause 5.7 specifies the detailed call flows for MBS Policy and Charging Control (PCC) for 5G multicast-broadcast services over the Npcf and Nmbsmf service-based interfaces and their relationship with the flow level signalling in the 5G system.

The stage 2 definition, architecture and procedures for MBS PCC are specified in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54].

5.7.2 MBS Policy Association Establishment

This clause is applicable if a new MBS Policy Association is being established.

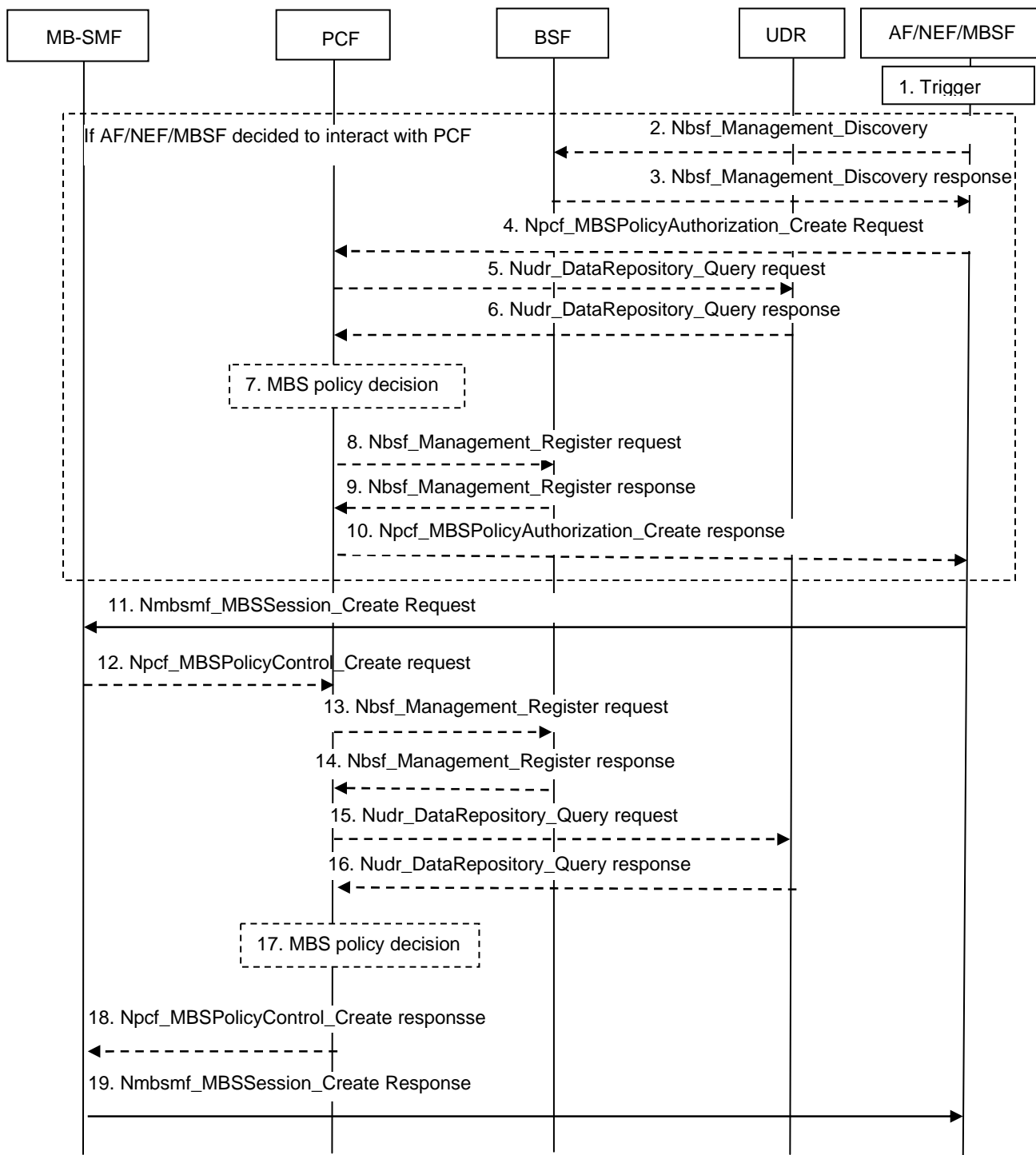


Figure 5.7.2-1: MBS Policy Association Establishment procedure

1. When the AF decides to create an MBS Session, the AF/NEF/MBSF may decide to interact with the PCF for MBS policy authorization based on the local configuration. If it does, the procedure continues with step2; otherwise, the procedure continues with step 11.
2. If the AF requests for a location-dependent session and if there is a need to select the same PCF for the location dependent MBS Sessions, the NEF/MBSF checks whether there is already a PCF serving the MBS session by invoking Nbsf_Management_Discovery service by sending an HTTP GET request to the resource "PCF for an MBS Session Bindings" in order to discover whether there is a PCF serving the MBS session with the MBS session ID as described in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]. In the case that the NEF/MBSF receives a request without an MBS Session ID from the AF, the NEF/MBSF contacts with the MB-SMF to request allocation of a TMGI before the NEF/MBSF contacts with the PCF.

3. If there is a PCF serving the MBS session, the BSF sends an HTTP "200 OK" with the address of this PCF to AF/NEF/MBSF; otherwise, the BSF returns an HTTP "200 OK" with empty array (i.e. "[]" in JSON).
4. If the received Request is not for location-dependent session in step 1 or the BSF returned an HTTP "200 OK" with empty array (i.e. "[]" in JSON), the AF/NEF/MBSF discovers and selects the PCF as defined in clause 8.6.2, and then the AF/NEF/MBSF invokes the Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization_Create service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the "MBS Application Session Contexts" resource as defined in clause 5.3.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55] with the request body containing, but not limited to, the concerned MBS Session ID, MBS Service Information, DNN if available and S-NSSAI if available; otherwise if the BSF returned the HTTP "200 OK" with the address of this PCF, the AF/NEF/MBSF contacts with the returned PCF by invoking the Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization_Create service operation.
5. The PCF may retrieve MBS Session policy control data for the MBS session from the UDR. It invokes for this purpose the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation by sending an HTTP GET request to the "MBSSessionPolicyControlData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

6. The UDR responds with an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the requested MBS Session policy control data in the response message body.

NOTE 1: Interacting with the UDR for MBS Session policy control data retrieval is not necessary in a deployment where MBS Policy Session policy control data is stored locally at the PCF.

7. The PCF performs MBS policy authorization based on the received MBS Service Information, the operator policies that are pre-configured at the PCF and the MBS Session policy control data retrieved from the UDR.

If the request is authorized, the PCF derives the MBS policies and determines whether the MBS policies are allowed or not. If they are allowed, the PCF then packages them into an MBS policy decision as described in clause 5.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55] and stores them together with the corresponding MBS session ID.

8. If the request is authorized and the PCF is not already handling the MBS Session, the PCF may register at the BSF as the PCF handling the MBS session by sending an HTTP POST request to the "PCF for an MBS Session Bindings" resource using the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation, as described in clause 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
9. The BSF responds with "201 Created" status code if the registration of the PCF was successful.
10. The PCF sends an Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization_Create Response to the AF/NEF/MBSF.
11. AF/NEF/MBSF discovers and selects an MB-SMF for the MBS session and sends Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Create Request to the MB-SMF as defined in clause 5.3.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].
12. Upon reception of an Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Create request from the AF/NEF/MBSF, the MB-SMF discovers and selects the PCF as defined in clause 8.6.1, and then invokes the Npcf_MBSPolicyControl_Create service operation towards the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "MBS Policies" resource as defined in clause 5.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55] with the request body containing, but not limited to, the concerned MBS Session ID, DNN (if received from the AF/NEF/MBSF), S-NSSAI (if received from the AF/NEF/MBSF) and MBS Service Information (if received from the AF/NEF/MBSF).
13. If the PCF is not handling the MBS session and the PCF needs to check if there is a PCF already handling the MBS session (i.e., the request corresponds to a location-dependent MBS service and/or no MBS Service Information was provided by the MB-SMF), the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service as described in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
14. If there is an existing PCF for an MBS Session Binding information for the MBS session ID, the BSF rejects the request with an HTTP "403 Forbidden" status code and includes the address of the existing PCF that is handling the MBS session in the response and the procedure continues directly in step 18; otherwise, for the case of location-dependent MBS sessions, the BSF registers the PCF as the PCF handling the MBS session, stores the related PCF for an MBS Session binding information and responds to the PCF with an HTTP "201 Created" status code and the next steps are executed.
15. If the PCF receives MBS Service Information from the MB-SMF and the PCF does not have the MBS Session policy control data (e.g. the steps 2-10 were not executed), it invokes the Nudr_DataRepository_Query service operation to the UDR by sending an HTTP GET request to the "MBSSessionPolicyControlData" resource as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12].

16. The UDR sends an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF with the requested MBS Session policy control data in the response message body.

17. If the PCF receives MBS Service Information from the MB-SMF, the PCF performs MBS policy authorization based on the received MBS Service Information, the operator policies that are pre-configured at the PCF and the MBS Session policy control data retrieved from the UDR, if applicable. If the request is authorized, the PCF derives the MBS policies and determines whether they are allowed or not. If they are allowed, the PCF then packages them into an MBS policy decision as described in clause 5.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].

Otherwise, when steps 2-10 were performed and MBS policies were derived in step 7, this step is not needed.

18. The PCF then responds to the MB-SMF. Following responses are returned to the MB-SMF:

- If the PCF receives the HTTP "403 Forbidden" with the address of another PCF in step 14, the PCF rejects the request and responds to the MB-SMF with an HTTP "308 Permanent Redirection" status code including an HTTP Location header field containing the "apiRoot" (e.g. FQDN or IP address) of the PCF currently serving the MBS Session as described in clause 5.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55]. In this case, the MB-SMF contacts with the returned address of the another PCF as described in step 12; otherwise,
- If the PCF receives the HTTP "201 Created" in step 14 and the request is authorized, the PCF responds to the MB-SMF with an HTTP "201 Created" status code with the response body including the derived MBS policy as described in clause 5.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].
- If errors occur when processing the Npcf_MBSPolicyControl_Create by the PCF (e.g. the request is not authorized, the derived MBS policies are not allowed) and the PCF was registered at the BSF as the PCF handling the MBS session in step 14, the PCF deregisters itself at the BSF from being the PCF handling the MBS session by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the corresponding "Individual PCF for an MBS Session Binding" resource using the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation, as described in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]. The BSF responds with a "204 No Content" status code if the deregistration of the PCF was successful.

19. The MB-SMF sends Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Create Response to the AF/NEF/MBSF as defined in clause 5.3.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].

NOTE 2: These steps 2, 8 and 13 are not necessary in a deployment with a single PCF.

5.7.3 MBS Policy Association Modification

5.7.3.1 General

The MBS Policy Association Modification procedure may be initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF.

5.7.3.2 MBS Policy Association Modification initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF/MBSF or the MB-SMF needs to modify MBS policy decisions related to an existing MBS Policy Association when the AF decides to update the MBS Service Information.

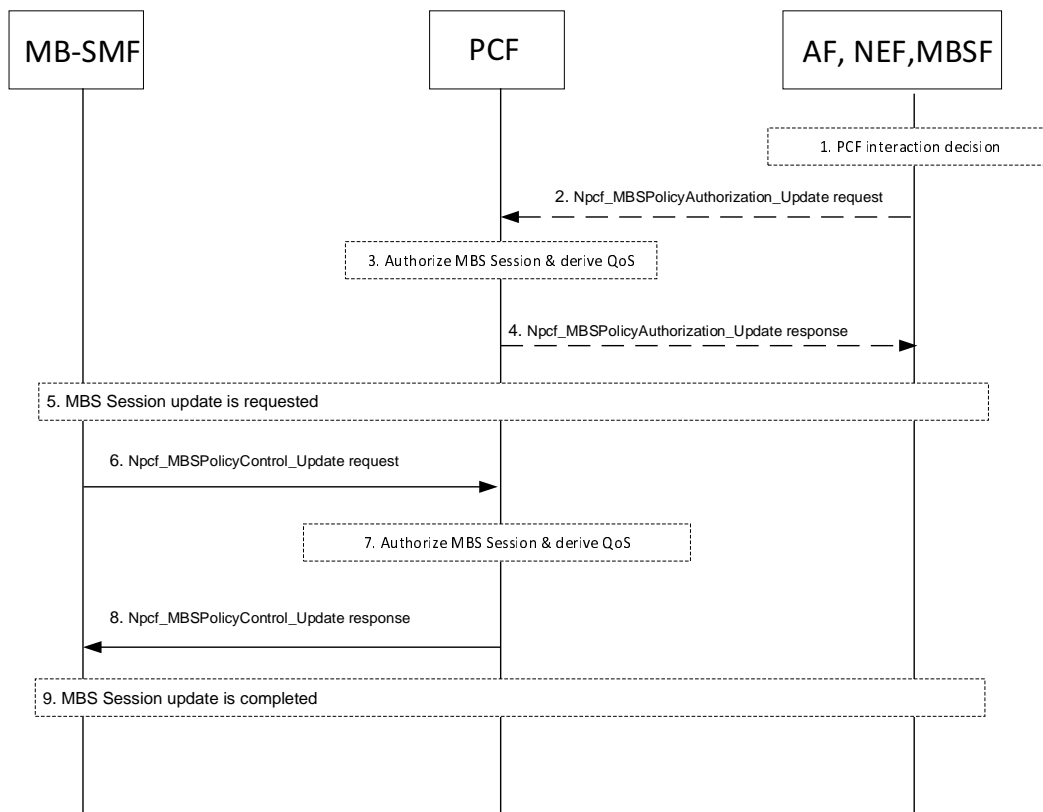


Figure 5.7.3.2-1: MBS Policy Association Modification procedure

1. When the AF decides to modify an existing MBS Session that requires policy control, the AF/NEF/MBSF may decide to interact with the PCF for early authorization based on the same decision that was made during MBS Session creation procedure (see clause 5.7.2). If no interaction is required, steps 2-4 are skipped.
2. The AF/NEF/MBSF invokes the `Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual MBS Application Session Context" resource as defined in clause 5.3.2.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55] with the request body containing the `MbsAppSessionCtxtPatch` data structure with the modified service information within the "mbsServiceInfo" attribute.
3. The PCF determines whether the request is authorized and if the request is authorized, the PCF derives the updated QoS parameters based on the received MBS Service Information and determines whether this updated QoS is allowed. If the updated QoS is allowed, the PCF generates the updated policy information for the MBS session and packages it together with the MBS Session ID into an MBS policy decision as described in clause 5.3.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].
4. The PCF responds to the AF/NEF/MBSF with an HTTP "200 OK" status code with the Application Session context information within the "MbsAppSessionCtxt" data type, including the "contactPcfInd" attribute if the policy information was changed to indicate that the MB-SMF needs to contact the PCF. Alternatively, the PCF may respond with an HTTP "204 No Content" when no information is provided in the response.
5. The AF/NEF/MBSF sends `Nmb-smf-MBSSession-Update Request` to the MB-SMF as defined in clause 5.3.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].
6. If the MB-SMF received the indication to contact the PCF or did not receive it but decided to contact the PCF, the MB-SMF invokes the `Npcf_MBSPolicyControl_Update` service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the PCF to update the Individual MBS Policy Association. The request body shall include the `MbsPolicyCtxtDataUpdate` data structure in the payload body of the HTTP POST, that may include the request trigger(s) within the "mbsPcrts" attribute and, if received from the AF/NEF/MBSF, the updated service information within the "mbsServInfo", as described in clause 5.2.2.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].
7. The PCF determines whether the request is authorized and if the request is authorized, the PCF checks if there is available service information. In that case, the PCF derives the updated QoS parameters based on the received MBS Service Information and determines whether this updated QoS is allowed. If the updated QoS is allowed, the PCF generates the updated policy information for the MBS session and packages it into the updated MBS

policy decision as described in clause 5.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55]. If the PCF did not receive MBS Service Information from the MB-SMF, the PCF identifies any updated policy information for the MBS session corresponding to the MBS session ID received from the MB-SMF.

- 8. Upon success, the PCF responds to the MB-SMF with an HTTP "200 OK" status code including the MbsPolicyData data structure with the input parameters within the "mbsPolicyCtxtData" attribute and the updated policy information within "mbsPolicies" attribute.
- 9. The AF/NEF/MBSF sends Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Update Response to the MB-SMF as defined in clause 5.3.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].

5.7.4 MBS Policy Association Termination

5.7.4.1 General

The MBS Policy Association Termination procedure is initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF.

5.7.4.2 MBS Policy Association Termination initiated by the PCF

Void

5.7.4.3 MBS Policy Association Termination initiated by the AF/NEF/MBSF

This procedure is performed when the AF/NEF/MBSF needs to terminate the MBS Policy Association when the AF decides to release the MBS session.

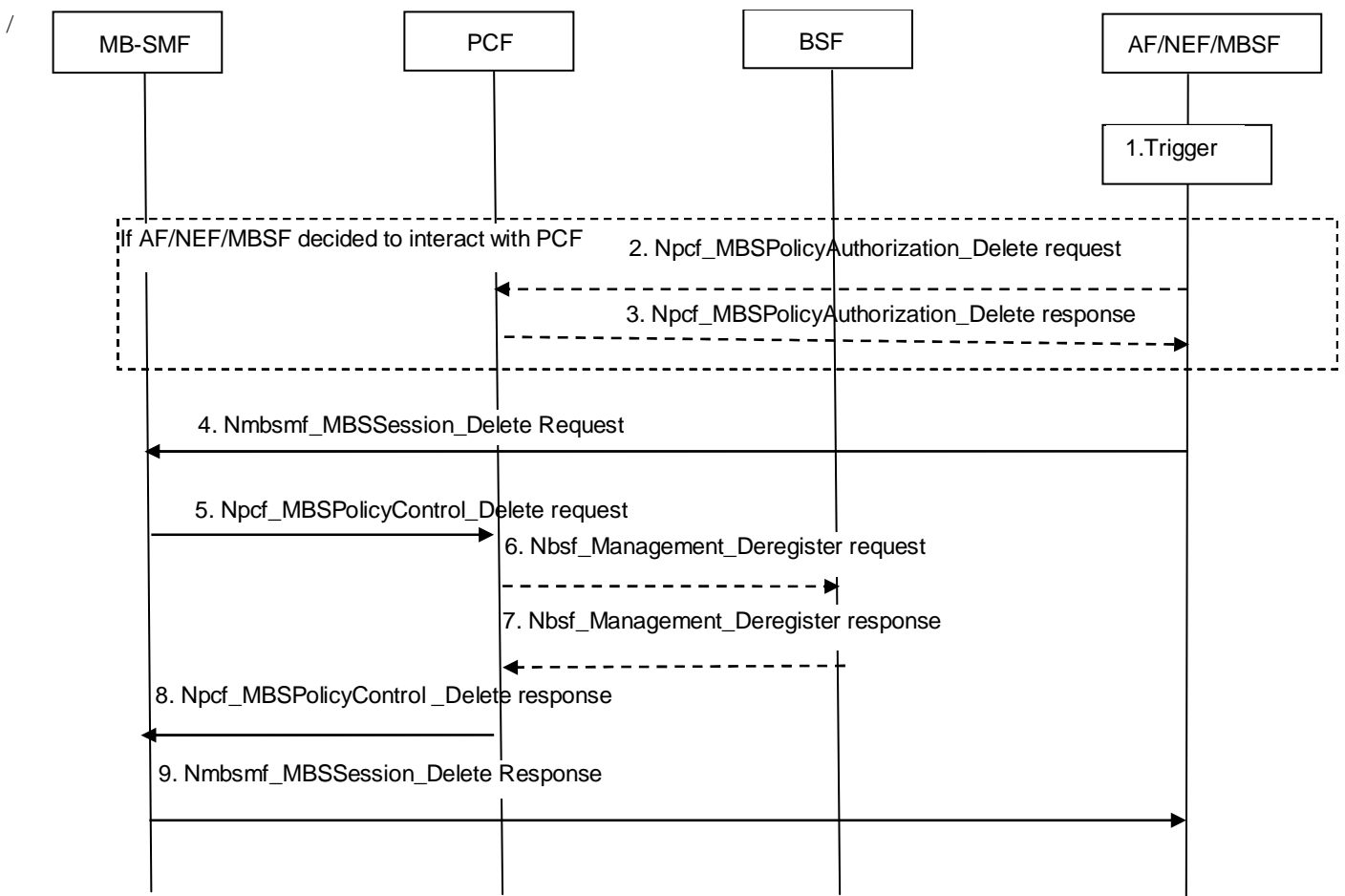


Figure 5.7.4.3-1: MBS Policy Association termination procedure initiated by the AF.

1. When the AF decides to terminate an existing MBS Session under policy control, the AF/NEF/MBSF interacts with the PCF if it was decided to contact the PCF as part of the MBS Policy Association creation procedure. In that case steps 2 and 3 applies. Otherwise, these steps are skipped.
2. The AF/NEF/MBSF invokes Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization_Delete Request to the PCF that handles the MBS Session by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual MBS Application Session Context" resource as defined in clause 5.3.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].
3. Upon success, the PCF responds with an HTTP "204 No Content" status code.
4. The AF/NEF/MBSF sends Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Delete Request to the MB-SMF as defined in clause 5.3.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].
5. The MB-SMF invokes the Npcf_MBSPolicyControl_Delete service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the "Individual MBS Policy" resource to request the PCF to delete the context of the MBS related policy as defined in clause 5.2.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55].
6. If the same PCF is used for the location dependent MBS sessions and this is the last MBS Policy Association related to that MBS Session, or for an MBS Session that is not an instance of a location-dependent MBS service, the AF/NEF/MBSF interacted with the PCF in step 2, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request to the BSF to delete binding information as detailed in clause 8.5.3.
7. The PCF receives an HTTP "204 No Content" response from the BSF as detailed in clause 8.5.3.
8. The PCF deletes the concerned MBS Policy Association context for the terminated MBS Session and responds to the MB-SMF with an HTTP "204 No Content" status code.

NOTE: Step 6 and 8 can be executed in parallel.

9. The MB-SMF sends Nmbsmf_MBSSession_Delete Response to the NEF/MBSF as defined in clause 5.3.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.532 [58].

5.8 Awareness of URSP Rule Enforcement

5.8.1 General

Clause 5.8 specifies the detailed call flows for awareness of URSP rule enforcement over the Npcf service-based interfaces and their relationship with the flow level signalling in the 5G system.

NOTE 1: In the Home Routed roaming case, the H-PCF for a UE interacts with the PCF for a PDU session in the HPLMN.

NOTE 2: In the LBO roaming case, the V-PCF for a UE interacts with the PCF for a PDU session in the VPLMN.

5.8.2 Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (non-roaming and Home Routed roaming)

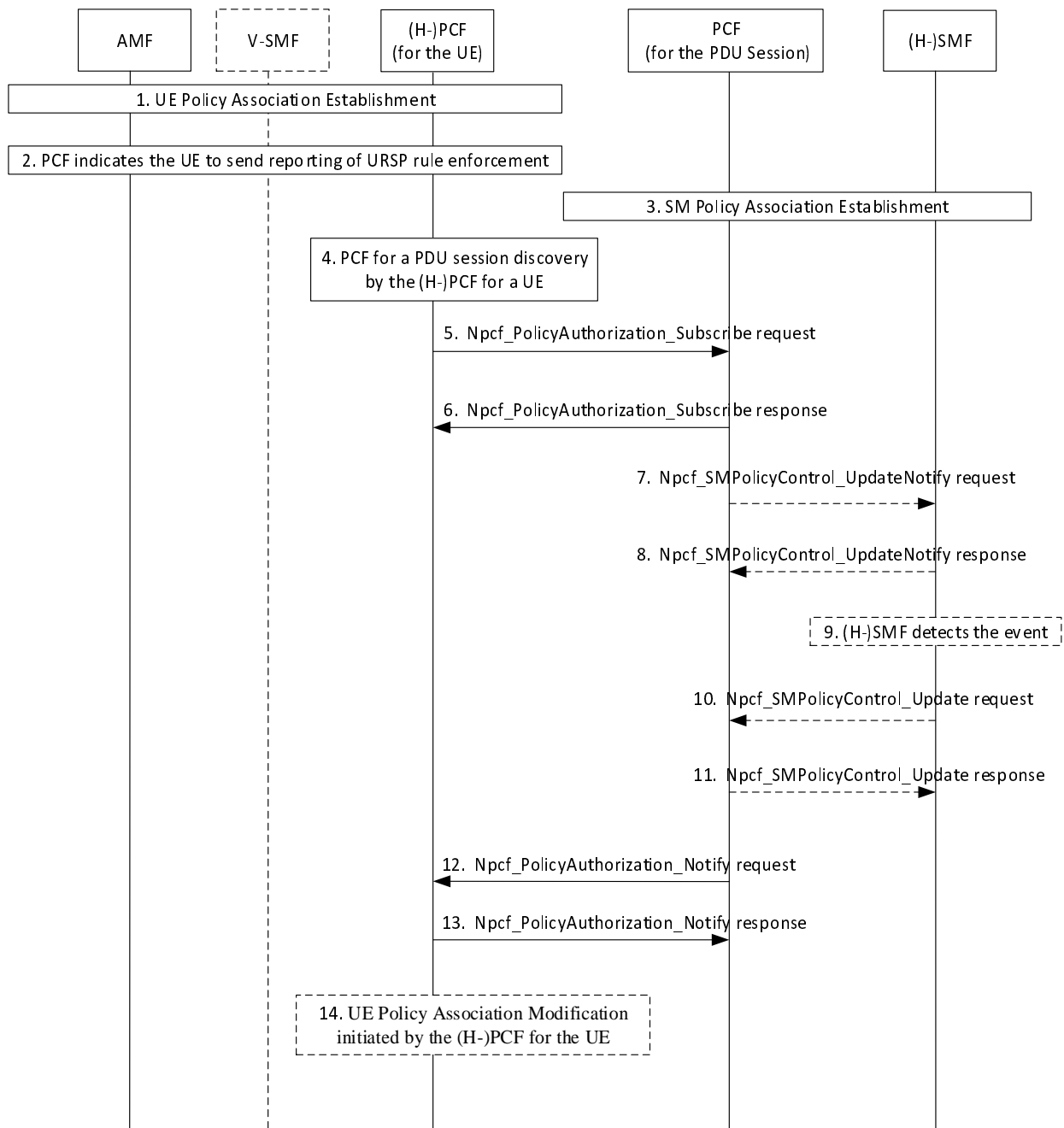


Figure 5.8.2-1: Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (non-roaming and Home Routed roaming)

This procedure concerns both non-roaming and Home Routed roaming scenarios. In the Home Routed roaming case, the H-PCF for the UE interacts with the PCF for a PDU session in the HPLMN.

1. An UE Policy Association is established as described in clause 5.1.1.
2. If the UE indicated the support of URSP rule enforcement, the (H-)PCF for the UE may indicate in one or more URSP rule(s) sent to the UE to send reporting of URSP rule enforcement as described in clause 4.2.2.2.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. For the PDU sessions related to the URSP rule(s) whose enforcement has been requested, the (H-)PCF for the UE triggers the discovery of the PCF(s) for the PDU session as described in step 4.

3. The (H-)SMF establishes a SM Policy Association as described in clause 5.2.1. If the "URSPEnforcement" feature is supported, the (H-)SMF may include the URSP rule enforcement information provided by the UE and additional PDU session information as specified in clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The PCF for the PDU session, in the response, may subscribe with the (H-)SMF to the report of URSP rule enforcement by providing the Policy Control Request Trigger "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" as specified in clause 5.6.3.6 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
4. The (H-)PCF for the UE discovers the PCF(s) for a PDU Session that handle(s) the respective UE traffic as described in clause 8.4a.
- 5-6. When the (H-)PCF for the UE receives the notification about a PDU session that may be handling the traffic of a URSP rule, if the "URSPEnforcement" feature is supported, the (H-)PCF for the UE subscribes to the PCF for the PDU Session for notifications about UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.6.9.
- 7-8. If not already provisioned, the PCF for a PDU session provisions the Policy Control Request Trigger to request the (H-)SMF to detect "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" as defined in clause 4.2.6.4 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the PCF for the PDU session contains URSP rule enforcement information (e.g., it was received during SM Policy Association establishment), the PCF for the PDU session notifies the (H-)PCF for the UE as described in steps 12-13.
9. When the (H-)SMF receives a UE report of URSP rule enforcement via PDU session modification, the Policy Control Request Trigger "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" is met.
- 10-11. The (H-)SMF notifies the PCF for a PDU session using the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update service operation as described in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
- 12-13. The PCF for the PDU Session notifies the (H-)PCF for the UE about the detected URSP rule enforcement event using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the notification URI received in the subscription in step 5, and the (H-)PCF for the UE responds with "204 No Content", as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.5.25.
14. The (H-)PCF for the UE checks operator policies and then may make policy control decisions, e.g. may adjust the URSP rules when needed, based on the notified URSP rule enforcement information.

5.8.3 Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (LBO roaming)

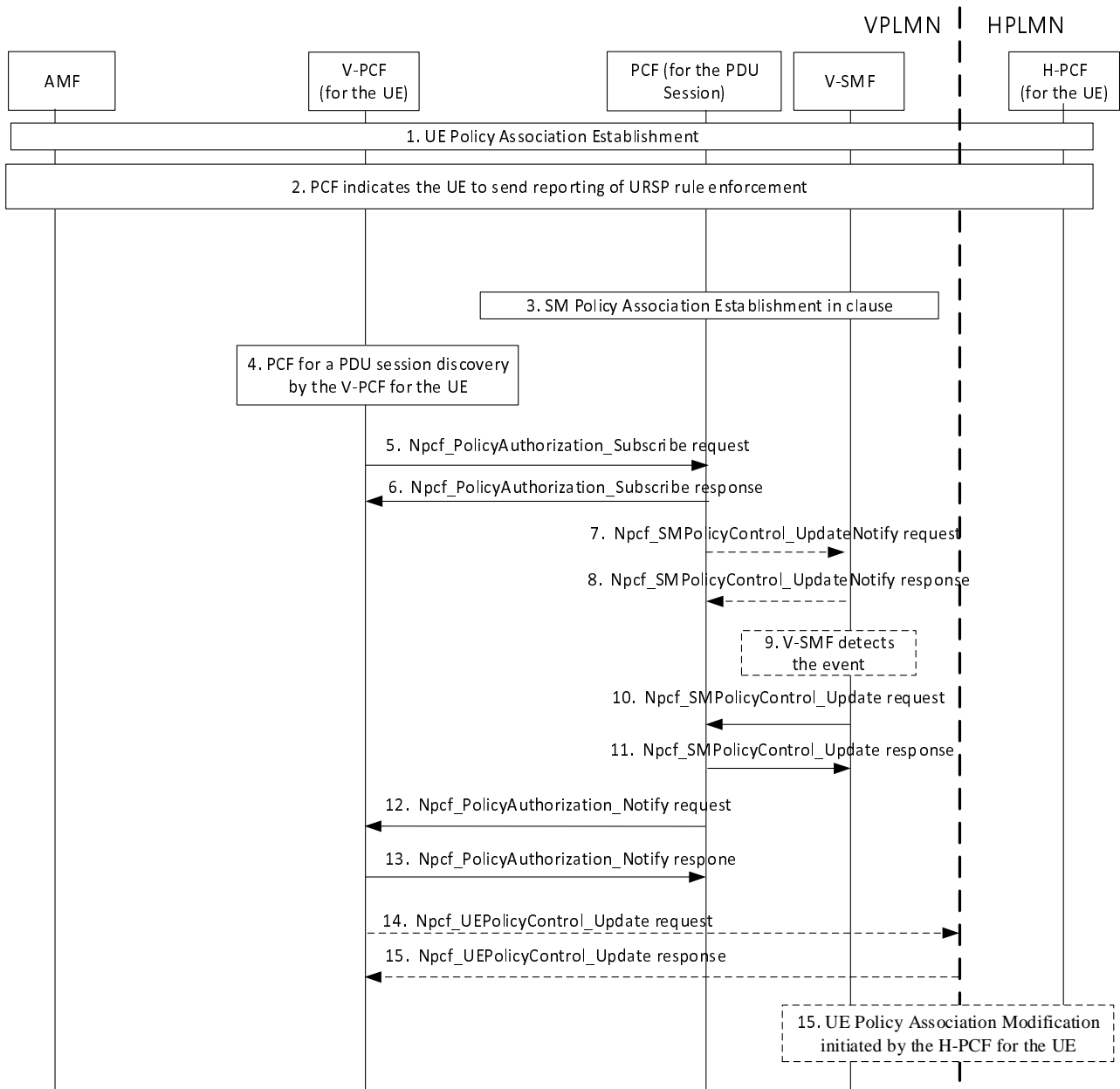


Figure 5.8.3-1: Forwarding of URSP Rule Enforcement Information (LBO roaming)

This procedure concerns LBO roaming scenarios.

1. An UE Policy Association is established as described in clause 5.1.1. The H-PCF for the UE may send the "URSP_ENF_INFO" Policy Control Request Trigger to the V-PCF for the UE to request the forwarding of URSP rule enforcement information as specified in clause 4.2.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
2. If the UE indicated the support of URSP rule enforcement, the H-PCF for the UE may indicate in one or more URSP rule(s) sent to the UE to send reporting of URSP rule enforcement as described in clause 4.2.2.2.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31]. For the PDU sessions related to the URSP rule(s) whose enforcement has been requested, the V-PCF for the UE triggers the discovery of the PCF(s) for the PDU session as described in step 4.
3. The V-SMF establishes a SM Policy Association as described in clause 5.2.1. If the "URSPenforcement" feature is supported, the V-SMF may include the URSP rule enforcement information provided by the UE and additional PDU session information as specified in clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]. The PCF for the PDU session, in the response, may subscribe with the V-SMF to the report of URSP rule enforcement by providing the Policy

Control Request Trigger "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" as specified in clause 5.6.3.6 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

4. The V-PCF for the UE discovers the PCF(s) for a PDU Session that handle(s) the respective UE traffic as described in clause 8.4a.
- 5-6. When the V-PCF for the UE receives the notification about a PDU session in LBO mode that may be handling the traffic of a URSP rule, if the "URSPEnforcement" feature is supported, the V-PCF for the UE subscribes to the PCF for the PDU Session for notifications about UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Subscribe service operation as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.6.9.
- 7-8. If not already provisioned, the PCF for a PDU session provisions the Policy Control Request Trigger to request the V-SMF to detect "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" as defined in clause 4.2.6.4 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

If the PCF for the PDU session contains URSP rule enforcement information (e.g., it was received during SM Policy Association establishment), the PCF for the PDU session notifies the V-PCF for the UE as described in steps 12-13.
9. When the V-SMF receives a UE report of URSP rule enforcement via PDU session modification, the Policy Control Request Trigger "UE reporting of URSP rule enforcement information" is met.
- 10-11. The V-SMF notifies the PCF for a PDU session using the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Update service operation as described in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
- 12-13. The PCF for the PDU Session notifies the V-PCF for the UE about the detected URSP rule enforcement event using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation by sending an HTTP POST request to the notification URI received in the subscription in step 5, and the V-PCF for the UE responds with "204 No Content", as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] clause 4.2.5.25.
- 14-15. If the V-PCF for the UE has received the request to forward URSP rule enforcement information from the H-PCF in step 1 and the V-PCF for the UE is notified about the detected URSP rule enforcement event in step 12-13, then the V-PCF reports the received information from the PCF for the PDU Session to the H-PCF using the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Update service operation as specified in clause 4.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.525 [31].
16. The H-PCF for the UE checks operator policies and then may make policy control decisions, e.g. may adjust the URSP rules when needed, based on the notified URSP rule enforcement information.

6 Binding Mechanism

6.1 Overview

The binding mechanism associates the session information with the QoS flow that is intended to carry the service data flow(s).

The binding mechanism includes three parts:

1. Session binding.
2. PCC rule authorization.
3. QoS flow binding.

For PCC deployments not supporting MBS, the binding mechanism is described in this clause and the rest of clauses under clause 6.

When PCC is deployed in an MBS architecture as defined in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54], the binding mechanism is defined as described in clause 6.5.

The Session binding function receives the AF session information and determines the relevant PDU session. With this information the PCC rule authorization function runs the policy rules and constructs the PCC rule(s), if the

authorization is granted. Finally, the QoS flow binding function selects the QoS flow(s) to carry the service data flow (defined in a PCC rule by means of the SDF template), within the PDU session

The PCC rule authorization function and the QoS flow binding function can take place without the Session binding function at certain PDU session events (e.g. request of SM related policies initiated by the SMF). The PCF may authorize dynamic PCC rules for service data flows without a corresponding AF session.

NOTE: The relation between AF sessions and rules depends only on the operator configuration. An AF session can be covered by one or more PCC rules, if applicable (e.g. one rule per media component of an IMS session).

6.2 Session Binding

The Session binding is the association of the AF session information to one and only one PDU session.

When the PCF receives the service information from the AF, the PCF shall perform the session binding and shall associate the described IP and Ethernet data flows within the AF session information (and therefore the applicable PCC rules) to one existing PDU session. This association is done comparing the following parameters received from the AF with the corresponding PDU session parameters. In order to have a successful session binding, all parameters shall match, if provided.

- a) For an IP type PDU session, the UE IPv4 address or IPv6 address. If IPv6 address is received from the AF, the association is done by comparing the /128 IPv6 address with the IPv6 prefix of the PDU session using the longest prefix match.

NOTE 1: The UE IP address management is specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.8, and the differences and additions in wireline and wireless convergence scenarios specified in 3GPP TS 23.512 [9], clause C.2.1.6. For IPv6 prefix delegation, the IPv6 network prefix of the PDU session is shorter than /64.

NOTE 2: The UE IPv4 address or IPv6 address received by the PCF from the AF can contain an IP address that belongs to the framed routes that apply to a PDU session. In this case, the association with the PDU session needs to be based on comparing the received UE address is within the one or more framed routes of the PDU session.

For an Ethernet type PDU session, the UE MAC address.

If the "TimeSensitiveNetworking" or the "TimeSensitiveCommunication" feature feature is supported, association is done by comparing the value of MAC address in the AF request with the MAC address of the DS-TT port as reported by the SMF within the TSC User Plane Node information.

- b) The UE identity (of the same kind e.g. SUPI), if available.

NOTE 3: In case the UE identity in the access network and the application level identity for the user are of different kinds, the PCF needs to maintain, or have access to, the mapping between the identities. Such mapping is outside the scope of the present document.

For 5G ProSe Layer-3 UE-to-Network Relay connectivity, the UE identity that the SMF has provided (i.e. 5G ProSe Layer-3 UE-to-Network Relay Identity) and the UE identity provided by the AF (i.e. 5G ProSe Layer-3 Remote UE Identity) may be different. In these scenarios, the PCF shall ignore the UE identity provided the AF, and applies the rest of received parameters, if available, to perform session binding.

- c) The information about the data network (DNN) the user is accessing, if available.

NOTE 4: For 5G ProSe Layer-3 UE-to-Network Relay connectivity, to enable the PCF to distinguish the Relay scenario from other scenarios and hence ignore the received UE identify provided by the AF, a dedicated DNN for 5G ProSe Layer-3 UE-to-Network Relay connectivity needs to be configured in the PCF.

- d) The IPv4 address domain identity if available in the "ipDomain" attribute.

NOTE 5: The "ipDomain" attribute is helpful when within a network slice instance, there are several separate IP address domains, with SMF/UPF(s) that allocate IPv4 IP addresses out of the same private address range to UE PDU Sessions. The same IP address can thus be allocated to UE PDU sessions served by SMF/UPF(s) in different address domains. If one PCF controls several SMF/UPF(s) in different IP address domains, the UE IP address is thus not sufficient for the session binding. An AF can serve UEs in different IP address domains, either by having direct IP interfaces to those domains, or by having interconnections via NATs in the user plane between the UPF and the AF. If a NAT is used, the AF obtains the IP address allocated to the UE PDU session via application level signalling and supplies it for the session binding to the PCF in the "ueIpv4" attribute. The AF supplies an "ipDomain" attribute denoting the IP address domain behind the NAT in addition. The AF can derive the appropriate value from the source address (allocated by the NAT) of incoming user plane packets. The value provided in the "ipDomain" attribute is operator configurable.

e) The S-NSSAI if available.

NOTE 6: The S-NSSAI is helpful in the scenario where multiple network slice instances are deployed in the same DNN, and the same IPv4 address may be allocated to UE PDU sessions in different network slice instances. If one PCF controls several network slices, each network slice in different IP address domains, the UE IP address is not sufficient for the session binding. The AF supplies the S-NSSAI denoting the network slice instance that allocated the IPv4 address of the UE PDU session. How the AF derives S-NSSAI is out of the scope of this specification.

Session Binding applies for PDU sessions of IP type. It may also apply to Ethernet PDU session type but only when especially allowed by PCC related policy control request trigger. In the case of Ethernet PDU session, session binding does not apply to AF requests sent over Rx.

NOTE 7: For the Ethernet PDU session, the PCF needs to provision "UE_MAC_CH" trigger to the SMF.

NOTE 8: Refer to 3GPP TS 29.213 [30] for the session binding between the IP type PDU session and the AF request sent over Rx.

The PCF shall identify the PCC rules affected by the AF session information, including new PCC rules to be installed and existing PCC rules to be modified or removed.

If the PCF is not capable of executing the Session binding, the PCF shall reject the AF request.

6.3 PCC rule Authorization

The PCC rule authorization is the selection of the 5G QoS parameters, described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2] clause 5.7.2, for the PCC rules.

The PCF shall perform the PCC rule authorization after successful session binding for PCC rules belonging to the AF sessions, as well as for the PCC rules without the corresponding AF sessions. By the authorization process the PCF determines whether the user can have access to the requested services and under what constraints. If so, the PCC rules are created or modified. If the session information is not authorized, a negative answer shall be issued to the AF.

The PCF shall perform the PCC rule authorization function, e.g. when the PCF receives the session information from the AF, when the PCF receives a notification of PDU session events (e.g. PDU session establishment, PDU session modification) from the SMF, or when the PCF receives a notification from the UDR, that calls for a policy decision.

For the authorization of a PCC rule, the PCF shall consider any 5GC specific restrictions, the AF service information and other information available to the PCF (e.g. user's subscription information, operator policies). The PCF shall assign an appropriate set of 5G QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, QoS characteristics, ARP, GBR, MBR, QNC, RQI), that can be supported by the access network, to each PCC rule. Additional information may be needed in the PCC rule based on feature support and available information as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].

The authorization of a PCC rule associated with an emergency service shall be supported without subscription information (e.g. information stored in the UDR). The PCF shall apply policies configured for the emergency service.

If "PvsSupport" feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, and the Onboarding Network is an ON-SNP, the authorization of PCC rule(s) associated with a PDU Session used for User Plane Remote Provisioning shall be supported without subscription information (e.g. information stored in the UDR). The PCF shall apply policies based on the locally stored Onboarding Configuration Data for this DNN and S-NSSAI combination.

NOTE 1: When the Onboarding Network is a PLMN or SNPN, the authorization of PCC rule(s) associated with a PDU Session used for User Plane Remote Provisioning is based on any 5G specific restrictions and other information available to the PCF, e.g. user's subscription information and operator policies (e.g., the list of allowed services within the user's subscription and the PVS and DNS address(es) to be used in the SDF template of the PCC Rule(s) within the local configuration).

NOTE 2: The PCC rule authorization is not applicable to the Unstructured type PDU session.

6.4 QoS flow binding

The QoS flow binding is the association of the PCC rule to a QoS flow, identified by the QFI, within a PDU session.

The QoS flow binding function resides in the SMF. The binding is performed using the following binding parameters:

- 5QI;
- ARP;
- QNC (if available in the PCC rule);
- Priority Level (if available in the PCC rule);
- Averaging Window (if available in the PCC rule); and
- Maximum Data Burst Volume (if available in the PCC rule).

The selected QoS flow shall have the same above binding parameters as the one indicated by the PCC rule. The set of 5G QoS parameters assigned by the PCF to the service data flow is the main input for QFI allocation.

The SMF shall bind a PCC rule to the default QoS flow as follows:

- For a non-GBR default QoS flow, the PCC rule(s) bound to the default QoS flow contains values of the non-GBR type 5QI, ARP, and if received, 5QI priority Level, that are identical to the corresponding values within the "authDefQos" attribute of the enforced session rule.
- For a GBR or delay critical GBR default QoS flow, the PCC rule bound to the default QoS flow contains a reference to a QoS data decision with the "defQosFlowIndication" attribute set to true and the authorized default QoS within the "authDefQos" attribute of the enforced session rule contains values of the GBR type or delay critical GBR type 5QI, ARP, GBR, MBR, and if available, 5QI priority Level, averaging window and maximum data burst volume.

When the QoS data decision which the PCC rule refers to include the "defQosFlowIndication" attribute set to true as defined in clause 4.2.6.2.10 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the SMF shall bind the PCC rule to the default QoS flow as long as the "defQosFlowIndication" attribute set to true.

If the "defQosFlowIndication" attribute has not been received before during the lifetime of the PCC rule or the "defQosFlowIndication" attribute has been received but set to false (as defined in clause 4.2.6.2.10 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9]), the SMF shall evaluate whether a QoS flow with the same binding parameters combination exists. If a QoS flow with the same binding parameters combination exists, the SMF binds the PCC rule to the existing QoS flow, or based on local policies, or the below mentioned conditions (which QoS Flow binding shall ensure), require the establishment of a new QoS flow. If no QoS flow exists, the SMF creates a new QoS flow, derives the QoS parameters for a new QoS flow, using authorized QoS in the PCC rule, and binds the PCC rule to the QoS flow.

NOTE 1: For non-GBR QoS flows, and when standardized 5QIs or pre-configured 5QIs are used, the 5QI value can be used as the QFI of the QoS flow. However, the pre-configured 5QI values cannot be used when the UE is roaming.

NOTE 2: For an unstructured PDU session, there is maximum one QoS flow.

NOTE 3: For PCC rules containing a delay critical GBR 5QI value, the SMF can bind PCC Rules with the same binding parameters to different QoS Flows to ensure that the GFBR of the QoS Flow can be achieved with the Maximum Data Burst Volume of the QoS Flow.

The PCF shall supply the PCC rules to be installed, modified, or removed to the SMF. The SMF shall evaluate whether it is possible to use one of the existing QoS flows or not, and if applicable.

If the PCF has previously indicated to the SMF that a PCC rule shall be bound to the default QoS flow by including the "defQoSFlowIndication" attribute set to true within the QoS data decision which the PCC rule refers to, but the PCF updates the QoS data decision by including the "defQoSFlowIndication" attribute set to false as defined in clause 4.2.6.2.10 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the SMF shall create the binding between service data flow(s) and the QoS flow which have the same binding parameters.

If the PCC rule is corresponding to the QoS rule requested by the UE as defined in clause 4.2.4.17 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] and a Segregation bit is set as defined in Table 9.11.4.13.1 of 3GPP TS 24.501 [33] in the request from the UE, the SMF should abide by the UE request and bind the PCC rule on a distinct and dedicated QoS Flow e.g. even if an existing QoS Flow can support the requested QoS, but is still allowed to proceed instead with binding the selected SDF(s) on an existing QoS Flow.

Whenever the binding parameters of a PCC rule changes, the existing binding of this PCC rule shall be re-evaluated, i.e. the QoS flow binding procedure, is performed. The re-evaluation may, for a PCC rule, result in a new binding with another QoS flow. If the PCF requests the same change of the binding parameter value(s) for all PCC rules that are bound to the same QoS Flow, the SMF should not re-evaluate the binding of these PCC rules and instead, modify the QoS parameter value(s) of the QoS Flow accordingly.

NOTE 4: A QoS change of the default 5QI/ARP values doesn't cause the QoS flow rebinding for PCC rules previously bound to the QoS flow associated with the default QoS rule, with the "defQoSFlowIndication" attribute set to true.

If the PCC rule is removed, the SMF shall remove the association of the PCC rule to the QoS flow. If the last PCC rule that is bound to a QoS Flow is removed, the SMF shall delete the QoS Flow.

When a QoS flow is removed the SMF shall report to the PCF that the PCC rules bound to the corresponding QoS flow are removed.

The QoS Flow binding shall also ensure that:

- If a dynamic value for the Core Network Packet Delay Budget (defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 5.7.3.4) is used, PCC rules with the same above binding parameters but different PDU Session anchors (i.e. the corresponding service data flows which have different CN PDBs) shall not be bound to the same QoS Flow.

NOTE 5: Different PDU Session anchors can exist if multiple RouteToLocation instances are included within the traffic control decision referred by the PCC rules.

NOTE 6: In PIN scenarios (defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 5.44.3.4) the SMF can increase the dynamic CN PDB based on the requested non-3GPP delay budget for specific GBR QoS flows based on operator policy and implementation. This change however does not impact the QoS Flow binding.

- A PCC rule including TSCAI information is bound to a new QoS flow and no other PCC rule shall be bound to this same QoS flow. Whenever the TSC Assistance container of an existing PCC rule is changed, the binding of this PCC rule shall not be re-evaluated.
- For MA PDU Session, the QoS flow binding shall also ensure that the PCC rules for GBR or delay critical GBR service data flows allowed on different access are not bound to the same QoS flow even if the PCC rules contain the same binding parameters.

NOTE 7: For MA PDU Session, the GBR or delay critical GBR resource for a service data flow is allocated only in one access.

- When the PCF provisions a PCC rule with Alternative QoS parameter Set(s), the PCC rule is bound to a new QoS Flow and no other PCC rule is bound to this QoS Flow.
- When the PCF provisions a PCC rule with QoS Monitoring Policy, the PCC rule is bound to a new QoS flow and no other PCC rule is bound to this QoS flow.

NOTE 8: The binding of PCC rule with QoS Monitoring policy to a new QoS flow is only applicable to the Per QoS Flow per UE QoS Monitoring (as described in TS 23.501 [2] clause 5.33.3.2).

- The SMF should not bind PCC rule(s) with the indication of service data flow(s) supporting ECN marking for L4S within the "l4sInd" attribute and the PCC rule(s) with service data flow(s) not supporting ECN marking for L4S to the same QoS flow.

NOTE 9: The SMF can also, based on local configuration, bind a PCC Rule that does not include the explicit indication of ECN marking for L4S to a new QoS flow that supports ECN marking for L4S.

- When the PCF provisions a PCC rule with Traffic Parameter Information, the PCC rule is bound to a new QoS Flow and no other PCC rule is bound to this QoS Flow.
- When the PCF provisions a PCC rule with PDU Set Control Information, the PCC rule is bound to a new QoS Flow and no other PCC rule is bound to this QoS Flow. Whenever the PDU Set Control Information of an existing PCC rule changed, the binding of this PCC rule shall not be re-evaluated.
- When the PCF provisions a PCC rule with Data Burst Handling Information, the PCC rule is bound to a new QoS flow and no other PCC rule is bound to this QoS flow.

6.5 Binding mechanism in MBS deployments

6.5.1 MBS Session Binding

MBS Session binding is the association of an AF Session information to one and only one MBS Session. When the PCF receives MBS Policy Association Create request or MBS Policy Association Update request from the MB-SMF and if the PCF does not receive MBS Service Information from the MB-SMF, the PCF shall perform MBS session binding and associate the MBS session with the existing IP data flows within the AF session information (and therefore the applicable MBS Policies). The PCF shall perform MBS session binding based on the MBS Session ID. For an MBS Session that is instance of a location-dependent MBS service, the Area Session Policy ID is used together with the MBS Session ID to associate the AF Session information with this MBS Session instance of a location-dependent MBS service in a specific MBS Service Area.

6.5.2 MBS PCC rule Authorization for an MBS session

The MBS PCC rule authorization is the selection of the 5G QoS parameters, described in clause 6.10.1 of 3GPP TS 23.247 [2], for the MBS PCC rule. The PCF may perform the MBS PCC rule authorization in the following situations:

- When the MBS Service Information is received from the AF/NEF/MBSF. In this case, the MBS PCC rule authorization occurs at the reception of the information from the AF/NEF/MBSF.
- When the MBS Service Information is received from the MB-SMF. In this case, no session binding is performed.

Using the authorization process, the PCF determines whether the broadcast and multicast service is authorized. If so, the MBS PCC rules are created, modified and/or removed. If the received MBS service information is not authorized, the PCF shall reject the request with an appropriate error status code .

For the authorization of an MBS PCC rule, the PCF shall consider any 5GC specific restrictions, the MBS service information and other information available to the PCF (e.g. MBS Policy Control Data, operator policies). The PCF assigns an appropriate set of 5G QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, QoS characteristics, ARP, GBR, MBR), that can be supported by the access network, to each MBS PCC rule.

6.5.3 MBS QoS flow binding within an MBS session

The MBS QoS flow binding is the association of the MBS PCC rule to an MBS QoS flow, identified by the QFI, within an MBS session.

The MBS QoS flow binding function resides at the MB-SMF. This binding is performed using the following binding parameters:

- 5QI;
- ARP;
- Priority Level (if available in the MBS PCC rule);
- Averaging Window (if available in the MBS PCC rule); and

- Maximum Data Burst Volume (if available in the MBS PCC rule).

The selected MBS QoS flow shall have the same binding parameters (listed above) as the ones indicated by the MBS PCC rule. The set of 5G QoS parameters assigned by the PCF to the MBS service data flow is the main input for QFI allocation.

The PCF shall supply the MBS PCC rule(s) to be installed, modified, or removed to the MB-SMF. The MB-SMF shall evaluate whether it is possible to use the existing MBS QoS flows or not, and if applicable.

Whenever the binding parameters of an MBS PCC rule changes, the existing binding of this MBS PCC rule shall be re-evaluated, i.e. the MBS QoS flow binding procedure, is performed. The re-evaluation may, for an MBS PCC rule, result in a new binding with another MBS QoS flow. If the PCF requests the same change of the binding parameters values for all the MBS PCC rule(s) that are bound to the same MBS QoS Flow, the MB-SMF should not re-evaluate the binding of these MBS PCC rules, instead, the MB-SMF shall modify the QoS parameters values of the MBS QoS Flow accordingly.

If an MBS PCC rule is removed, the MB-SMF shall remove the association of the MBS PCC rule to the MBS QoS flow to which the MBS PCC rule is associated. If the last MBS PCC rule that is bound to an MBS QoS Flow is removed, the MB-SMF shall delete the MBS QoS Flow.

When an MBS QoS flow is removed, the MB-SMF shall report to the PCF that the MBS PCC rule(s) bound to this MBS QoS flow are removed.

7 QoS Parameters Mapping

7.1 Overview

Several QoS parameters mapping functions are needed during PCC interaction.

The main purpose of these mapping functions is the conversion of QoS parameters from one format to another. QoS information may be:

- parts of a session description language (SDI), e.g. SDP, MPD;
- QoS parameters; and
- access specific QoS parameters.

For PCC deployments not supporting MBS, QoS parameters mapping functions are located at the AF, PCF, SMF and UE and are described in this clause and the rest of clauses under clause 7.

When PCC is deployed in an MBS architecture as defined in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54], QoS parameter mapping functions are defined as described in clause 7.5.

One QoS mapping function is located at the PCF, which maps the service information received over the Rx interface or N5 interface, or if the "GMEC" feature is supported, the service information obtained from the UDR into QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, GBR, MBR, and ARP). This mapping is access independent. Clause 7.3 specifies the QoS mapping functions at the PCF applicable for all accesses.

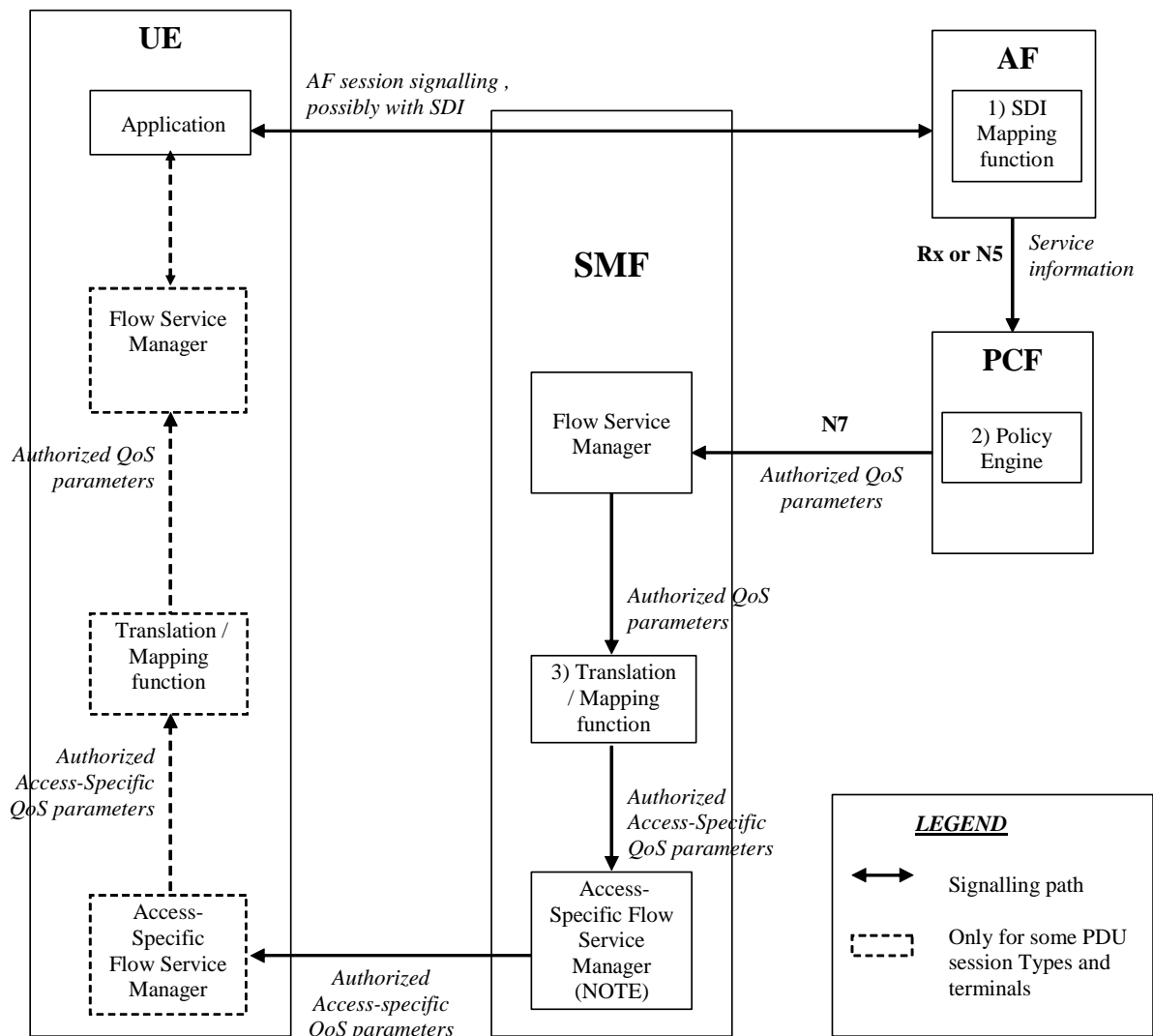
For IMS, the AF may pass service information to the PCF over the Rx interface or over the N5 interface if the PCF and the P-CSCF support the "IMS_SBI" feature. The AF derives information about the service from the SDI or from other sources. The mapping is application specific. If SDP (IETF RFC 4566 [16]) is used as SDI, the AF should apply the mapping described in clause 7.2. If MPD (3GPP TS 26.247 [17]) is used, the AF may apply the mapping described in Annex I in 3GPP TS 26.247 [17]. Clause 7.2 specifies the QoS parameter mapping functions at the AF. For IMS, the mapping rules in clause 7.2 shall be used at the P-CSCF.

One QoS mapping function is located at the PCF, which maps the service information received over the Rx or N5 interface, or if the "GMEC" feature is supported, obtained from UDR into QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, GBR, MBR, and ARP). This mapping is access independent. Clause 7.3 specifies the QoS mapping functions at the PCF applicable for all accesses.

The mapping functions located at SMF is specified in clause 7.4. The mapping function in UE is implementation dependent and not specified within this specification.

The PCF notes and authorizes the service data flows described within this service information by mapping from service information to Authorized QoS parameters for transfer to the SMF via the N7 interface. The SMF will map from the Authorized QoS parameters to the access specific QoS parameters.

For 3GPP 5GS, the network sets up QoS flow(s) with a suitable QoS and indicates to the UE the QoS characteristics of those QoS flow(s). Therefore the flow of QoS related information will be unidirectional as indicated in the figure 7.1-1.



NOTE: Access Specific QoS parameters with Authorized Access-Specific QoS parameters comparison.

Figure 7.1-1: QoS mapping framework

1. The AF shall perform mapping from an SDI received within the AF session signalling to service information passed to the PCF over the Rx or N5 interface (see clause 7.2 if SDP is used as SDI).
2. The PCF shall perform mapping from the service information received over the Rx or N5 interface to the Authorized QoS parameters that shall be passed to the SMF via the N7 interface. The mapping is performed for each service data flow. The PCF combines per direction the individual Authorized QoS parameters per flow (see clause 7.3).
3. The SMF shall perform mapping from the Authorized QoS parameters received from PCF to the access specific QoS parameters.

7.2 QoS parameter mapping Functions at AF

7.2.1 Introduction

The mapping described in this clause is mandatory for the P-CSCF and should also be applied by other AFs, if the SDI is SDP.

When a session is initiated or modified the AF shall derive a Media-Component-Description AVP for Rx interface or a "MediaComponent" attribute for N5 interface from the SDP Parameters. If the CHEM feature is supported, the P-CSCF may provide the maximum packet loss rate(s) for uplink and/or downlink direction(s) in the Max-PLR-DL AVP and/or the Max-PLR-UL AVP for Rx interface respectively as defined in clause 7.2.2 or the "maxPacketLossRateUI" attribute and/or "maxPacketLossRateDI" attribute respectively as defined in clause 7.2.3.

7.2.2 AF supporting Rx interface

When the AF interworks with the PCF using the Rx interface, it shall derive a Media-Component-Description AVP from the SDP parameters for each SDP media component using the same mapping rules as defined in clause 6.2 of 3GPP TS 29.213 [30].

7.2.3 AF supporting N5 interface

The mapping described in this clause is mandatory for the P-CSCF and should also be applied by other AFs, if the SDI is SDP.

When a session is initiated or modified the P-CSCF shall use the mapping rules in table 7.2.3-1 for each SDP media component to derive a media component entry of the "medComponents" attribute from the SDP Parameters. The mapping shall not apply to media components where the SDP payload is proposing to use a circuit-switched bearer (i.e. "c=" line set to "PSTN" and an "m=" line set to "PSTN", refer to 3GPP TS 24.292 [35]). Circuit-switched bearer related media shall not be included in the service information sent to the PCF.

**Table 7.2.3-1: Rules for derivation of service information within
Media Component Description from SDP media component**

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Media Component Number	ordinal number of the position of the "m=" line in the SDP
AF Application Identifier	The "afAppId" attribute may be supplied or omitted, depending on the application. For IMS, if the "afAppId" attribute is supplied, its value should not demand application specific bandwidth or QoS characteristics handling unless the IMS application is capable of handling a QoS downgrading.
Media Type	The "medType" attribute shall be included with the same value as supplied for the media type in the "m=" line.
Flow Status	<pre> IF port in m-line = 0 THEN "fStatus" := REMOVED; ELSE IF Transport in m-line is "TCP" or "TCP/MSRP" or "UDP/DTLS/SCTP" THEN (NOTE 9) "fStatus" := ENABLED; ELSE /* UDP or RTP/AVP transport IF a=rtcp-mux is negotiated THEN "fStatus" :=ENABLED; (NOTE 12 and 13) ELSE IF a=recvonly THEN IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 8) THEN "fStatus" := ENABLED-DOWNLINK; (NOTE 4) ELSE /* UE terminated (NOTE 8) */ "fStatus" := ENABLED-UPLINK; (NOTE 4) ENDIF; ELSE IF a=sendonly THEN IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 8) THEN "fStatus" := ENABLED-UPLINK; (NOTE 4) ELSE /* UE terminated (NOTE 8) */ "fStatus" := ENABLED-DOWNLINK; (NOTE 4) ENDIF; ELSE IF a=inactive THEN "fStatus" :=DISABLED; ELSE /* a=sendrecv or no direction attribute */ "fStatus" := ENABLED (NOTE 4) ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; (NOTE 5) </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Max Requested Bandwidth-UL	<pre> IF <SDP direction> = UE terminated (NOTE 8) THEN IF Transport in m-line is "TCP" or "TCP/MSRP" or "UDP/DTLS/SCTP" THEN (NOTE 9) IF a=recvonly or a=sendrecv or no direction attribute THEN IF b=AS:<bandwidth> is present and (b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is not present or is present but not supported) THEN "marBwUl" := <bandwidth> * 1000; /* Unit bit/s ELSE IF b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is present and supported THEN "marBwUl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> (NOTE 11) /* Unit bit/s ELSE "marBwUl" := <Operator specific setting>; ENDIF; ENDIF; ELSE "marBwUl" := <Operator specific setting>, (NOTE 10) ENDIF; ELSE /* UDP or RTP/AVP transport IF b=AS:<bandwidth> is present and (b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is not present or is present but not supported) THEN IF a=rtcp-mux is negotiated(NOTE 13) THEN IF b=RR:<rrbandwidth> is present OR b=RS:<rsbandwidth> is present THEN "marBwUl" := <bandwidth> * 1000 + <rrbandwidth> + <rsbandwidth>; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) ELSE "marBwUl" := <bandwidth> * 1050; /* Unit is bit/s ENDIF ELSE "marBwUl" := <bandwidth> * 1000; /* Unit is bit/s ENDIF; ELSE IF b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is present and supported THEN IF a=rtcp-mux is negotiated (NOTE 13) THEN IF b=RR:<rrbandwidth> is present OR b=RS:<rsbandwidth> is present THEN "marBwUl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> (NOTE 11) + <rrbandwidth> + <rsbandwidth>; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) ELSE "marBwUl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> * 1.05 (NOTE 11) /* Unit bit/s ENDIF ELSE "marBwUl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> (NOTE 11) /* Unit bit/s ENDIF; ELSE "marBwUl" := <Operator specific setting>, or attribute not supplied; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF ELSE Consider SDP in opposite direction ENDIF </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Max Requested Bandwidth DL	<pre> IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 8) THEN IF Transport in m-line is "TCP" or "TCP/MSRP" or "UDP/DTLS/SCTP" THEN (NOTE 9) IF a=recvonly or a=sendrecv or no direction attribute THEN IF b=AS:<bandwidth> is present and (b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is not present or is present but not supported) THEN "marBwDl" := <bandwidth> * 1000; /* Unit bit/s ELSE IF b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is present and supported THEN "marBwDl" := <Transport-dependant bandwidth> /* Unit bit/s (see NOTE 11) OR Operator specific setting ELSE "marBwDl" := <Operator specific setting>; ENDIF; ELSE "marBwDl" := <Operator specific setting>, (NOTE 10) ENDIF; ELSE /* UDP or RTP/AVP transport IF b=AS:<bandwidth> is present and b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is not present THEN IF a=rtcp-mux is negotiated(NOTE 13) THEN IF b=RR:<rrbandwidth> is present OR b=RS:<rsbandwidth> is present THEN "marBwDl" := <bandwidth> * 1000 + <rrbandwidth> + <rsbandwidth>; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) ELSE "marBwDl" := <bandwidth> * 1050; /* Unit is bit/s ENDIF ELSE "marBwDl" := <bandwidth> * 1000 ;/* Unit is bit/s ENDIF; ELSE IF b=TIAS:<Tibandwidth> is present THEN IF a=rtcp-mux is negotiated (NOTE 13) THEN IF b=RR:<rrbandwidth> is present OR b=RS:<rsbandwidth> is present THEN "marBwDl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> (NOTE 11) + <rrbandwidth> + <rsbandwidth>; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) ELSE "marBwDl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> * 1.05 (NOTE 11) /* Unit bit/s ENDIF ELSE "marBwDl" := <Transport-dependent bandwidth> (NOTE 11) /* Unit bit/s ENDIF; ELSE "marBwDl" := <Operator specific setting>, or attribute not supplied; ENDIF; ENDIF; ELSE Consider SDP in opposite direction ENDIF </pre>
Max Supported Bandwidth-UL	<pre> IF a=bw-info is present and includes MaxSupBw: <bandwidth> and direction: recv (UE terminated) or send (UE originated) or sendrecv (NOTE 14) THEN "maxSupBwUl" := [supplied <bandwidth>] * 1000 /Unit bit/s/ (NOTE 16) ELSE /* a=bw-info is not present or is present but MaxSupBw is not included or direction is the opposite Attribute not supplied ENDIF; (NOTE 15) </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Max Supported Bandwidth-DL	<pre> IF a=bw-info is present and includes MaxSupBw : <bandwidth> and direction: send (UE terminated) or rcv (UE originated) or sendrcv (NOTE 14) THEN "maxSupBwDl" := [supplied <bandwidth>] * 1000 /Unit bit/s/ (NOTE 16) ELSE /* a=bw-info is not present or is present but MaxSupBw is not included or direction is the opposite Attribute not supplied ENDIF; (NOTE 15) </pre>
Min Desired Bandwidth UL	<pre> IF a=bw-info is present and includes MinDesBw : <bandwidth> and direction: rcv (UE terminated) or send (UE originated) or sendrcv (NOTE 14) THEN "minDesBwUl" := supplied <bandwidth> * 1000 /Unit bit/s/ (NOTE 16) ELSE /* a=bw-info is not present or is present but MinDesBw is not included or direction is the opposite Attribute not supplied ENDIF; </pre>
Min Desired Bandwidth DL	<pre> IF a=bw-info is present and includes MinDesBw : <bandwidth> and direction: send (UE terminated) or rcv (UE originated) or sendrcv (NOTE 14) THEN "minDesBwDl" := [supplied <bandwidth>] * 1000 /Unit bit/s/ (NOTE 16) ELSE /* a=bw-info is not present or is present but MinDesBw is not included or direction is the opposite Attribute not supplied ENDIF; </pre>
RR Bandwidth	<pre> IF b=RR:<bandwidth> is present THEN "rrBw" := <bandwidth>; ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) </pre>
RS Bandwidth	<pre> IF b=RS:<bandwidth> is present THEN "rsBw" := <bandwidth>; ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF; (NOTE 3; NOTE 6) </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Media SubComponent	Supply one attribute for bidirectional combination of two corresponding IP flows, if available, and for each single IP flow without a corresponding IP flow in opposite direction. If a media component comprises separate IP flows for RTP and RTCP, they are described in two separate Media SubComponent. However, if a=rtcp-mux is negotiated, RTP and RTCP use the same IP flow and shall be described in a single MediaSubComponent entry of the "medSubcomps" attribute. The encoding of the "medSubcomps" attribute is described in table 6.2.2
Reservation Priority	The AF may supply or omit the "resPrio" attribute. (NOTE 17)
Codec Data	The "codecs" are provisioned as specified in clause 5.6.2.7 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10], including the codec-related information detailed in clause 5.6.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
Maximum Packet Loss Rate DL	<pre> IF a= PLR_adapt line is NOT present in both SDP OFFER and ANSWER THEN /* As UE don't support CHEM feature, AF should not use packet loss rates in either the uplink or downlink direction */ maxPacketLossRateDl attribute not supplied ELSE IF P-CSCF serving the OFFERER THEN FOR each RTP payload type of the same media line IF MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is present in the SDP OFFER THEN IF maxUL-PLR is present in the SDP ANSWER maxPacketLossRateDl = value of maxe2e-PLR in the SDP OFFER - maxUL-PLR in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* maxUL-PLR is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ MaxPacketLossRateDl = the default value is ½ maxe2e-PLR value present in the SDP OFFER ELSE /* MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is not present in the SDP OFFER */ IF maxUL-PLR is present in the SDP ANSWER THEN maxPacketLossRateDl = (the default value is end-to-end Maximum End-to-End Packet Loss Rate for the decoder of the RTP payload type as recommended in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14] clause X.1.2 for application layer redundancy or X.1.1 for partial redundancy) - maxUL-PLR in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* maxUL-PLR is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateDl = the default value is ½ end-to-end Maximum End-to-End Packet Loss Rate for the decoder of the RTP payload type as recommended in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14] clause X.1.2 for application layer redundancy or X.1.1 for partial redundancy ENDIF; ENDIF; END FOR LOOP of each RTP payload type of the same media maxPacketLossRateDl = maximum value of Max-PLR-DL among all the RTP payload types ELSE /* For P-CSCF serving the ANSWERER */ FOR each RTP payload type of the same media line IF MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is present in the SDP ANSWER THEN IF maxDL-PLR is present in the SDP ANSWER maxPacketLossRateDl = value of maxDL-PLR in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* maxDL-PLR is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateDl = the default value is ½ maxe2e-PLR value present in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateDl = the default value is ½ end-to-end Maximum End-to-End Packet Loss Rate for the decoder of the RTP payload type as recommended in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14] clause X.1.2 for application layer redundancy or X.1.1 for partial redundancy ENDIF; END FOR LOOP of each RTP payload type of the same media maxPacketLossRateDl = maximum value of Max-PLR-DL among all the RTP payload types ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Maximum Packet Loss Rate UL	<pre> IF a= PLR_adapt line is NOT present in both SDP OFFER and ANSWER THEN /* As UE don't support CHEM feature, AF should not use packet loss rates in either the uplink or downlink direction */ maxPacketLossRateUl attribute not supplied ELSE IF P-CSCF serving the OFFERER THEN FOR each RTP payload type of the same media line IF MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is present in the SDP ANSWER THEN IF maxDL-PLR is present in the SDP ANSWER maxPacketLossRateUl = value of maxe2e-PLR in the SDP ANSWER - maxDL-PLR in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* maxDL-PLR is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateUl = the default value is ½ maxe2e-PLR value present in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateUl = the default value is ½ end-to-end Maximum End-to-End Packet Loss Rate for the decoder of the RTP payload type as recommended in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14] clause X.1.2 for Application layer redundancy or X.1.1 for partial redundancy ENDIF; END FOR LOOP of each RTP payload type of the same media maxPacketLossRateUl = maximum value of Max-PLR-UL among all the RTP payload types ELSE /* For P-CSCF serving the ANSWERER */ FOR each RTP payload type of the same media line IF MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is present in the SDP OFFER THEN IF maxUL-PLR is present in the SDP ANSWER maxPacketLossRateUl = value of maxUL-PLR in the SDP ANSWER ELSE /* maxUL-PLR is not present in the SDP ANSWER */ maxPacketLossRateUl = the default value is ½ maxe2e-PLR value present in the SDP OFFER ELSE /* MAXimum-e2e-PLR line is not present in the SDP OFFER */ maxPacketLossRateUl = the default value is ½ end-to-end Maximum End-to-End Packet Loss Rate for the decoder of the RTP payload type as recommended in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14] clause X.1.2 for Application layer redundancy or X.1.1 for partial redundancy ENDIF; END FOR LOOP of each RTP payload type of the same media maxPacketLossRateUl = maximum value of Max-PLR-UL among all the RTP payload types ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Desired-Max-Latency	<pre> IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 8) THEN IF a=3gpp-qos-hint is present and includes a qos-hint-property that indicates "latency" IF qos-hint-split-value for "local" is not present "desMaxLatency" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value>*0.5 ELSE /* qos-hint-split-value for "local" is present "desMaxLatency" = <qos-hint-split-value> ENDIF ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF ELSE /* <SDP direction> = UE terminated (NOTE 8)/ IF a=3gpp-qos-hint is present and includes a qos-hint-property that indicates "latency" IF qos-hint-split-value for "local" is not present "desMaxLatency" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value>*0.5 ELSE /* qos-hint-split-value for "local" is present/ "desMaxLatency" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value> - <qos-hint-split- value> ENDIF ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF ENDIF </pre>
Desired-Max-Loss	<pre> IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 8) THEN IF a=3gpp-qos-hint is present and includes a qos-hint-property that indicates "loss" IF qos-hint-split-value for "local" is not present "desMaxLoss" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value>*0.5 ELSE /* qos-hint-split-value for "local" is present/ "desMaxLoss" = <qos-hint-split-value> ENDIF ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF ELSE /* <SDP direction> = UE terminated (NOTE 8)/ IF a=3gpp-qos-hint is present and includes a qos-hint-property that indicates "loss" IF qos-hint-split-value for "local" is not present "desMaxLoss" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value>*0.5 ELSE /* qos-hint-split-value for "local" is present/ "desMaxLoss" = <qos-hint-end-to-end-value> - <qos-hint-split- value> ENDIF ELSE Attribute not supplied ENDIF ENDIF </pre>

Service information per Media Component-Description (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 7)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
NOTE 1:	The encoding of the service information is defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
NOTE 2:	The SDP parameters are described in IETF RFC 4566 [16].
NOTE 3:	The "b=RS:" and "b=RR:" SDP bandwidth modifiers are defined in IETF RFC 3556 [36].
NOTE 4:	As an operator policy to disable forward and/or backward early media, for media with UDP as transport protocol only the "fStatus" attribute may be downgraded by using the gate control procedures defined in the annex B of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] before a SIP confirmed dialogue is established, i.e. until a 200 (OK) response to an INVITE request is received.
NOTE 5:	If the SDP answer is available when the session information is derived, the direction attributes and port number from the SDP answer shall be used to derive the flow status. However, to enable interoperability with SIP clients that do not understand the inactive SDP attribute, if "a=inactive" was supplied in the SDP offer, this shall be used to derive the flow status. If the SDP answer is not available when the session information is derived, the direction attributes from the SDP offer shall be used.
NOTE 6:	Information from the SDP answer is applicable, if available.
NOTE 7:	The attributes may be omitted if they have been supplied in previous service information and have not changed, as detailed in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
NOTE 8:	"Uplink SDP" indicates that the SDP was received from the UE and sent to the network. This is equivalent to <SDP direction> = UE originated. "Downlink SDP" indicates that the SDP was received from the network and sent to the UE. This is equivalent to <SDP direction> = UE terminated.
NOTE 9:	Support for TCP at a P-CSCF acting as AF is only required if services with TCP transport are used in the corresponding IMS system. As an operator policy to disable forward and/or backward early media, for media with TCP as transport protocol, the "marBwUI"/"marBwDI" attribute values may be downgraded before a SIP confirmed dialogue is established, i.e. until a 200 (OK) response to an INVITE request is received. Only a small bandwidth in both directions is required in this case in order for TCP control packets to flow.
NOTE 10:	TCP uses IP flows in the directionality opposite to the transferred media for feedback. To enable these flows, a small bandwidth in this direction is required.
NOTE 11:	TIAS is defined in IETF RFC 3890 [37]. IETF RFC 3890 clause 6.4 provides procedures for converting TIAS to transport-dependant values. This procedure relies on the presence of maxprate (also defined in IETF RFC 3890).
NOTE 12:	Multiplexed RTP/RTCP flows need to have "fStatus" attribute set to "ENABLED" in order to always permit the RTCP traffic.
NOTE 13:	RTP/RTCP multiplexing is defined in IETF RFC 5761 [38].
NOTE 14:	This attribute is derived from the SDP answer information and is omitted if E2EQOSMTSI feature is not supported.
NOTE 15:	When both "b =" line and "a=bw-info" including MaxSupBw are present when sending the SDP, it is expected that the values are aligned.
NOTE 16:	When the supplied bandwidth does not correspond to the bandwidth applicable to the IP version used by the UE, the AF shall re-compute it considering the IP version used by the UE as defined in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14].
NOTE 17:	When the AF recognizes the need to request prioritized access to system resources, the AF shall include the "resPrio" attribute as described in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. Various mechanisms used by the P-CSCF to determine if the request is eligible for priority treatment are specified in clause 4.11 of 3GPP TS 24.229 [41] (e.g. based on the Resource Priority header field as described in IETF RFC 4412 [42] or a special dialstring contained in the SIP message).

Table 7.2.3-2: Rules for derivation of Media SubComponent from SDP media component

Service information per Media SubComponent (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 5)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Flow Number	The AF shall assign a number to the media subcomponent that is unique within the surrounding media component entries included in a "medComponents" attribute and for the entire lifetime of the AF session. The AF shall select the ordinal number of the IP flow(s) within the "m=" line assigned in the order of increasing downlink destination port numbers, if downlink destination port numbers are available. For uplink or inactive unicast media IP flows, a downlink destination port number is nevertheless available, if SDP offer-answer according to IETF RFC 3264 [43] is used. The AF shall select the ordinal number of the IP flow(s) within the "m=" line assigned in the order of increasing uplink destination port numbers, if no downlink destination port numbers are available.
Flow Status	Attribute not supplied
Max Requested Bandwidth UL	Attribute not supplied
Max Requested Bandwidth DL	Attribute not supplied

Flow Description	<p>For uplink and downlink direction, a Flow Description entry within the "fDescs" attribute shall be provided unless no IP Flows in this direction are described within the media component.</p> <p>If UDP is used as transport protocol, the SDP direction attribute (NOTE 4) indicates the direction of the media IP flows within the media component as follows:</p> <pre> IF a=recvonly THEN (NOTE 3) IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 7) THEN Provide only downlink entry within the "fDescs" attribute ELSE /* UE terminated (NOTE 7) */ Provide only uplink entry within "fDescs" attribute ENDIF; ELSE IF a=sendonly THEN (NOTE 3) IF <SDP direction> = UE originated (NOTE 7) THEN Provide only uplink entry within the "fDescs" attribute ELSE /* UE terminated (NOTE 7) */ Provide only downlink entry within the "fDescs" attribute ENDIF; ELSE /* a=sendrecv or a=inactive or no direction attribute */ Provide uplink and downlink for "fDescs" attribute ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre> <p>However, for RTCP and RTP/RTCP multiplexed IP flows uplink and downlink Flow Description entries within "fDescs" attribute shall be provided irrespective of the SDP direction attribute.</p> <p>If TCP is used as transport protocol (NOTE 8), IP flows in uplink and downlink direction are described in SDP irrespective of the SDP direction attribute, as TCP uses an IP flow for feedback even if contents are transferred only in the opposite direction. Thus, both uplink and downlink Flow Description entries within "fDescs" attribute shall be provided.</p> <p>The uplink destination address shall be copied from the "c=" line of downlink SDP. (NOTE 6) (NOTE 7)</p> <p>The uplink destination port shall be derived from the "m=" line of downlink SDP. (NOTE 6) (NOTE 7) However, for TCP transport the uplink destination port shall be wildcarded, if the local UE is the passive endpoint (NOTE 9)</p> <p>The downlink destination address shall be copied from the "c=" line of uplink SDP. (NOTE 6) However, a P-CSCF acting as AF and applying NAT traversal procedures in Annex C shall derive the downlink destination address using those procedures.</p> <p>The downlink destination port shall be derived from the "m=" line of uplink SDP. (NOTE 6) (NOTE 7) However, for TCP transport the downlink destination port shall be wildcarded, if the local UE is the active endpoint (NOTE 9). A P-CSCF acting as AF and applying NAT traversal procedures in Annex C shall derive the downlink destination port using those procedures.</p> <p>For IPv6, uplink and downlink source addresses shall either be derived from the prefix of the destination address or be wildcarded by setting to "any", as specified in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10]. However, a P-CSCF acting as AF and applying NAT traversal procedures in Annex B shall derive the uplink source address using those procedures.</p> <p>If IPv4 is being utilized, the uplink source address shall either be set to the address contained in the "c=" line of the uplink SDP or be wildcarded, and the downlink source address shall either be set to the address contained in the "c=" line of the downlink SDP or be wildcarded. However, for TCP transport, if the local UE is the passive endpoint (NOTE 9), the uplink source address shall not be wildcarded. If the local UE is the active endpoint (NOTE 9), the downlink source address shall not be wildcarded. A P-CSCF acting as AF and applying NAT traversal procedures in Annex C shall derive the uplink source address using those procedures.</p> <p>Source ports shall not be supplied. However, for TCP transport, if the local UE is the passive end point (NOTE 9), the uplink source port shall be derived from the "m=" line of the uplink SDP. If the local UE is the active end point (NOTE 9), the downlink source port shall be derived from the "m=" line of the downlink SDP. A P-CSCF acting as AF and applying NAT traversal procedures in Annex B shall derive the downlink source ports using those procedures.</p> <p>Proto shall be derived from the transport of the "m=" line. For "UDP/DTLS/SCTP" as defined in IETF RFC 8864 [69] or "RTP/AVP", proto is 17(UDP). For "TCP", as defined in IETF RFC 4145 [39], or "TCP/MSRP", as defined in IETF RFC 4975 [40], proto is 6(TCP).</p>
-------------------------	--

Service information per Media SubComponent (see NOTE 1 and NOTE 5)	Derivation from SDP Parameters (see NOTE 2)
Flow Usage	The "flowUsage" attribute shall be supplied with value "RTCP" if the IP flow(s) described in the Media SubComponent are used to transport RTCP only. Otherwise the "flowUsage" attribute shall not be supplied. IETF RFC 4566 [16] specifies how RTCP flows are described within SDP. If the IP flows(s) are used to transport signalling the value should be "AF-SIGNALLING"
<p>NOTE 1: The encoding of the service information is defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].</p> <p>NOTE 2: The SDP parameters are described in IETF RFC 4566 [16].</p> <p>NOTE 3: If the SDP direction attribute for the media component negotiated in a previous offer-answer exchange was sendrecv, or if no direction attribute was provided, and the new SDP direction attribute sendonly or recvonly is negotiated in a subsequent SDP offer-answer exchange, uplink and downlink within the "fDescs" attribute shall be supplied.</p> <p>NOTE 4: If the SDP answer is available when the session information is derived, the direction attributes from the SDP answer shall be used to derive the flow description. However, to enable interoperability with SIP clients that do not understand the inactive SDP attribute, if "a=inactive" was supplied in the SDP offer, this shall be used. If the SDP answer is not available when the session information is derived, the direction attributes from the SDP offer shall be used.</p> <p>NOTE 5: The attributes may be omitted if they have been supplied in previous service information and have not changed, as detailed in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].</p> <p>NOTE 6: If the session information is derived from an SDP offer, the required SDP may not yet be available. The corresponding "fDescs" attribute shall nevertheless be included and the unavailable fields (possibly all) shall be wildcarded.</p> <p>NOTE 7: "Uplink SDP" indicates that the SDP was received from the UE and sent to the network. This is equivalent to <SDP direction> = UE originated. "Downlink SDP" indicates that the SDP was received from the network and sent to the UE. This is equivalent to <SDP direction> = UE terminated.</p> <p>NOTE 8: Support for TCP at a P-CSCF acting as AF is only required if services with TCP transport are used in the corresponding IMS system.</p> <p>NOTE 9: For TCP transport, the passive endpoints are derived from the SDP "a=setup" attribute according to the rules in IETF RFC 4145 [39], or, if that attribute is not present, from the rules in IETF RFC 4975 [40].</p>	

7.3 QoS parameter mapping Functions at PCF

7.3.1 Introduction

The QoS authorization process consists of the derivation of the parameters Authorized 5G QoS Identifier (5QI), Authorized Allocation and Retention Priority (ARP) and Authorized Maximum/Guaranteed Data Rate UL/DL. And such process also includes the derivation of the QoS Notification Control (QNC), Reflective QoS Indication (RQI), Priority Level (PL), Averaging Window (AW) and Maximum Data Burst Volume (MDBV).

When a session is initiated or modified, the PCF shall derive Authorized QoS parameters from the service information received from an AF supporting Rx interface or from an AF supporting N5 interface.

When the "GMEC" feature is supported:

- the AF provides the requested QoS for a UE or group of UE(s) not identified by their UE address(es) and the related service information which may be stored in UDR as specified in 3GPP TS 29.519 [12]; and
- if it is the case, the PCF shall obtain from the UDR these parameters of the AF-requested QoS for a UE or group of UE(s) not identified by their UE address(es) and the related service information and derive the Authorized QoS parameters based on it.

7.3.2 PCF Interworking with an AF supporting Rx interface

When the AF interworks with the PCF using the Rx interface, the session binding in the PCF shall be always associated to an IP session and the PCF shall derive IP QoS parameters for the related IP flows.

In the case of SIP forking, the various forked responses may have different QoS requirements for the IP flows of the same media component. Each Authorized IP QoS Parameter should be set to the highest value requested for the IP flow(s) of that media component by any of the active forked responses.

Table 7.3.2-1: Rules for derivation of the Maximum Authorized Data Rates, Authorized Guaranteed Data Rates and Maximum Authorized QoS Class per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows in the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (see NOTE 4)
--------------------------	--

**Maximum Authorized
Data Rate DL
(Max_DR_DL) and UL
(Max_DR_UL)**

```

IF operator special policy exists THEN
  Max_DR_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm;
  Max_DR_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm;

ELSE

  IF AF Application Identifier demands application specific data rate
  handling THEN
    Max_DR_UL:= as defined by application specific algorithm;
    Max_DR_DL:= as defined by application specific algorithm;

  ELSE IF Codec Data provides Codec information for a codec that is
  supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 5, 12 and 13) THEN
    Max_DR_UL:= as defined by specific algorithm;
    Max_DR_DL:= as defined by specific algorithm;

  ELSE

    IF not RTCP flow(s) according to Flow Usage THEN
      IF Flow Status indicates "REMOVED" THEN
        Max_DR_UL:= 0;
        Max_DR_DL:= 0;
      ELSE
        IF Uplink Flow Description is supplied THEN
          IF Maximum UL Supported Bandwidth is present and supported THEN
            Max_DR_UL:= Maximum UL Supported Bandwidth;
          ELSE IF Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN
            Max_DR_UL:= Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth;
          ELSE
            Max_DR_UL:= as set by the operator;
          ENDIF;
        ELSE
          Max_DR_UL:= 0;
        ENDIF;

        IF Downlink Flow Description is supplied THEN
          IF Maximum DL Supported Bandwidth is present and supported THEN
            Max_DR_DL:= Maximum DL Supported Bandwidth;
          ELSE IF Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN
            Max_DR_DL:= Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth;
          ELSE
            Max_DR_DL:= as set by the operator;
          ENDIF;
        ELSE
          Max_DR_DL:= 0;
        ENDIF;
      ENDIF;

    ELSE /* RTCP IP flow(s) */
      IF RS Bandwidth is present and RR Bandwidth is present THEN
        Max_DR_UL:= (RS Bandwidth + RR Bandwidth);
        Max_DR_DL:= (RS Bandwidth + RR Bandwidth);
      ELSE
        IF Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN
          IF RS Bandwidth is present and RR Bandwidth is not present THEN
            Max_DR_UL:= MAX[0.05 * Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth, RS Bandwidth];
          ENDIF;

          IF RS Bandwidth is not present and RR Bandwidth is present THEN
            Max_DR_UL:= MAX[0.05 * Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth, RR Bandwidth];
          ENDIF;
          IF RS Bandwidth and RR Bandwidth are not present THEN
            Max_DR_UL:= 0.05 * Maximum UL Requested Bandwidth;
          ENDIF;
        ELSE
          Max_DR_UL:= as set by the operator;
        ENDIF;

        IF Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN
          IF RS Bandwidth is present and RR Bandwidth is not present THEN
            Max_DR_DL:= MAX[0.05 * Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth, RS Bandwidth];
          ENDIF;

          IF RS Bandwidth is not present and RR Bandwidth is present THEN
            Max_DR_DL:= MAX[0.05 * Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth, RR Bandwidth];
          ENDIF;
        ENDIF;
      ENDIF;
    ENDIF;
  ENDIF;

```

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (see NOTE 4)
	<pre>IF RS Bandwidth and RR Bandwidth are not present THEN Max_DR_DL:= 0.05 * Maximum DL Requested Bandwidth; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_DL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; IF SIP Forking Indication indicates "SEVERAL DIALOGUES" THEN Max_DR_UL = MAX[Max_DR_UL, previous Max_DR_UL] Max_DR_DL = MAX[Max_DR_DL, previous Max_DR_DL] ENDIF;</pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (see NOTE 4)
Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL (Gua_DR_DL) and UL (Gua_DR_UL) (see NOTE 6, 8, 9 and 10)	<pre> IF operator special policy exists THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF AF Application Identifier demands application specific data rate handling THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF Codec Data provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 5, 12 and 13) THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE IF Uplink Flow Description is supplied THEN IF Minimum UL Desired Bandwidth is present and supported THEN Gua_DR_UL:= Minimum UL Desired Bandwidth; ELSE IF Minimum UL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN Gua_DR_UL:= Minimum UL Requested Bandwidth; ELSE Gua_DR_UL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE Gua_DR_UL:= Max_DR_UL; ENDIF; IF Downlink Flow Description is supplied THEN IF Minimum DL Desired Bandwidth is present and supported THEN Gua_DR_DL:= Minimum DL Desired Bandwidth; ELSE IF Minimum DL Requested Bandwidth is present THEN Gua_DR_DL:= Minimum DL Requested Bandwidth; ELSE Gua_DR_DL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE Gua_DR_DL:= Max_DR_DL; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; IF SIP Forking Indication indicates "SEVERAL DIALOGUES" THEN Gua_DR_UL = MAX[Gua_DR_UL, previous Gua_DR_UL] Gua_DR_DL = MAX[Gua_DR_DL, previous Gua_DR_DL] ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (see NOTE 4)
Authorized 5G QoS Identifier (5QI) (see NOTE 1, 2, 3, 7,14, 15, 17 and 19)	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN 5QI:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 18) ELSE IF MPS Identifier demands MPS specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by MPS specific algorithm (NOTE 11); ELSE IF AF Application Identifier demands application specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF FLUS-Identifier AVP demands specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by specific algorithm; (NOTE 16) ELSE IF Codec Data provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm THEN 5QI:= as defined by specific algorithm; (NOTE 5) ELSE /* The following 5QI derivation is an example of how to obtain the 5QI values in a 5GS network */ IF Media Type is present THEN CASE Media Type OF "audio": 5QI := 1; "video": 5QI := 2; "application": 5QI := 1 OR 2; /* NOTE: include new media types here */ OTHERWISE: 5QI := 9; /*e.g. for TCP-based generic traffic */ END; ENDIF; ENDIF; IF SIP Forking Indication indicates "SEVERAL DIALOGUES" THEN 5QI = MAX[5QI, previous 5QI] ENDIF ; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (see NOTE 4)
NOTE 1:	The 5QI assigned to a RTCP IP flow is the same as for the corresponding RTP media IP flow.
NOTE 2:	When audio or video IP flow(s) are removed from a session, the 5QI shall keep the originally assigned value.
NOTE 3:	When audio or video IP flow(s) are added to a session, the PCF shall derive the 5QI taking into account the already existing media IP flow(s) within the session.
NOTE 4:	The encoding of the service information is defined in 3GPP TS 29.214 [18] and 3GPP TS 29.201 [15]. If AVPs are omitted within a Media Component Description or Media Subcomponent of the service information, the corresponding information from previous service information shall be used, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.214 [18] and 3GPP TS 29.201 [15].
NOTE 5:	3GPP TS 26.234 [19], 3GPP TS 26.114 [14], 3GPP2 C.S0046 [20], and 3GPP2 C.S0055 [21] contain examples of QoS parameters for codecs of interest. The support of any codec specific algorithm in the PCF is optional.
NOTE 6:	Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL and UL shall not be derived for non-GBR 5QI values.
NOTE 7:	Recommended 5QI values for standardised 5QI characteristics are shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 8:	The PCF may be configured with operator specific preconditions for setting the Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate lower than the corresponding Maximum Authorized Data Rate.
NOTE 9:	For certain services (e.g. DASH services according to 3GPP TS 26.247 [17]), the AF may also provide a minimum required bandwidth so that the PCF can derive an Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate lower than the Maximum Authorized Data Rate.
NOTE 10:	For 5GS, the PCF shall assign an Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate UL/DL value within the limit supported by the serving network.
NOTE 11:	The MPS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received MPS Identifier and Reservation Priority, for deriving the 5QI.
NOTE 12:	When multiple codecs are supported per media stream (e.g. as part of multi-stream multiparty conferencing media handling are negotiated as described in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14]) the codec specific algorithm shall consider the bandwidth related to each codec when calculating the total bandwidth.
NOTE 13:	3GPP TS 26.114 [14] contains examples of how the Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate and Maximum Authorized Data Rate are assumed to be derived for multi-party multimedia conference media handling support. The support of this behaviour is optional.
NOTE 14:	The PCF may authorize a non-standardized 5QI with explicitly signalled QoS characteristics as defined in clause 4.2.6.6.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] or may assign QoS characteristics (e.g. Priority Level, Averaging Window, and Maximum Data Burst Volume) to be used instead of the default QoS characteristics associated with a standardised 5QI value as shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 15:	In a network where SRVCC is enabled, the 5QI=1 shall be used for IMS services in accordance to 3GPP TS 23.216 [44]. Non-IMS services using 5QI=1 may suffer service interruption and/or inconsistent service experience if SRVCC is triggered. Triggering SRVCC for WebRTC IMS session will cause service interruption and/or inconsistent service experience when using 5QI=1. Operator policy (e.g. use of specific AF application identifier) may be used to avoid using 5QI 1 for a voice service, e.g. WebRTC IMS session.
NOTE 16:	The "live" uplink streaming algorithm may consider various inputs, including the received FLUS-Identifier AVP, Desired-Max-Latency AVP, Desired-Max-Loss AVP, AF-Application-Identifier and Media-Type AVP for deriving the 5QI. When Desired-Max-Latency AVP and/or Desired-Max-Loss AVP are present, non-authority 5QI mapping may be done according to table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 17:	The algorithm to support applications with specific QoS hints (e.g. loss and/or latency demands) may consider various inputs, including the received Desired-Max-Latency AVP, Desired-Max-Loss AVP and AF-Application-Identifier AVP for deriving the 5QI, as shown in table E.0 in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14]. Non-authority 5QI mapping may be done according to table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 18:	Operator specific policies may consider access information for policy decision. E.g., in a network where the PDU session can be carried over NR satellite access or satellite backhaul, the PCF may take this information into account (together with any delay requirements provided by the AF) to determine the applicable policy decision, as e.g. the 5QI value.
NOTE 19:	3GPP TS 26.114 [14] contains examples on how 5QI may be derived for data channel media type

The PCF should per ongoing session store the Authorized QoS parameters for each service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as described within a Media Subcomponent).

If the PCF provides a QoS information associated to a PCC rule it may apply the rules in table 7.3.2-2 to combine the Authorized QoS per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as derived according to table 7.3.2-1) for all service data flows described by the corresponding PCC rule.

If the PCF provides a QoS information associated to a PDU session (i.e. QoS flow with default QoS rule), it may apply the rules in table 7.3.2-2 to combine the Authorized QoS per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as derived according to table 7.3.2-1) for all service data flows allowed to be transported within the PDU session. It is recommended that the rules in table 7.3.2-2 are applied for all service data flows with corresponding AF

session. The PCF may increase the authorized QoS further to take into account the requirements of predefined PCC rules without ongoing AF sessions.

NOTE 1: For home-routed scenarios, if the "VPLMN-QoS-Control" feature as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, if the PCF applies the rules in table 7.3.2-2 to calculate the authorized QoS to be transported within the PDU session, the PCF can adapt the authorized QoS associated to the PDU session to take into account the values that can be accepted by the VPLMN.

NOTE 2: QoS Information related to Maximum Authorized UL/DL Data Rate provided at PDU session level is not derived based on mapping tables in this clause, but based on subscription and operator specific policies.

NOTE 3: ARP is always calculated at PCC rule level according to table 7.3.2-2.

Table 7.3.2-2: Rules for calculating the Maximum Authorized/Guaranteed Data Rates, 5QI and ARP in the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Calculation Rule
Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL and UL	Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL is the sum of all Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows (as according to table 7.3.2-1).
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL and UL (NOTE 3)	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL is the sum of all Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows (as according to table 7.3.2-1).
5QI	5QI = MAX [needed QoS parameters per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as operator's defined criteria) among all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows.]
ARP (NOTE 1)	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN ARP:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF MPS Identifier demands MPS specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by MPS specific algorithm (NOTE 2); ELSE IF AF Application Identifier demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF Reservation Priority demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ENDIF; </pre>
NOTE 1: The ARP priority levels 1-8 should only be assigned to resources for services that are authorized to receive prioritized treatment within an operator domain.	
NOTE 2: The MPS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received MPS Identifier and Reservation Priority, for deriving the ARP.	
NOTE 3: The PCF may check that the Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL does not exceed the limit supported by the serving network to minimize the risk of rejection of the bearer by the serving network.	

7.3.3 PCF Interworking with an AF supporting N5 interface

When the AF interworks with the PCF using the N5 interface, the session binding in the PCF shall be associated to an IP session or an Ethernet session, and the PCF shall derive QoS parameters for the related data flows.

Table 7.3.3-1: Rules for derivation of the Maximum Authorized Data Rates, Authorized Guaranteed Data Rates, Maximum Authorized QoS Class and other authorized QoS parameters per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows in the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
-----------------------------	---

<p>Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL (Max_DR_DL) and UL (Max_DR_UL)</p>	<pre> IF operator special policy exists THEN Max_DR_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; Max_DR_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 8, 9 and 10) ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MediaComponent data type demands application specific data rate handling THEN Max_DR_UL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; Max_DR_DL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF codecs attribute of MediaComponent data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 5) THEN Max_DR_UL:= as defined by specific algorithm; Max_DR_DL:= as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information set THEN Max_DR_UL:= as configured by operator; Max_DR_DL:= as configured by operator; ELSE IF not RTCP flow(s) according to flowUsage attribute of MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF fStatus attribute indicates "REMOVED" THEN Max_DR_UL:= 0; Max_DR_DL:= 0; ELSE IF Uplink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF marBwUl attribute is present THEN Max_DR_UL:= marBwUl value; ELSE Max_DR_UL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_UL:= 0; ENDIF; IF Downlink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs Attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF marBwDl attribute is present THEN Max_DR_DL:= marBwDl value; ELSE Max_DR_DL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_DL:= 0; ENDIF; ENDIF; ELSE /* RTCP IP flow(s) */ IF fStatus attribute indicates "REMOVED" THEN Max_DR_UL:= 0; Max_DR_DL:= 0; ELSE IF Uplink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF marBwUl attribute is present within the MediaSubComponent data type THEN Max_DR_UL:= marBwUl; ELSE IF rsBw is present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_UL:=(rsBw + rrBw); ELSE IF marBwUl attribute is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN IF rsBw is present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_UL:= MAX[0.05 * marBwUl, rsBw]; ENDIF; IF rsBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_UL:= MAX[0.05 * marBwUl, rrBw]; ENDIF; IF rsBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_UL:= 0.05 * marBwUl; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>
--	---

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
	<pre> ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_UL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_UL:= 0; ENDIF; IF Downlink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF marBwDl attribute is present within the MediaSubComponent data type THEN Max_DR_DL:= marBwDl; ELSE IF rsBw is present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_DL:=(rsBw + rrBw); ELSE IF marBwDl attribute is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN IF rsBw is present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_DL:= MAX[0.05 * marBwDl, rsBw]; ENDIF; IF rsBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_DL:= MAX[0.05 * marBwDl, rrBw]; ENDIF; IF rsBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type and rrBw is not present within the MediaComponent data type THEN Max_DR_DL:= 0.05 * marBwDl; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_DL:= as set by the operator; ENDIF; ENDIF; ELSE Max_DR_DL:= 0; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL (Gua_DR_DL) and UL (Gua_DR_UL)	<pre> IF operator special policy exists THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MediaComponent data type demands application specific data rate handling THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF codecs attribute of MediaComponent data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 5) THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as defined by specific algorithm; Gua_DR_DL:= as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information set THEN Gua_DR_UL:= as configured by operator Gua_DR_DL:= as configured by operator; ELSE IF the altSerReqs attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of pre-defined QoS information set THEN for each pre-defined QoS information set: Gua_DR_UL:= as configured by operator; Gua_DR_DL:= as configured by operator; (NOTE 16) ELSE IF the altSerReqsData attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of alternative service requirements that include Requested Alternative QoS parameter Set(s) THEN for each QoS information set: Gua_DR_UL:= gbrUl value; Gua_DR_DL:= gbrDl value (NOTE 16); ELSE IF fStatus attribute indicates "REMOVED" THEN Gua_DR_UL:= 0; Gua_DR_DL:= 0; ELSE IF Uplink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF mirBwUl attribute is present THEN Gua_DR_UL:= mirBwUl value; ELSE IF corresponding operator policy exists Gua_DR_UL:= as set by the operator; ELSE Gua_DR_UL:= Max_DR_UL; ENDIF; ELSE Gua_DR_UL:= 0; ENDIF; IF Downlink Flow Description is supplied within the fDescs attribute of the MediaSubComponent data type THEN IF mirBwDl attribute is present THEN Gua_DR_DL:= mirBwDl value; ELSE IF corresponding operator policy exists Gua_DR_DL:= as set by the operator; ELSE Gua_DR_DL:= Max_DR_DL; ENDIF; ELSE Gua_DR_DL:= 0; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
Authorized 5G QoS Identifier (5QI) (see NOTE 1, 2, 3, 7, 12, 14, 17 and 19)	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN 5QI:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 18) ELSE IF mpsId attribute demands MPS specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by MPS specific algorithm (NOTE 11); ELSE IF mcsId attribute demands MCS specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by MCS specific algorithm (NOTE 13); ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MediaComponent data type demands application specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF flusId attribute demands specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by specific algorithm; (NOTE 15) ELSE IF codecs attribute of MediaComponent data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm THEN 5QI:= as defined by specific algorithm; (NOTE 5) ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information set THEN 5QI:= as configured by operator; ELSE /* The following 5QI derivation is an example of how to obtain the 5QI values in a 5GS network */ IF the medType attribute of MediaComponent data type is present THEN CASE medType value OF "audio": 5QI := 1; "video": 5QI := 2; "application": 5QI := 1 OR 2; OTHERWISE: 5QI := 9; /*e.g. for TCP-based generic traffic */ ENDIF; ENDIF; ENDIF; </pre>
Authorized Packet Delay Budget (PDB) for Alternative QoS parameter Sets	<pre> IF the altSerReqs attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of pre-defined QoS information set THEN for each pre-defined QoS information set: PDB:= as configured by operator; (NOTE 16) ELSE IF the altSerReqsData attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of alternative service requirements that include Requested Alternative QoS parameter Set(s) THEN for each QoS information set: PDB:= pdb value; ENDIF; </pre>
Authorized Packet Error Rate (PER) for Alternative QoS parameter Sets	<pre> IF the altSerReqs attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of pre-defined QoS information set THEN for each pre-defined QoS information set: PER:= as configured by operator; (NOTE 16) ELSE IF the altSerReqsData attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a list of alternative service requirements that include Requested Alternative QoS parameter Set(s) THEN for each QoS information set: PER:= per value; ENDIF; </pre>
Authorized PDU Set Delay Budget DL and UL	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN PSDB_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; PSDB_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information for the PDU set THEN PSDB_UL:= as configured by operator; PSDB_DL:= as configured by operator; ELSE IF pduSetQoSUl attribute demands PDUSet Delay Budget handling THEN PSDB_UL:= pduSetDelayBudget value; ELSE IF pduSetQoSDl attribute demands PDUSet Delay Budget handling THEN PSDB_DL:= pduSetDelayBudget value; ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
Authorized PDU Set Error Rate DL and UL	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN PSER_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; PSER_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information for the PDU set THEN PSER_UL:= as configured by operator; PSER_DL:= as configured by operator; ELSE IF pduSetQoSUl attribute demands PDUSet Error Rate handling THEN PSER_UL:= pduSetErrRate value; ELSE IF pduSetQoS Dl attribute demands PDUSet Error Rate handling THEN PSER_DL:= pduSetErrRate value; ENDIF; </pre>
Authorized PDU Set Integrated Handling Information	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN PSIHI_UL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; PSIHI_DL:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information for the PDU set THEN PSIHI_UL:= as configured by operator; PSIHI_DL:= as configured by operator; ELSE IF pduSetQoSUl attribute demands PDUSet Integrated Handling Information handling THEN PSIHI_UL:= pduSetHandlingInfo value; ELSE IF pduSetQoS Dl attribute demands PDUSet Integrated Handling Information handling THEN PSIHI_DL:= pduSetHandlingInfo value; ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 4)
NOTE 1:	The 5QI assigned to a RTCP IP flow is the same as for the corresponding RTP media IP flow.
NOTE 2:	When audio or video IP flow(s) are removed from a session, the 5QI shall keep the originally assigned value.
NOTE 3:	When audio or video IP flow(s) are added to a session, the PCF shall derive the 5QI taking into account the already existing media IP flow(s) within the session.
NOTE 4:	The encoding of the service information is defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].
NOTE 5:	3GPP TS 26.234 [19], 3GPP TS 26.114 [14], 3GPP2 C.S0046 [20], and 3GPP2 C.S0055 [21] contain examples of QoS parameters for codecs of interest. The support of any codec specific algorithm in the PCF is optional.
NOTE 6:	Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL and UL shall not be derived for non-GBR 5QI values.
NOTE 7:	Recommended 5QI values for standardised 5QI characteristics are shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 8:	The PCF may be configured with operator specific preconditions for setting the Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate lower than the corresponding Maximum Authorized Data Rate.
NOTE 9:	For certain services (e.g. DASH services according to 3GPP TS 26.247 [17]), the AF may also provide a minimum required bandwidth so that the PCF can derive an Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate lower than the Maximum Authorized Data Rate.
NOTE 10:	The PCF shall assign an Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate UL/DL value within the limit supported by the serving network.
NOTE 11:	The MPS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received mpsId and resPrio attributes, for deriving the 5QI.
NOTE 12:	The PCF may authorize a non-standardized 5QI with explicitly signalled QoS characteristics as defined in clause 4.2.6.6.3 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] or may assign QoS characteristics (e.g. Priority Level, Averaging Window, and Maximum Data Burst Volume) to be used instead of the default QoS characteristics associated with a standardised 5QI value as shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 13:	The MCS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received mcsId and resPrio attributes, for deriving the 5QI.
NOTE 14:	In a network where SRVCC is enabled, the 5QI=1 shall be used for IMS services in accordance to 3GPP TS 23.216 [44]. Non-IMS services using 5QI=1 may suffer service interruption and/or inconsistent service experience if SRVCC is triggered. Triggering SRVCC for WebRTC IMS session will cause service interruption and/or inconsistent service experience when using 5QI=1. Operator policy (e.g. use of specific AF application identifier) may be used to avoid using 5QI 1 for a voice service, e.g. WebRTC IMS session.
NOTE 15:	The "live" uplink streaming algorithm may consider various inputs, including the received flusId attribute, desMaxLatency attribute, desMaxLoss attribute, afApplId attribute and medType attribute for deriving the 5QI. When desMaxLatency attribute and/or desMaxLoss attribute are present, non-authority 5QI mapping may be done according to table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 16:	The PCF may authorize one or more alternative parameter set(s) if the alternative QoS reference(s) or Requested Alternative QoS parameter Set(s) is received.
NOTE 17:	The algorithm to support applications with specific QoS hints (e.g. loss and/or latency demands) may consider various inputs, including the received desMaxLatency attribute, desMaxLoss attribute and afApplId attribute for deriving the 5QI, as shown in table E.0 in 3GPP TS 26.114 [14]. Non-authority 5QI mapping may be done according to table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2].
NOTE 18:	Operator specific policies may consider access information for policy decision. E.g., in a network where the PDU session can be carried over NR satellite access or satellite backhaul, the PCF may take this information into account (together with any delay requirements provided by the AF) to determine the applicable policy decision, as e.g. the 5QI value.
NOTE 19:	3GPP TS 26.114 [14] contains examples on how 5QI may be derived for data channel media type

The PCF should per ongoing session store the Authorized QoS parameters for each service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as described within a medComponents attribute).

If the PCF provides a QoS information associated to a PCC rule it may apply the rules in table 7.3.3-2 to combine the Authorized QoS per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as derived according to table 7.3.3-1) for all service data flows described by the corresponding PCC rule.

If the PCF provides a QoS information associated to a PDU session (i.e. QoS flow with default QoS rule), it may apply the rules in table 7.3.3-2 to combine the Authorized QoS per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as derived according to table 7.3.3-1) for all service data flows allowed to be transported within the PDU session. It is recommended that the rules in table 7.3.3-2 are applied for all service data flows with corresponding AF session. The PCF may increase the authorized QoS further to take into account the requirements of predefined PCC rules without ongoing AF sessions.

NOTE 1: For home-routed scenarios, if the "VPLMN-QoS-Control" feature as defined in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9] is supported, if the PCF applies the rules in table 7.3.2-2 to calculate the authorized QoS to be transported within the PDU session, the PCF can adapt the authorized QoS associated to the PDU session to take into account the values that can be accepted by the VPLMN.

NOTE 2: QoS Information related to Maximum Authorized UL/DL Data Rate provided at PDU session level is not derived based on mapping tables in this clause, but based on subscription and operator specific policies.

NOTE 3: ARP is always calculated at PCC rule level according to table 7.3.3-2.

Table 7.3.3-2: Rules for calculating the Maximum Authorized/Guaranteed Data Rates, 5QI and ARP in the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Calculation Rule
Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL and UL	Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL is the sum of all Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows (as according to table 7.3.3-1).
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL and UL	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL is the sum of all Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows (as according to table 7.3.3-1). (NOTE 3)
5QI	5QI = MAX [needed QoS parameters per service data flow or bidirectional combination of service data flows (as operator's defined criteria) among all the service data flows or bidirectional combinations of service data flows.]
ARP	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN ARP:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF mpsId attribute demands MPS specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by MPS specific algorithm (NOTE 2); ELSE IF mcsId attribute demands MCS specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by MCS specific algorithm (NOTE 4); ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MediaComponent data type demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF resPrio attribute of MediaComponent data type demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF the qosReference attribute of MediaComponent data type corresponds to a pre-defined QoS information set THEN ARP:= as configured by operator ENDIF; (NOTE 1) </pre>
NOTE 1: The ARP priority levels 1-8 should only be assigned to resources for services that are authorized to receive prioritized treatment within an operator domain.	
NOTE 2: The MPS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received mpsId and resPrio attributes, for deriving the ARP.	
NOTE 3: The PCF may check that the Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL does not exceed the limit supported by the serving network to minimize the risk of rejection of the bearer by the serving network.	
NOTE 4: The MCS specific algorithm shall consider various inputs, including the received mcsId and resPrio attributes, for deriving the ARP.	

7.4 QoS parameter mapping Functions at SMF

7.4.1 QoS parameter mapping Functions in 5GC

Table 7.4.1.1: Rules for derivation of the Authorized QoS Parameters per QoS flow from the Authorized QoS Parameters in SMF

Authorized QoS Parameter per QoS flow (NOTE)	Derivation from Authorized QoS Parameters
Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL and UL per QoS flow	Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL/UL per QoS flow = Sum of Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all PCC rules bound to that QoS flow. For PCC rules which are bound to the same QoS flow and have the same sharing key value, the highest MBR value among those PCC rules may be used as input for calculating the common MBR value based on internal logic as defined in clause 4.2.6.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL and UL per QoS flow	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL per QoS flow = Sum of Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all PCC rules bound to that QoS flow. For PCC rules which are bound to the same QoS flow and have the same sharing key value, the highest GBR value among those PCC rules shall be used as input for calculating the common GBR value as defined in clause 4.2.6.2.8 of 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
Session-AMBR DL and UL	For all non-GBR QoS flows, Session-AMBR DL/UL is applied.
5QI	5QI from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used.
ARP	ARP from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used.
QNC	QNC from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used.
Priority Level (PL)	PL from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used.
Averaging Window (AW)	AW from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used. Applicable for GBR or delay critical GBR QoS flow.
Maximum Data Burst Volume (MDBV)	MDBV from PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/QNC/PL/AW/MBDV is used. Applicable for delay critical GBR QoS flow.
RQI	RQI from PCC rules is used per service data flow. Applicable for non-GBR QoS flows.
Maximum Packet Loss Rate DL and UL per QoS flow	Maximum packet loss rate DL/UL among all PCC rules bound to that QoS flow. Applicable for GBR QoS flows.
Alternative QoS Profiles	Alternative QoS profiles per QoS flow = Alternative QoS Parameter Sets of the PCC rule. The PCC rule is bound to a new QoS flow and no other PCC rule is bound to the QoS flow. Applicable for GBR QoS flows.
PDU Set QoS parameter(s)	The UL and/or DL PDU Set QoS parameter(s) per QoS flow = PDU Set QoS parameter(s) of the PCC rule. The PCC rule is bound to a new QoS flow and no other PCC rule bound to the QoS flow. Applicable for GBR and non-GBR QoS flows.
NOTE:	For unstructured PDU session type, only default 5QI and ARP of the QoS Flow associated with the default QoS rule, and Session-AMBR are applicable.

7.4.2 QoS parameter mapping Functions at SMF+PGW-C for interworking scenario

Table 7.4.2.1: Rules for derivation of the Authorized QoS Parameters per EPS bearer from the Authorized QoS Parameters in SMF+PGW-C

Authorized QoS Parameter per EPS bearer	Derivation from Authorized QoS Parameters (NOTE 2)
Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL and UL per EPS bearer	Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL/UL per EPS bearer = Sum of Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all PCC rules bound to that EPS bearer as described in clause 4.5.5.3 of 3GPP TS 29.212 [53]. For PCC rules which are bound to the same EPS bearer and have the same sharing key value, the highest MBR value among those PCC rules may be used as input for calculating the common MBR value based on internal logic as defined in clause 4.5.5.11 of 3GPP TS 29.212 [53].
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL and UL per QoS flow	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL per EPS bearer = Sum of Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL/UL for all PCC rules bound to that EPS bearer as described in clause 4.5.5.3 of 3GPP TS 29.212 [53]. For PCC rules which are bound to the same EPS bearer and have the same sharing key value, the highest GBR value among those PCC rules shall be used as input for calculating the common GBR value as defined in clause 4.5.5.11 of 3GPP TS 29.212 [53].
APN-AMBR DL and UL	Set according to the operator policy.
QCI (NOTE 1)	For standardized 5QIs, the authorized QCI is one to one mapped from the 5QI; For non-standardized 5QIs, the authorized QCI is derived based on the authorized 5QI and operator policy; For the subscribed default 5QI, one to one map the subscribed default QCI to the subscribed default 5QI.
ARP	One to one mapping to the value derived as described in table 7.4.1.1.
Maximum Packet Loss Rate DL and UL per EPS bearer	One to one mapping to the value derived as described in table 7.4.1.1.
NOTE 1	The delay critical 5QI mapping to QCI is upspecified in the present specification.
NOTE 2	Other Authorized QoS parameters that do not have a corresponding mapping in EPS remain unchanged in the SMF+PGW-C for possible future access of the UE to 5GC.

7.5 QoS Parameters Mapping in MBS deployments

7.5.1 Introduction

MBS QoS parameters mapping functions are located at the PCF and MB-SMF.

7.5.2 QoS parameter mapping Functions at PCF

The QoS authorization process consists of the derivation of the Authorized 5G QoS Identifier (5QI), Authorized Allocation and Retention Priority (ARP) and Authorized Maximum/Guaranteed Data Rate DL parameters. Such process also includes the derivation of the Priority Level (PL), Averaging Window (AW) and Maximum Data Burst Volume (MDBV).

The PCF shall derive the Authorized QoS parameters from the MBS service information received:

- from an AF/NEF/MBSF that interacts with the PCF via the Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization service; or
- from an MB-SMF that interacts with the PCF via the Npcf_MBSPolicyControl service.

Table 7.5.2-1: Rules for derivation of the Maximum Authorized Data Rates, Authorized Guaranteed Data Rates, Maximum Authorized QoS Class and other authorized QoS parameters per MBS service data flow at the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 3)
Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL (Max_DR_DL)	<pre> IF operator special policy exists THEN; - Max_DR_DL := as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 7 and 10) ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MbsServiceInfo data type demands application specific data rate handling THEN - Max_DR_DL := as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF mbsMediaInfo attribute is received IF codecs attribute of MbsMediaInfo data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 4) THEN Max_DR_DL := as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE IF maxReqMbsBwDl attribute is present THEN Max_DR_DL := maxReqMbsBwDl value; ELSE Max_DR_DL := as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE IF mbsQosReq attribute is received IF maxBitRate attribute is present THEN Max_DR_DL := maxBitRate value; ELSE Max_DR_DL := as set by the operator; ENDIF; ELSE IF the qosRef attribute is present THEN Max_DR_DL := as configured by operator; ENDIF; </pre>
Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL (Gua_DR_DL)	<pre> IF operator special policy exists THEN; - Gua_DR_DL := as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 7 and 8) ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MbsServiceInfo data type demands application specific data rate handling THEN - Gua_DR_DL := as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF mbsMediaInfo attribute is received IF codecs attribute of MbsMediaInfo data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 4) THEN Gua_DR_DL := as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE IF minReqMbsBwDl attribute is present THEN Gua_DR_DL := minReqMbsBwDl value; ELSE IF correspnding operator policy exists Gua_DR_DL := as set by the operator; ELSE IF service corresponds to a GBR 5QI THEN Gua_DR_DL := Max_DR_DL; ELSE Gua_DR_DL := 0; (NOTE 5) ENDIF; ELSE IF mbsQosReq attribute is received IF guarBitRate attribute is present THEN Gua_DR_DL := guarBitRate value; ELSE IF correspnding operator policy exists Gua_DR_DL := as set by the operator; ELSE IF service corresponds to a GBR 5QI THEN Gua_DR_DL := Max_DR_DL; ELSE Gua_DR_DL := 0; (NOTE 5) ENDIF; ELSE IF the qosRef attribute is present THEN Gua_DR_DL := as configured by operator; ENDIF; </pre>

Authorized QoS Parameter	Derivation from service information (NOTE 3)
Authorized 5G QoS Identifier (5QI) (see NOTE 1, 2, 6 and 9)	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN 5QI:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; (NOTE 10) ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MbsServiceInfo data type demands application specific QoS Class handling THEN 5QI:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF mbsMediaInfo attribute is received IF codecs attribute of MbsMediaInfo data type provides Codec information for a codec that is supported by a specific algorithm (NOTE 4) THEN 5QI:= as defined by specific algorithm; ELSE /* The following 5QI derivation is an example of how to obtain the 5QI values in a 5GS network */ IF the mbsMedType attribute is present THEN CASE mbsMedType value OF "audio": 5QI := 1; "video": 5QI := 2; "application": 5QI := 1 OR 2; OTHERWISE: 5QI := 9; /*e.g. for TCP-based generic traffic */ ENDIF; ELSE IF mbsQosReq attribute is received 5QI:= 5qi attribute value; ELSE IF the mbsQosRef attribute is received THEN 5QI:= as configured by operator; ENDIF; </pre>
NOTE 1: When audio or video IP flow(s) are removed from a session, the 5QI shall keep the originally assigned value. NOTE 2: When audio or video IP flow(s) are added to a session, the PCF shall derive the 5QI taking into account the already existing media IP flow(s) within the session. NOTE 3: The encoding of the service information is defined in 3GPP TS 29.537 [55]. NOTE 4: The support of any codec specific algorithm in the PCF is optional. NOTE 5: Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL shall not be derived for non-GBR 5QI values. NOTE 6: Recommended 5QI values for standardised 5QI characteristics are shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]. NOTE 7: The PCF may be configured with operator specific preconditions for setting the Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate lower than the corresponding Maximum Authorized Data Rate. NOTE 8: The PCF shall assign an Authorized Guaranteed Data Rate DL value within the limit supported by the serving network. NOTE 9: The PCF may authorize a non-standardized 5QI with explicitly signalled QoS characteristics as defined in clause 5.2.3.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.537 [55] or may assign QoS characteristics (e.g. Priority Level, Averaging Window, and Maximum Data Burst Volume) to be used instead of the default QoS characteristics associated with a standardised 5QI value as shown in table 5.7.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]. Averaging Window may also be derived from averWindow attribute when mbsQosReq is received in the PCF. NOTE 10: Operator specific policies may consider access information for policy decision.	

The PCF should per ongoing MBS session store the Authorized QoS parameters for each service data flow (as described within a mbsMedComps attribute).

If the PCF provides a QoS information associated to an MBS PCC rule it may apply the rules in table 7.5.2-2 to combine the Authorized QoS per service data flow (as derived according to table 7.5.2-1) for all service data flows described by the corresponding MBS PCC rule.

NOTE 1: QoS Information related to MBS Session-AMBR is not derived based on mapping tables in this clause, but based on subscription and operator specific policies.

NOTE 2: ARP is always calculated at MBS PCC rule level according to table 7.5.2-2.

Table 7.5.2-2: Rules for calculating the Maximum Authorized/Guaranteed Data Rates, 5QI and ARP in the PCF

Authorized QoS Parameter	Calculation Rule
Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL	Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL is the sum of all Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL for all the service data flows (as according to table 7.5.2-1).
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL is the sum of all Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL for all the service data flows (as according to table 7.5.2-1). (NOTE 2)
5QI	5QI = MAX [needed QoS parameters per service data flow (as operator's defined criteria) among all the service data flows]
ARP	<pre> IF an operator special policy exists THEN ARP:= as defined by operator specific algorithm; ELSE IF afAppId attribute of MbsServiceInfo data type demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF mbsQosReq attribute is received IF reqMbsArp attribute is present THEN ARP:= reqMbsArp value; ENDIF; ELSE IF mbsSdfResPrio is received and it demands application specific ARP handling THEN ARP:= as defined by application specific algorithm; ELSE IF mbsQosReq attribute is received ARP:= as configured by operator ENDIF; (NOTE 1) </pre>
NOTE 1: The ARP priority levels 1-8 should only be assigned to resources for services that are authorized to receive prioritized treatment within an operator domain.	
NOTE 2: The PCF may check that the Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL does not exceed the subscribed maximum aggregated bitrate that can be provided across all the GBR QoS Flows for an MBS session.	

7.5.3 QoS parameter mapping Functions at MB-SMF

Table 7.5.3-1: Rules for derivation of the Authorized QoS Parameters per QoS flow from the Authorized QoS Parameters in SMF

Authorized QoS Parameter per QoS flow	Derivation from Authorized QoS Parameters
Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL per QoS flow	Maximum Authorized Bandwidth DL per QoS flow = Sum of Maximum Authorized Data Rate DL for all MBS PCC rules bound to that QoS flow.
Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL per QoS flow	Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL per QoS flow = Sum of Guaranteed Authorized Data Rate DL for all MBS PCC rules bound to that QoS flow.
Session-AMBR DL	For all non-GBR QoS flows, Session-AMBR DL is applied.
5QI	5QI from MBS PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/PL/AW/MBV is used.
ARP	ARP from MBS PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/PL/AW/MBV is used.
Priority Level (PL)	PL from MBS PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/PL/AW/MBV is used.
Averaging Window (AW)	AW from MBS PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/PL/AW/MBV is used. Applicable for GBR or delay critical GBR QoS flow.
Maximum Data Burst Volume (MDBV)	MDBV from MBS PCC rules having the same value combination of 5QI/ARP/PL/AW/MBV is used. Applicable for delay critical GBR QoS flow.

8 PCF addressing

8.1 General

The PCF discovery and selection procedures are needed when there are multiple and separately addressable PCFs in a PLMN or an SNPN. It is also possible that a PCF may serve only specific DN(s).

For PCC deployments not supporting MBS, PCF discovery and selection procedures are described in clauses 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.4A, 8.4B and 8.5.

PCF discovery and selection procedures related to MBS PCC deployments as defined in 3GPP TS 23.247 [54] are described in clause 8.6.

These procedures correlate the AF service session establishment over N5 or Rx with the associated PDU session (Session binding) handled over N7. They also correlate the AF service request over N5 with the associated AM policy context or, in the case the AF is a 5G DDNMF, with the associated UE policy context, handled over N15.

These procedures enable the AMF and SMF to address the PCF.

These procedures enable a consumer NF (e.g. an AF, NEF or PCF for a UE) to address the PCF for a PDU Session or the PCF for the UE (see clause 8.4).

The SCP is involved in the case of delegated discovery and selection.

8.2 PCF discovery and selection by the AMF

PCF discovery and selection functionality is implemented in the AMF and the SCP, and follows the principles described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 6.3.1. The AMF uses the PCF services for a UE.

When the AMF performs discovery and selection for a UE, the AMF may utilize the Nnrf_NFDISCOVERY service of the NRF to discover the candidate PCF instance(s). In addition, PCF information may also be locally configured in the AMF. The AMF selects a PCF instance, or two when roaming, based on the available PCF instances (obtained from the NRF or locally configured in the AMF) and depending on operator's policies.

In the non-roaming case, the AMF selects a PCF instance for AM policy association and selects the same PCF instance for UE policy association. In the roaming case, the AMF selects a V-PCF instance for AM policy association and selects the same V-PCF instance for UE policy association. The following factors may be considered for PCF discovery and selection for Access and Mobility policies and UE policies:

- SUPI; the AMF selects a PCF instance based on the SUPI range the UE's SUPI belongs to or based on the results of a discovery procedure with the NRF using the UE's SUPI as an input for PCF discovery.
- GPSI; the AMF selects a PCF instance based on the GPSI range the UE's GPSI belongs to or based on the results of a discovery procedure with the NRF using the UE's GPSI as an input for PCF discovery.
- S-NSSAI(s). In the roaming case, the AMF selects the V-PCF instance based on the S-NSSAI(s) of the VPLMN and selects the H-PCF instance based on the S-NSSAI(s) of the HPLMN.
- PCF Set ID.
- PCF Group ID of the UE's SUPI.

NOTE 1: The AMF can infer the PCF Group ID the UE's SUPI belongs to or UE's GPSI belongs to based on the results of PCF discovery procedures with the NRF. The AMF can provide the PCF Group ID to other PCF NF consumers as described in 3GPP TS 23.502 [3].

- The features supported by the PCF (e.g. the PCF supporting the "DNNReplacementControl" feature is selected by the AMF supporting DNN replacement).
- The V2X support stored in the NRF.
- The A2X support stored in the NRF.

- The ProSe support stored in the NRF.
- The Ranging/SL support stored in the NRF.
- PCF Selection Assistance Info and PCF Instance Id(s) serving the established PDU Sessions/PDN Connections received from UDM. In case PCF Selection Assistance Info and PCF Instance Id(s) are received from the UDM, the AMF selects a PCF instance that matches one of the received PCF instance Id(s) serving a combination of DNN and S-NSSAI that is included in the the PCF Selection Assistance Info. If multiple DNN and S-NSSAI combinations are provided, the AMF selects the DNN, S-NSSAI using local configuration. In case PCF instance Id(s) are not received, e.g. EPS interworking is not supported, the AMF selects the PCF instance by considering other above factors.

In the case of delegated discovery and selection in the SCP, the AMF shall include in the first request to the PCF the above factors, if available, within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request headers, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.500 [5], clause 6.10.3.2.

In the following scenarios, information about the PCF instance that has been selected by the AMF (e.g. the selected PCF instance Id, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID, if available) can be forwarded to another NF consumer of the PCF:

- During AMF relocation, the target AMF may receive from the source AMF a resource URI of AM Policy association and/or a resource URI of UE Policy association, a PCF instance ID, a PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, a PCF Group ID (if available) to enable the target AMF to reuse the same PCF instance (i.e. reuse the AM Policy association resource and/or UE Policy association resource), and the target AMF may decide based on operator policy either to re-use the AM/UE Policy Association in the same PCF instance or select a new PCF instance.
- In the roaming case, the AMF may, based on operator policies (e.g. roaming agreement), select the H-PCF in addition to the V-PCF for a UE by performing a PCF discovery and selection as described above. The AMF sends to the V-PCF during the UE Policy association establishment procedure the selected H-PCF instance Id, and if the "EnhEstRoaming" feature is supported as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525[31], optionally the selected H-PCF URI and the ID of the H-PCF to which the selected H-PCF belongs.

In these scenarios, if the target AMF performs discovery and selection, the target AMF may use the received PCF information instead of performing PCF selection interacting with the NRF as described above (discovery may still be needed depending on what level of information is sent by the AMF, e.g. the address of the PCF instance may not be present)

In addition, in the case of delegated discovery and selection in the SCP, the following applies:

- a) The selected PCF instance may include the PCF instance ID, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID (if available) in the response to the AMF.

NOTE 2: The selected (V-)PCF instance can include a binding indication, including the (V-)PCF ID and possibly the PCF Set ID in the response to the AMF.

- b) The AMF first establishes an AM policy association; when forwarding the related request message, the SCP discovers and selects a (V-)PCF instance for AM policy association. Unless binding information is provided in the response of the PCF to that request, the SCP adds the PCF instance ID it selected into the response to the AMF, as per clause 6.10.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.500 [5]. The AMF uses the received (V-)PCF instance Id for the AM policy association and/or the available binding information within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request headers for the request to establish the UE policy association. The SCP selects the corresponding (V-)PCF instance for UE policy association based on the received discovery and selection parameters.
- c) During AMF relocation, the target AMF may receive a resource URI of AM Policy association and/or a resource URI of UE Policy association, a PCF instance ID, a PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, a PCF Group ID (if available) from the source AMF to enable it to reuse the same PCF instance. The AMF may decide based on operator policy either to use the old PCF instance or select another PCF instance (i.e. reuse the AM Policy association resource and/or UE Policy association resource). If the target AMF decides to reuse the old PCF instance, the AMF includes the {apiRoot} of the resource URI within the "3gpp-Sbi-Target-apiRoot" request header, the PCF instance ID, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID (if available) within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request header as received from the source AMF in the AM policy update request and/or the UE policy update request to the PCF via the SCP.

- d) In the roaming case, the AMF performs discovery and selection of the H-PCF from NRF as described in this clause. The AMF may indicate the maximum number of H-PCF instances to be returned from NRF, i.e. H-PCF selection at NRF. The AMF uses the received V-PCF instance Id for AM Policy association and/or the available binding information received during the AM policy association procedure as described in bullet b) above to send the UE policy association establishment request to the V-PCF via the SCP. The AMF includes in the Npcf_UEPolicyControl_Create request the selected H-PCF instance Id, and if the "EnhEstRoaming" feature is supported as defined in 3GPP TS 29.525 [31], optionally the selected H-PCF URI and the ID of H-PCF Set to which the selected H-PCF belongs. The SCP discovers and selects the V-PCF instance as described in bullet b). The V-PCF sends an UE policy association establishment request towards the H-PCF via the SCP, which includes the selected H-PCF instance Id, and optionally the selected H-PCF URI and the ID of H-PCF Set to which the selected H-PCF belongs, if received from the AMF within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request header as discovery and selection parameters. The SCP discovers and selects the H-PCF instance based on the received parameters and forwards the request to the H-PCF.

8.3 PCF discovery and selection by the SMF

PCF discovery and selection functionality is implemented in the SMF and the SCP, and follows the principles described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 6.3.1. The SMF uses the PCF services for a PDU session. The selected PCF instance may be the same or a different one than the PCF instance used by the AMF.

When the SMF performs discovery and selection for a PDU session, the SMF may utilize the Nnrf_NFDiscovery service of the Network Repository Function to discover the candidate PCF instance(s). In addition, PCF information may also be locally configured in the SMF. The SMF selects a PCF instance based on the available PCF instances (obtained from the NRF or locally configured in the SMF). The following factors may be considered during the PCF selection.

- Local operator policies.
- Selected Data Network Name (DNN).
- S-NSSAI of the PDU session. In the LBO roaming case, the SMF selects the PCF instance based on the S-NSSAI of the VPLMN. In the home routed roaming case, the H-SMF selects the H-PCF instance based on the S-NSSAI of the HPLMN.
- the features supported by the PCF (e.g. a PCF supporting the "ATSSS" feature is selected for an MA PDU session).
- SUPI; the SMF selects a PCF instance based on the SUPI range the UE's SUPI belongs to or based on the results of a discovery procedure with NRF using the UE's SUPI as an input for PCF discovery.
- GPSI; the SMF selects a PCF instance based on the GPSI range the UE's GPSI belongs to or based on the results of a discovery procedure with NRF using the UE's GPSI as an input for PCF discovery.
- PCF instance ID selected by the AMF for the UE, if available.
- The PCF Group ID provided by the AMF to the SMF, if available.
- PCF Set ID, if available.
- Same PCF Selection Indication provided by the AMF to the SMF, if available.

In the case of delegated discovery and selection in SCP, the SMF shall include the above factors except the local operator policies if available in the first request, within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request headers as specified in 3GPP TS 29.500 [5], subclause 6.10.3.2.

The AMF may, based on operator policies, forward the selected PCF instance ID, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID (if available) to the SMF during the PDU Session Establishment procedure to enable the usage of the same PCF instance for the AMF and the SMF. In this scenario, when the SMF performs discovery and selection, the SMF may decide based on operator policy either to use the same PCF instance or select a new PCF instance.

If the combination of the DNN and S-NSSAI of the PDU session matches one of the combination(s) of the DNN and S-NSSAI included in the PCF Selection Assistance info received from UDM, the AMF shall forward the Same PCF Selection Indication together with the selected PCF instance Id, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available,

the PCF Group ID (if available) to the SMF during the PDU Session Establishment procedure. In case that the Same PCF Selection Indication is received together with the PCF instance Id, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID (if available), the SMF shall select the same PCF instance for SM Policy Control.

If the same PCF instance is selected by the SMF, the PCF discovery and selection procedure described above is not performed (discovery may still be needed to obtain the address of the PCF instance).

In the case of delegated discovery and selection in the SCP, the SMF may include the received PCF instance ID, the PCF set ID, and if the PCF set ID is not available, the PCF Group ID (if available) within the "3gpp-Sbi-Discovery-*" request headers in the request to the PCF via the SCP. The SCP may decide based on operator policy either to use the indicated PCF instance or select another PCF instance.

When the feature "SamePcf" is supported, the selected PCF instance may indicate redirection for the SM Policy Control association creation to a different PCF instance, including the redirection URI with the FQDN or IP endpoint of the target Npcf_SMPolicyControl service in a different PCF instance. The SMF shall behave as follows:

- For direct communication scenarios, at the reception of the redirection request, the SMF shall terminate the current SM Policy Control association creation and reselect a PCF instance based on the received redirection information. The SMF shall then establish an SM Policy Control association with the reselected PCF instance.
- For indirect communication scenarios with delegated discovery and selection, the SCP, based on local policies, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.500 [5], clause 6.10.9.1, may send the request towards the new PCF instance instead of forwarding the redirect request to the SMF. If the redirect request is received by the SMF, the SMF shall terminate the current SM Policy Control association creation and reselect a PCF instance based on the received redirection information. The SMF shall then establish an SM Policy Control association with the reselected PCF instance using the same or a different SCP and including the {apiRoot} of the received URI within the "3gpp-Sbi-Target-apiRoot" request header.

NOTE: A single PCF can be used for the monitoring and limitation of the data rate per network slice. To enable this, the SMF has to select the same PCF instance for all PDU Sessions of the UE to the S-NSSAI. This is achieved with the mechanisms described in this clause, for example by using local operator policies in the SMF or SUPI ranges.

8.4 PCF discovery and selection by the AF

8.4.1 General

When multiple and separately addressable PCFs have been deployed, the BSF, as described in clause 8.4.2, is required in order to ensure that a consumer NF (e.g. an AF, NEF) for a certain PDU session reaches over N5/Rx the PCF holding the PDU session information, and that a consumer NF (e.g. an AF or NEF) for a certain UE context reaches e.g. over N5 the PCF holding the UE context information. The AF can also select a PCF based on local configuration for Ethernet PDU sessions.

For the integration with TSC networks the AF is either the TSN AF (integration with IEEE TSN networks) or the TSCTSF (integration with other TSC networks than IEEE TSN).

8.4.2 Binding Support Function (BSF)

The BSF has the following characteristics:

- a) The BSF stores internally information about the corresponding selected PCF as defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
- For a certain PDU session, the BSF stores internally information about the user identity, the DNN, the UE (IP or MAC) address(es), S-NSSAI, the IPv4 address domain (if applicable) and the selected PCF address, and if available the associated PCF instance ID, PCF set ID and the level of SBA binding.
 - For a certain UE, the BSF stores internally information about the user identity, the selected PCF address and if available the associated PCF instance ID, PCF set ID and the level of SBA binding.

NOTE 1: Only NF instance or NF set of level of binding is supported at the BSF for SBA binding level of Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service.

NOTE 2: How to ensure the routing of the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Create service operation to the appropriate PCF instance when the "SamePcf" feature or the "ExtendedSamePcf" feature are supported depends on the implementation.

- b) The PCF utilizes the Nbsf_Management service of the BSF to register, update or remove the stored information in the BSF.
- For a PDU Session, the PCF ensures that the binding information is updated each time an IP address is allocated or released for the PDU Session or, for Ethernet PDU Sessions, each time the PCF is notified that a MAC address is taken into use or no more used in the PDU Session or, each time the PCF instance is changed.
 - For a UE, the PCF ensures that it is updated each time the AMF selects a new PCF instance.
 - If the PCF determines whether the same PCF shall be selected for the SM Policy associations as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the PCF registers in the BSF including the available parameter combination. The BSF applies the procedures to identify if there is a PCF handling the binding information and accepts or rejects the request accordingly (see clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]).
- c) For the retrieval of binding information, any NF, such as NEF or AF, uses the Nbsf_Management service as defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to discover or subscribe to the notification of the selected PCF address(es), and if available, the associated PCF instance ID, PCF set ID and the level of SBA binding for:
- i. the tuple (UE address, DNN, SUPI, GPSI, S-NSSAI, IPv4 address domain) (or for a subset of this tuple), when the target is the PCF for the PDU session; or
 - ii. the tuple (SUPI, GPSI) (or for a subset of this tuple), when the target is the PCF for the UE.
- d) If the NF received a PCF set ID or a PCF instance ID with a level of SBA binding as result of the Nbsf management service discovery service operation or in the request of the Nbsf management service notification service operation or in the response of the Nbsf management subscribe service operation, it should use that information as NF set level or NF instance level SBA Binding Indication to route requests to the PCF.
- e) For an ongoing NF service session, the PCF may provide SBA Binding Indication to the NF (see clause 6.3.1.0 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]). This SBA Binding Indication shall then be used instead of any PCF information received from the BSF.
- f) The BSF is able to proxy or redirect Rx requests based on the IP address of a UE. For any AF using Rx, such as P-CSCF, the BSF determines the selected PCF address according to the information carried by the incoming Rx requests.
- It shall support the functionality of a proxy agent and a redirect agent as defined in IETF RFC 6733 [29]. The mode in which it operates (i.e. proxy or redirect) shall be based on operator's requirements.
- g) The BSF may be deployed standalone or may be collocated with other network functions such as the PCF, UDR, NRF, and SMF.

NOTE 3: Collocation allows combined implementation.

- h) The NF may discover the BSF via NRF by invoking the Nnrf_NFDiscovery service operation or based on local configuration. In case of via NRF the BSF registers the NF profile in NRF. The IP domain list, the Range(s) of UE IPv4 addresses, Range(s) of UE IPv6 prefixes, Range(s) of SUPIs, the Range(s) of GPSIs or the BSF Group Id supported by the BSF may be provided to NRF, as described in clause 6.1.6.2.21 of TS 29.510 [51].
- i) The BSF verifies whether to provide the address of a PCF for a PDU Session or a PCF for a UE based on the explicit NF service request to the resource collection representing the binding information for the PCF for a PDU Session or the PCF for a UE as specified in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

8.4.3 Void

8.4A PCF for a PDU session discovery and selection by the PCF for a UE

When the PCF for a UE determines that the AM policy, e.g. service area restriction, depends on PDU session traffic events, e.g. the application start and application stop for an application Id, or makes policy control decisions based on awareness of URSP rule enforcement for an application, the PCF for a UE needs to discover the PCF for a PDU session handling the concerned PDU session(s) to subscribe to the notification of the PDU session traffic related event(s) using the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service. The following alternatives are specified for the discovery and selection of the PCF for a PDU session by the PCF for a UE:

- 1) The PCF for a UE may subscribe with the BSF to the notification of the binding information registration/deregistration of the PCF for a PDU session as defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]; or
- 2) The PCF for a UE may subscribe with the PCF for the PDU session to the notification of PDU session established/terminated events for certain DNN and S-NSSAI combination(s) as follows:
 1. The PCF for a UE provides to the AMF the PCF for a UE callback information (e.g. callback URI information where it listens to notifications of PDU session established/terminated events) and the matching S-NSSAI and DNN combination(s), as specified in 3GPP TS 29.507 [7].
 2. The AMF forwards to the SMF, for the PDU session(s) matching the received S-NSSAI and DNN combination(s), the PCF for a UE callback information, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.502 [52].
 3. The SMF notifies the PCF for a PDU session of the received PCF for a UE callback information, as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9].
 4. When the PCF for a PDU session becomes aware that a SM Policy Association is receiving the callback URI for the PCF for a UE, the PCF for a PDU session sends the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to the received PCF for a UE callback URI to notify the PCF for a UE of the PCF for a PDU session address(es) and SBA binding information as specified in clause 4.2.5.22 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

8.4B PCF for a UE discovery and selection by the PCF for a PDU session

When the PCF for a PDU session determines that a UE Policy Association needs to be established with the (V-) PCF for the UE, e.g., the PCF for a PDU session receives a UE Policy Container or when the UE moves from 5GS to EPS as specified in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], the PCF for the PDU session(s) handling the concerned PDN connection or PDU session(s) needs to discover the PCF for a UE to enable the provisioning of URSP rules to UE in EPS using the Npcf_UEPolicyControl service. The following alternatives are specified for the discovery and selection of the PCF for a UE by the PCF for a PDU session:

- 1) When the PCF for a PDU session receives a UE Policy Container, the PCF for the PDU session behaves as an AMF for the discovery and selection of the (V-)(H-)PCF for a UE, and follows the procedures specified in clause 8.2, with the difference that (V-)PCF selection is performed as specified for AM Policy Association establishment.
- 2) When the PCF for a PDU session detects that the UE moves from 5GS to EPS, the PCF for the PDU session shall query the BSF as described in clause 8.4.2 to retrieve the (V-)PCF addressing information of the PCF for the UE holding the UE context information while the UE was in 5GS. In this case, H-PCF discovery and selection is not performed by the PCF for the PDU session since the V-PCF maintains the UE Policy Association with the selected H-PCF.

8.5 BSF procedures

8.5.1 General

These procedures concern the storage of binding information in the BSF, the retrieval of binding information from the BSF and the subscription to the notification of PCF registration/deregistration events from the BSF.

This clause also concerns the BSF procedures over Rx reference point. Clause 8.5.5 is for the BSF implemented as a Diameter Proxy Agent, and clause 8.5.6 is for the BSF implemented as a Diameter Redirect Agent.

8.5.2 Binding information Creation

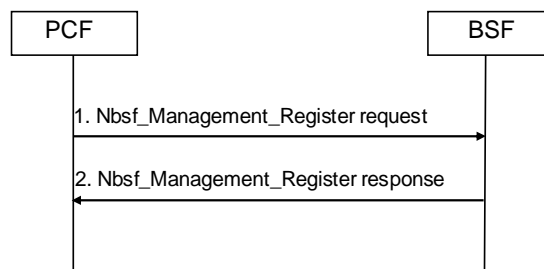


Figure 8.5.2-1: Binding information Creation procedure

1. When an IP address is allocated for the IP PDU session, or a MAC address is used for the Ethernet PDU session, the PCF for a PDU session invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending an HTTP POST request with Resource URI of the resource "PCF for a PDU Session Bindings" to store the binding information in the BSF. The binding information provided in the HTTP POST request is defined in clause 4.2.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

When an AM Policy Association or an UE Policy Association is established, and the PCF for a UE determines that binding information needs to be created, the PCF for a UE invokes the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending an HTTP POST request with Resource URI of the resource "PCF for a UE Bindings" as defined in clause 4.2.2.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to store the binding information in the BSF.

2. Once the BSF created the resource correspondingly, the BSF shall send an HTTP "201 Created" response to the PCF and store the binding information.

8.5.3 Binding information Deletion

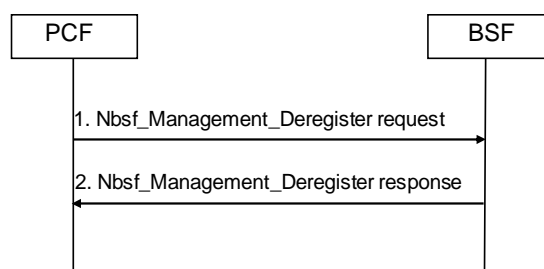


Figure 8.5.3-1: Binding information Deletion procedure

1. When the IP address is released or the MAC address is not used for a certain PDU session and there is no IP address or MAC address applicable to a corresponding binding information (e.g. the IP address or the MAC address is the unique address for the PDU session), the PCF for a PDU Session invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request with Resource URI of the resource "Individual PCF for a PDU Session Binding" to request the BSF to remove the binding information as defined in clause 4.2.3.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

When the AM Policy Association or the UE Policy Association is terminated, and the PCF for a UE determines that binding information needs to be terminated, the PCF for a UE invokes the Nbsf_Management_Deregister service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request with Resource URI of the resource "Individual PCF for a UE Binding" to request the BSF to remove the binding information as defined in clause 4.2.3.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

2. Upon success, the BSF shall send an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF and remove the stored binding information.

8.5.4 Binding information Retrieval

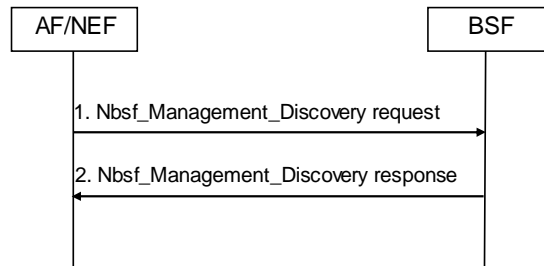


Figure 8.5.4-1: Binding information Retrieval procedure

1. The NF service consumer (e.g., NEF, AF, NWDAF) invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation by sending an HTTP GET request with Resource URI of the resource "PCF for a PDU Session Bindings" to the BSF to obtain the address information of the selected PCF for a certain PDU session. The URI query parameters in the HTTP GET request are specified in clause 4.2.4.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

The NF service consumer (e.g., NEF, AF) invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation by sending an HTTP GET request with Resource URI of the resource "PCF for a UE Bindings" to the BSF to obtain the address information of the selected PCF for a certain UE. The URI query parameters in the HTTP GET request are specified in clause 4.2.4.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

2. Once the request is accepted and a binding resource matching the query parameters exists, the BSF shall send an HTTP "200 OK" response to the NF service consumer with the address information of the selected PCF (e.g. Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service FQDN and/or IP Endpoint(s) of the selected PCF, or if the PCF supports the Rx interface the Diameter host and realm for the selected PCF), and if available with the associated PCF set ID, the PCF instance ID and the SBA binding level.

8.5.5 Proxy BSF

8.5.5.1 General

When the BSF receives a request from an AF, it shall check whether it already has selected a PCF for the Rx session; if it does have a PCF already selected for the Rx session, it shall proxy the request to the corresponding PCF. If the BSF does not have a PCF already selected, it shall select a PCF to handle the Rx session and then proxy the request to the selected PCF.

8.5.5.2 Rx Session Establishment

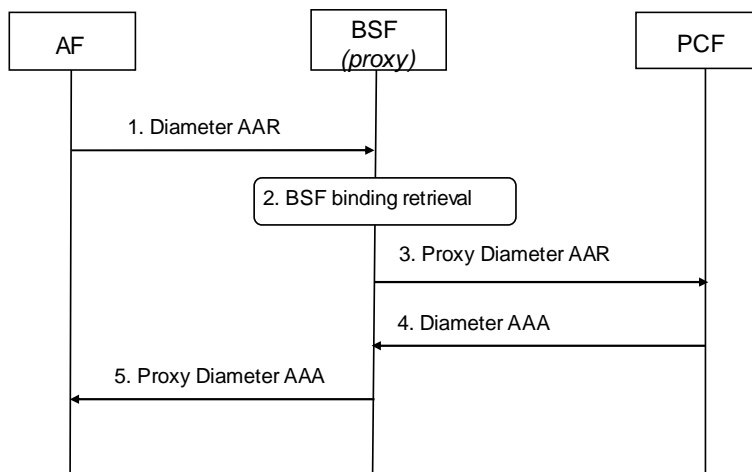


Figure 8.5.5.2-1: Rx Session Establishment procedure using BSF (proxy)

1. A Diameter AAR indicating establishment of an AF session is sent by the AF and received by a BSF (proxy).
2. The BSF (proxy) shall select a PCF from the binding for the AF.
3. The BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter AAR to the target PCF. The proxied Diameter AAR maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.
4. The PCF returns a Diameter AAA to the BSF (proxy).
5. BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter AAA to the AF. The proxied Diameter AAA maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.

8.5.5.3 Rx Session Modification

8.5.5.3.1 AF-initiated

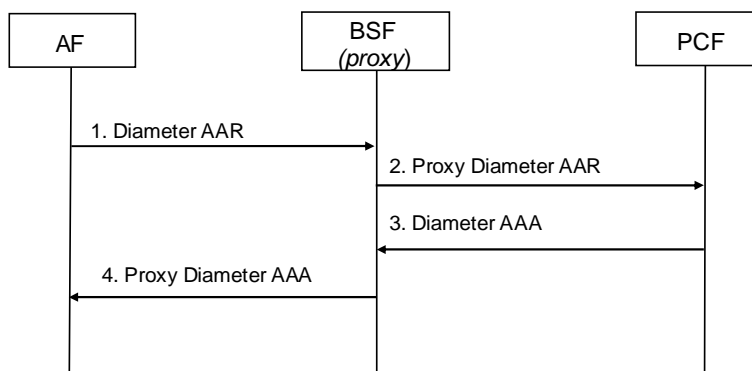


Figure 8.5.5.3.1-1: AF-initiated Rx Session Modification procedure using BSF (proxy)

1. A subsequent Diameter AAR indicating modification of an existing Rx session is sent by the AF and received by the BSF (proxy).
2. The BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter AAR to the target PCF.
3. PCF returns a Diameter AAA to the BSF (proxy).
4. BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter AAA to the AF.

8.5.5.3.2 PCF-initiated

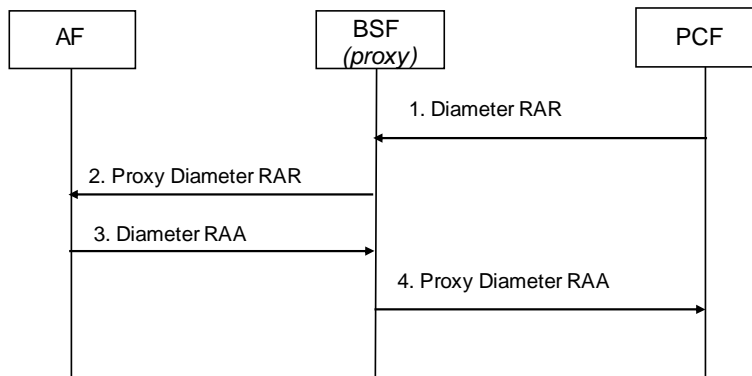


Figure 8.5.5.3.2-1: PCF-initiated Rx Session Modification procedure using BSF (proxy)

1. A PCF-initiated Diameter RAR indicating an Rx specific action is sent to the AF and received by the BSF (proxy).
2. The BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter RAR to the AF. The proxied Diameter Request maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.
3. AF returns a Diameter RAA to the BSF (proxy).
4. BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter RAA to the PCF.

8.5.5.4 Rx Session Termination

8.5.5.4.1 AF-initiated

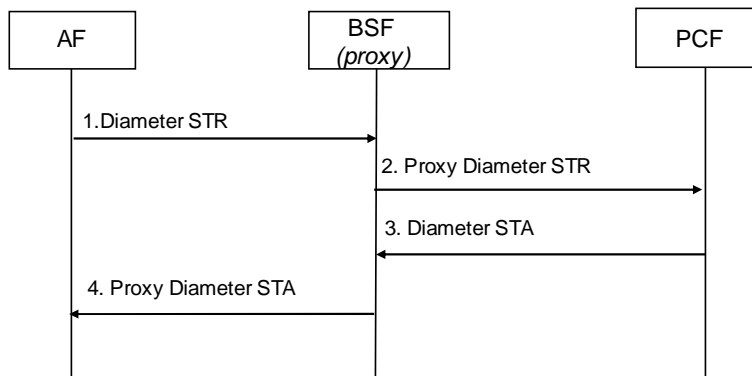


Figure 8.5.5.4.1-1: AF-initiated Rx Session Termination procedure using BSF (proxy)

1. A Diameter STR indicating termination of an Rx session is sent by the AF to the BSF (proxy). The message uses the same Session-Id AVP value of the active Rx session established between the AF and PCF.
2. The BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter STR to the target PCF. The proxied Diameter Request maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.
3. PCF sends BSF (proxy) a Diameter STA to acknowledge termination of the session.
4. The BSF marks the Rx session terminated and proxies the Diameter STA to the AF. The proxied Diameter Answer maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.

8.5.5.4.2 PCF-initiated

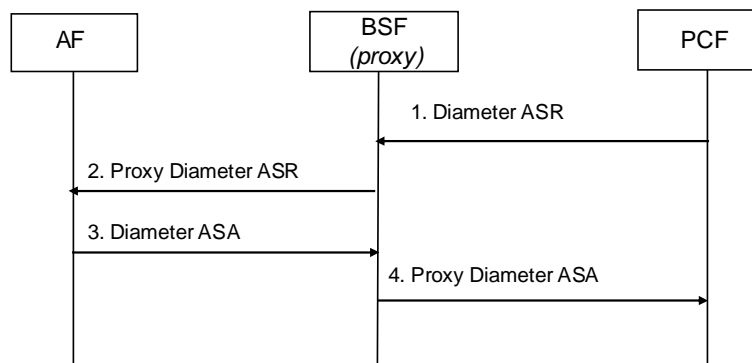


Figure 8.5.5.4.2-1: PCF-initiated Rx Session Termination procedure using BSF (proxy)

1. A PCF-initiated Diameter ASR requesting the termination of an Rx session is sent to the AF and received by the BSF (proxy).
2. The BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter ASR to the AF. The proxied Diameter ASR maintains the same Session-Id AVP value.
3. AF returns a Diameter ASA to the BSF (proxy).
4. BSF (proxy) proxies the Diameter ASA to the PCF.

8.5.6 Redirect BSF

8.5.6.1 General

A BSF implemented as a Diameter redirect agent shall redirect the received Diameter request message by carrying out the procedures defined in clause 6.1.7 of IETF RFC 6733 [29]. The Client shall use the value within the Redirect-Host AVP of the redirect response in order to obtain the PCF identity. The BSF may provide the Redirect-Host-Usage AVP in the redirect response to provide a hint to the Client about how the cached route table entry created from the Redirect-Host AVP is to be used as described in clause 6.13 of IETF RFC 6733 [29].

The BSF may also provide the Redirect-Max-Cache-Time AVP in the redirect response to indicate to the Client the lifetime of the cached route table entry created from the Redirect-Host and Redirect-Host-Usage AVP values as described in clause 6.14 of IETF RFC 6733 [29].

The BSF clients shall use cached route table entry created from the Redirect-Host, Redirect-Host-Usage and Redirect-Max-Cache-Time AVPs to determine whether BSF interaction is required.

The AF shall contact the BSF on Rx session establishment to retrieve the PCF address. The BSF (redirect) does not need to maintain Diameter sessions and Diameter Base redirect procedures are applicable. Therefore, an AF should not send an Rx session modification or termination request to the BSF.

8.5.6.2 Rx Session Establishment

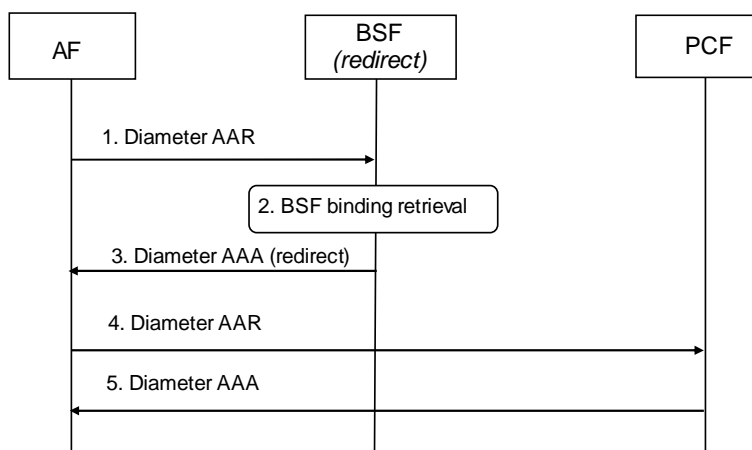


Figure 8.5.6.2-1: Rx Session Establishment procedure using BSF (redirect)

1. A Diameter AAR indicating establishment of a new Rx Diameter session with the PCF is sent by the AF and received by a BSF (redirect).
2. The BSF shall select the PCF from the binding for the AF.
3. The BSF sends a Diameter AAA indicating redirection as defined in IETF RFC 6733 [29]. The target PCF identity is included in the Redirect-Host AVP.
4. The AF re-sends the Diameter AAR of step 1 to the target PCF.
5. PCF returns a Diameter AAA to the AF.

8.5.7 Binding information Update

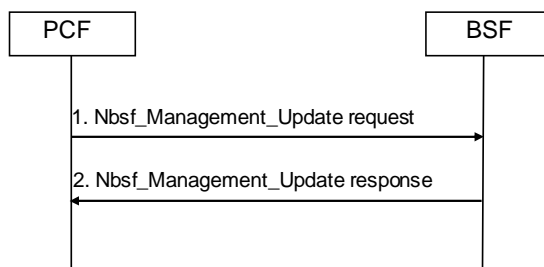


Figure 8.5.7-1: Binding information Update procedure

1. If the binding information has been previously registered in the BSF, and if the BindingUpdate feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] is supported, the PCF for a PDU Session invokes the Nbsf_Management_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request with Resource URI of the resource "Individual PCF for a PDU Session Binding" as defined in clause 4.2.5.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to update the binding information in the BSF in the following cases:
 - for the IP address information of the served UE:
 - for the IPv4v6 address case, when one of the addresses is released or a new IP address is allocated; and/or
 - for the multiple address case, if the MultiUeAddr feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] is supported, when a new IP address (e.g. IPv6 prefix) is allocated or an IP address which is not the last one is released for the IP PDU session,
 - for the MAC address information of the served UE:

- if the MultiUeAddr feature defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] is supported, when a new MAC address is used or a MAC address which is not the last one is not used for the Ethernet PDU session ; and/or
- if a new PCF instance is selected, the PCF instance ID and the associated PCF address(es).

If the binding information has been previously registered in the BSF, and if a new PCF instance for a UE is selected, the PCF for a UE invokes the Nbsf_Management_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request with Resource URI of the resource "Individual PCF for a UE Binding" as defined in clause 4.2.5.3 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to update the binding information in the BSF.

2. Upon success, the BSF shall send an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF and update the binding information.

8.5.8 Binding information Subscription

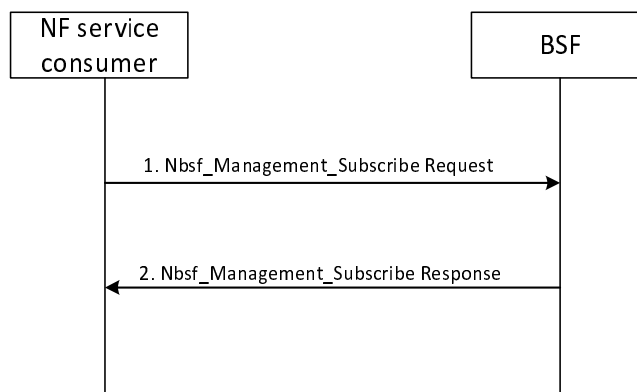


Figure 8.5.8-1: Binding information Subscription procedure

1. The NF service consumer (e.g. PCF for a UE, AF, NEF) invokes the Nbsf_Management_Subscribe service operation by sending an HTTP POST request with the Resource URI of the "Binding Subscriptions" resource as defined in clause 4.2.6.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to subscribe to the notifications of registration/deregistration events for the PCF for a PDU Session or PCF for a UE.
2. Upon success, the BSF shall create and store the subscription, and send an HTTP "201 Created" response to the NF service consumer including the created subscription resource and the available binding information related to the subscription.

8.5.9 Binding information Unsubscription

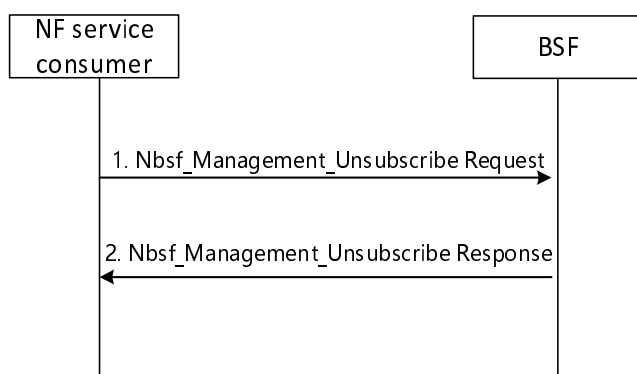


Figure 8.5.9-1: Binding information Unsubscription procedure

1. The NF service consumer (e.g. PCF, AF, NEF) invokes the Nbsf_Management_Unsubscribe service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request with the Resource URI of the "Individual Binding Subscription" resource to request the BSF to remove the corresponding subscription.

2. Upon success, the BSF shall remove the corresponding subscription and send an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the NF service consumer.

8.5.10 Binding information Notification

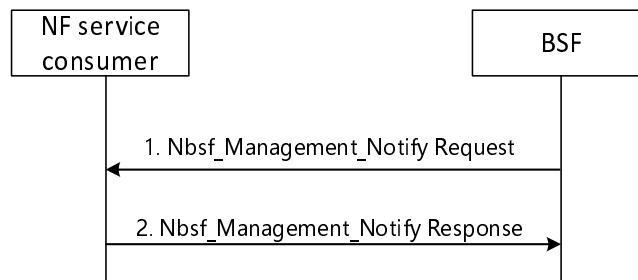


Figure 8.5.10-1: Binding information Notification procedure

1. If the notification has been previously subscribed in the BSF, the BSF invokes the `Nbsf_Management_Notify` service operation by sending the HTTP POST request with Resource URI as defined in clause 4.2.8.2 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to notify the newly registration or deregistration events.
2. Once the NF consumer accepts the request, it sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the BSF.

8.6 PCF discovery and selection procedures in MBS deployments

8.6.1 PCF discovery and selection by the MB-SMF

PCF discovery and selection functionality is implemented in the MB-SMF and follows the principles described in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 6.3.1. The MB-SMF uses the PCF services for the handling of the MBS session.

When the MB-SMF performs discovery and selection for an MBS session, the MB-SMF may utilize the `Nnrf_NFDiscovery` service of the Network Repository Function to discover the candidate PCF instance(s). In addition, PCF information may also be locally configured in the MB-SMF. The MB-SMF selects a PCF instance based on the available PCF instances (obtained from the NRF or locally configured in the MB-SMF). The following factors may be considered during the PCF selection.

- Local operator policies.
- the features supported by the PCF
- PCF Set ID, if available.

NOTE 1: A single PCF can be deployed in the network. In this case the information is preconfigured in the MB-SMF.

NOTE 2: A single PCF can be used for the handling of location dependent MBS sessions. To enable this, the MB-SMF has to select the same PCF instance for all the MBS session establishments applicable for the same MBS Session Id.

8.6.2 PCF discovery and selection by the AF/NEF/MBSF

8.6.2.1 General

The AF/NEF/MBSF performs discovery and selection of the PCF for an MBS session. The AF/NEF/MBSF may utilize the `Nnrf_NFDiscovery` service of the NRF to discover the candidate PCF instance(s). In addition, PCF information may

also be locally configured in the AF/NEF/MBSF. The AF/NEF/MBSF selects a PCF instance based on the available PCF instances (obtained from the NRF or locally configured in the NEF/MBSF) and depending on operator's policies.

When multiple and separately addressable PCFs are deployed, the BSF, as described in clause 8.6.2.2, is required in order to ensure that a consumer NF (e.g. AF, NEF, MBSF, MB-SMF) reaches over N5/N30/Nmb12/N7mb the PCF currently handling the MBS session.

NOTE: This mechanism is not necessary in a deployment with a single PCF.

8.6.2.2 Binding Support Function (BSF)

The BSF has the following characteristics:

- a) The BSF stores internally information about the PCF selected to handle an MBS session.
 - For a certain MBS session, the BSF stores internally information about the MBS Session ID and the selected PCF address for the MBS session, and if available, the associated PCF instance ID, PCF set ID and the level of SBA binding.

NOTE 1: Only NF instance or NF set level of binding is supported at the BSF for SBA binding level.

- b) The PCF uses the BSF to ensure that the same PCF is selected for the MBS Policy association(s) related to the same MBS Session ID, and in the case where the AF/NEF/MBSF interacts with the PCF for MBS Policy Authorization, to ensure that the same PCF is selected for MBS Policy Authorization (via the Npcf_MBSPolicyAuthorization) and MBS Policy Association(s) management (via the Npcf_MBSPolicyControl). The PCF utilizes the Nbsf_Management service of the BSF to register, update or remove the stored PCF for an MBS session binding information at the BSF. The PCF ensures that the PCF for an MBS session binding information is updated each time the PCF instance is changed.

At the reception of a PCF for an MBS session binding registration request, the BSF checks whether there is already a PCF handling the MBS Session identified by the provided MBS Session ID. If no such PCF is found, the BSF stores the information received in the request, i.e. registers the PCF sending the request as the PCF handling the MBS session; otherwise, the BSF rejects the registration request and includes the information of the existing PCF instance currently handling the MBS session in the response (see clause 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]).

- c) For the retrieval of binding information, any NF, such as NEF, MBSF or AF, uses the Nbsf_Management service as defined in 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to discover the PCF instance currently handling the MBS session and the related information (i.e. PCF address(es), and if available, the associated PCF instance ID, PCF set ID and the level of SBA binding for the MBS Session ID).
- d) If the NF received a PCF set ID or a PCF instance ID with a level of SBA binding as result of the Nbsf management service registration or discovery service operations, it should use that information as NF set level or NF instance level SBA Binding Indication to route requests to the PCF.
- e) For an ongoing NF service session, the PCF may provide SBA Binding Indication to the NF (see clause 6.3.1.0 of 3GPP TS 23.501 [2]). This SBA Binding Indication shall then be used instead of any PCF information received from the BSF.

8.6.3 BSF procedures

8.6.3.1 General

These procedures concern the storage, update, discovery and removal of MBS session binding information in the BSF and the retrieval of binding information from the BSF.

8.6.3.2 Binding information Creation

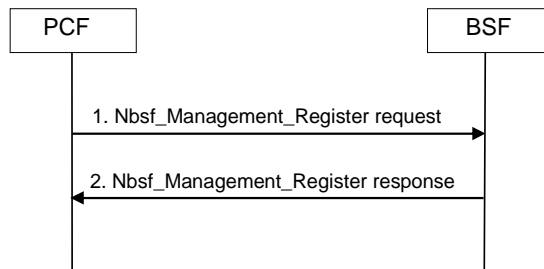


Figure 8.6.3.2-1: Binding information Creation procedure

1. In order to either:

- register itself at the BSF as the PCF handling the MBS session; or
- check whether there is already a PCF handling the MBS session, and if it is not the case and when applicable, register at the BSF as the PCF handling the MBS session;

the PCF shall invoke the Nbsf_Management_Register service operation by sending an HTTP POST request targeting the resource URI of the "PCF for an MBS Session Bindings" resource.

2. Upon reception of the request from the PCF, the BSF shall either:

- for location-dependent MBS sessions and if there is no PCF already handling the MBS session, register the PCF sending the request as the PCF handling the MBS session by creating the corresponding PCF for an MBS session binding resource and storing the received information. The BSF shall then send back a successful response to the PCF as defined in clause 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22]; or
- if there is already a PCF handling the MBS session (i.e., there is an existing PCF for an MBS session binding stored at the BSF for the MBS session identified by the received MBS session ID), the BSF shall reject the request and return in the response the information of the PCF currently handling the MBS session as defined in clause 4.2.2.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].

8.6.3.3 Binding information Update

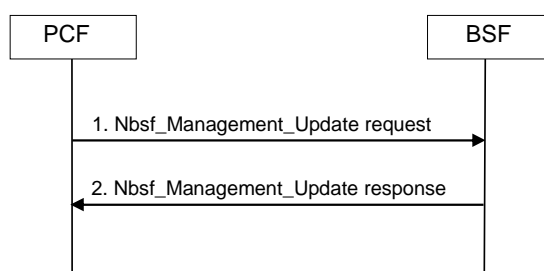


Figure 8.6.3.3-1: Binding information Update procedure

1. If a PCF for an MBS session binding information has been previously registered at the BSF, the PCF invokes the Nbsf_Management_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request targeting the resource URI of the "Individual PCF for an MBS Session Binding" resource as defined in clause 4.2.5.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22] to update the PCF for an MBS session binding information at the BSF (e.g. if a new PCF instance is selected, in which case, the PCF instance ID and the associated PCF address(es) are provided).
2. Upon success, the BSF shall send an HTTP "200 OK" response to the PCF and update the corresponding PCF for an MBS session binding information.

8.6.3.4 Binding information Deletion

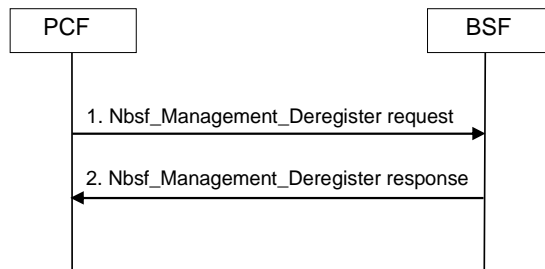


Figure 8.6.3.4-1: Binding information Deletion procedure

1. In order to request the removal of an existing PCF for an MBS session binding (i.e. the PCF is no longer handling the MBS session), the PCF invokes the `Nbsf_Management_Deregister` service operation by sending an HTTP DELETE request targeting the resource URI of the "Individual PCF for an MBS Session Binding" resource to request the BSF to remove the targeted PCF for an MBS session binding information as defined in clause 4.2.3.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
2. Upon success, the BSF shall send an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF and remove the corresponding stored PCF for an MBS session binding information.

8.6.3.5 Binding information Retrieval

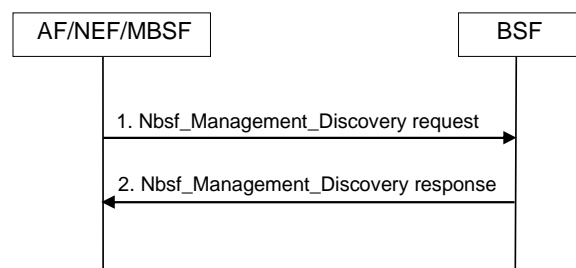


Figure 8.6.3.5-1: Binding information Retrieval procedure

1. The NF service consumer (e.g. NEF, AF, MBSF) invokes the `Nbsf_Management_Discovery` service operation by sending an HTTP GET request targeting the resource URI of the "PCF for an MBS Session Bindings" resource to the BSF to obtain the address information of the PCF currently handling an MBS session. The URI query parameter(s) to be provided in the HTTP GET request are specified in clause 4.2.4.4 of 3GPP TS 29.521 [22].
2. Once the request is accepted and a PCF for an MBS session binding resource matching the provided query parameter(s) exists, the BSF shall send an HTTP "200 OK" response to the NF service consumer with the address information of the PCF currently handling the MBS session (i.e. PCF address(es), and if available, the associated PCF set ID, the PCF instance ID and the SBA binding level information).

9 Race condition handling

9.1 Overview

Certain PCC Services (e.g., `Npcf_SMPolicyControl` service, `Npcf_AMPolicyControl` service) allow the NF producer (e.g. PCF) to update the policy association in two ways: unsolicited and solicited. The PCF can push policy decisions (e.g. PCC rule) to the NF consumer (e.g. SMF) in an unsolicited fashion (e.g. using `UpdateNotify` service operation for `Npcf_SMPolicyControl` service). It can also install policy decisions in a solicited manner by responding to the NF consumer (e.g. using the response of the `Update` service operation for `Npcf_SMPolicyControl` service).

The NF producer and the NF consumer can initiate transactions that modify the policy independently (e.g. Update service operation from the NF consumer and UpdateNotify service operation from the NF producer) and potentially concurrently. Additionally, there may be HTTP proxy in between the NF consumer and NF producer that could cause messages to be delivered out of order. This can lead to race conditions that may result in the wrong information maintained by the NF consumer or NF producer of a policy association.

Note that race conditions occur in different ways based on the application. Also, their impact is specific to the application.

9.2 Procedures

This clause describes the optional procedures for handling race conditions in a deterministic manner. These procedures apply to the SMF (Npcf_SMPolicyControl service), AMF (Npcf_AMFPolicyControl service and Npcf_UEPolicyControl service), and PCF (Npcf_SMPolicyControl service, Npcf_AMFPolicyControl service and Npcf_UEPolicyControl service).

In this clause, the terms NF consumer and NF producer are relative to the service. As an example, for the Npcf_SMPolicyControl service, the NF consumer is the SMF and the NF producer is the PCF. The term NF can refer to either a NF consumer or a NF producer. The term "transaction" refers to a HTTP request and its associated response. The term "ongoing transaction" refers to a transaction that has an outstanding response.

A node that supports the procedures defined in this clause and is configured to comply with them, shall advertise such support by including the corresponding "PendingTransaction" feature within the attribute of SupportedFeatures data type during the policy association establishment.

On receipt of a HTTP request for an existing policy association, the recipient NF shall check if it has an ongoing transaction on that policy association:

1. If there are no ongoing transactions on the policy association, the NF shall process the incoming request normally.
2. If there is an ongoing transaction on the policy association and optionally, if the recipient NF cannot determine that the incoming request can be safely handled without creating a state mismatch:
 - a. The NF consumer shall reject the incoming request and include in an HTTP "400 Bad Request" response message the "cause" attribute of the ProblemDetails data structure set to "PENDING_TRANSACTION".
 - b. The NF producer shall either reject the incoming request and include in an HTTP "400 Bad Request" response message the "cause" attribute of the ProblemDetails data structure set to "PENDING_TRANSACTION" or shall wait for one of the following conditions to occur:
 - i. The ongoing transaction completes. In this case, the policy association is updated at the NF producer on the completion of the ongoing transaction and afterwards, the incoming request (e.g. HTTP POST) is processed normally based on the updated policy association state.
 - ii. The waiting period has exceeded its allotted time. In this case, the NF producer shall reject the incoming request and include in an HTTP "400 Bad Request" response message the "cause" attribute of the ProblemDetails data structure set to "PENDING_TRANSACTION".
3. On receipt of a "PENDING_TRANSACTION" error code, an NF consumer shall retry the request. On the other hand, if an NF producer had rejected a request from an NF consumer with a "PENDING_TRANSACTION" error code, the NF producer should not retry the failed request until it responds to the re-attempted request from the NF consumer. This is to avoid having both the NF consumer and NF producer concurrently retry their requests. In all other cases, if the policy association on the NF consumer still needs to be updated, the NF producer shall retry the request.
4. The NF consumer or NF producer should limit the number of times they re-attempt the same request due to receipt of a "PENDING_TRANSACTION" error code.
5. The only exception to the rules above is a policy association termination request initiated by the NF consumer (e.g. HTTP POST with request URI to "{apiRoot}/npcf-smpolicycontrol/<apiVersion>/sm-policies/{smPolicyId}/delete") or a request for policy association termination initiated by the NF producer (e.g. HTTP POST with request URI to "{notificationUri}/terminate"). In both cases, the request should be handled as follows:

- a. When receiving a request for a policy association termination initiated by the NF producer that requires new transactions to be initiated or existing transactions to be finished, a NF consumer shall acknowledge the request immediately (e.g. a HTTP POST message with request URI to "{NotificationUri}/terminate" shall be acknowledged with a 204 No Content response). The NF consumer shall wait for the current transaction to complete (either by the NF producer acknowledging the request or rejecting it with the "PENDING_TRANSACTION" application error code) before completing the policy association termination procedure (e.g. before sending the HTTP POST with request URI to "{apiRoot}/npcf-smpolicycontrol/<apiVersion>/sm-policies/{smPolicyId}/delete").

NOTE: The client needs to wait for the outcome of the policy association modification to determine if the policy association termination procedure will be used to report information that could not be reported as part of the policy association modification procedure.

- b. When receiving a request for a policy association termination initiated by the NF consumer, the NF producer shall handle it immediately.

Annex A (informative): DRA and BSF coexistence

During the network migration, DRA and BSF may coexist in operator's network. When the AF sends Rx request to the DRA, the DRA can utilize the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation to obtain the relevant PCF address as depicted in figure A-1. The DRA only applies this operation if it has no stored binding information derived from an ongoing Gx session for that subscriber.

NOTE 1: For a UE in the EPC there is a Gx session and the DRA stores the binding information. For a UE in the 5GC the Npcf_SmPolicyControl service is used and the BSF stores the binding information.

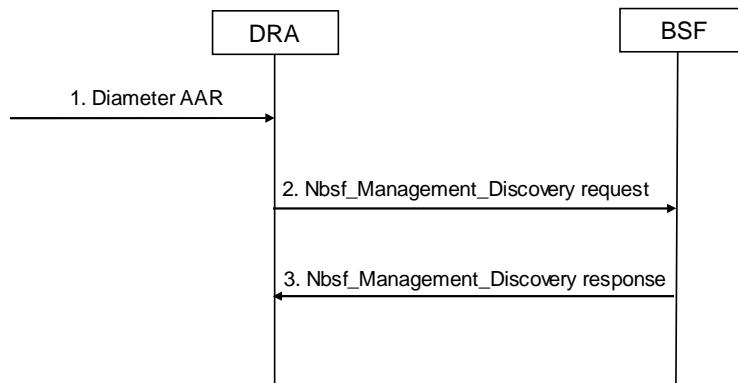


Figure A-1: PCF discovery by DRA via BSF

1. The AF sends a Diameter AAR to the DRA to establish a new Rx diameter session.
2. When receiving the request in step 1, if the DRA has no stored binding information derived from an ongoing Gx session for the subscriber, the DRA invokes the Nbsf_Management_Discovery service operation to the BSF to obtain the selected PCF ID for a certain PDU session.
3. The BSF replies to the DRA with the PCF ID.

NOTE 2: If the DRA has no stored binding information derived from an ongoing Gx session for a subscriber, the DRA needs to request new binding information for each Rx session establishment because the information in the BSF could have changed compared to any previous binding information the DRA requested.

Annex B (normative): Signalling Flows for IMS

The signalling flows in clause 5 are also applicable for IMS services provided for a PLMN or an SNPN. This Annex adds flows that show interactions with SIP/SDP signalling of the IMS when the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service is used by the P-CSCF and both, the PCF and the P-CSCF support the "IMS_SBI" feature, and when the P-CSCF uses the Rx reference point with the PCF.

NOTE 1: In PLMNs or SNPNS where both Rx and Npcf_PolicyAuthorization are used it is implementation specific how the P-CSCF determines the applicable interface/protocol to use with the PCF - e.g. Separate P-CSCF's used for Rx and Npcf_PolicyAuthorization, local routing configuration in the P-CSCF.

NOTE 2: In this Release only IMS voice and emergency services are provided for SNPN. IMS emergency services are not supported for SNPN when the UE accesses the SNPN over NWu via a PLMN.

B.1 General

The following is applicable for Emergency Services and PSAP call back request:

- The P-CSCF includes an Emergency indication when service information is sent over N5/Rx and when required by the IMS deployment. The P-CSCF may also indicate that it requires UE identities as defined in 3GPP TS 29.514 [10] for N5 and 3GPP TS 29.214 [18] for Rx.
- The PCF only allows Emergency Sessions that are bound to a PDU session established to an Emergency DNN.
- Upon request from the P-CSCF, the PCF provides the P-CSCF with UE identities corresponding to the established PDU session.

The following is not applicable for Emergency Services and PSAP call back request:

- Pre-authorization for a UE terminated IMS session establishment with UE initiated resource reservation.
- Subscription to notification of Signalling Path Status at IMS Registration, subscription to notification of changes of access type at IMS Registration and Provisioning of SIP Signalling flow information at IMS Registration procedures.

B.2 IMS Session Establishment

B.2.1 Provisioning of service information at Originating P-CSCF and PCF

This clause covers the PCC procedures for the provisioning of service information, the retrieval of network provided location information (UE location and/or time zone) and the report of EPS fallback indication at the originating P-CSCF and PCF at IMS session establishment.

In figure B.2.1-1 the P-CSCF derives the provisioning of service information to the PCF from the SDP offer/answer exchange.

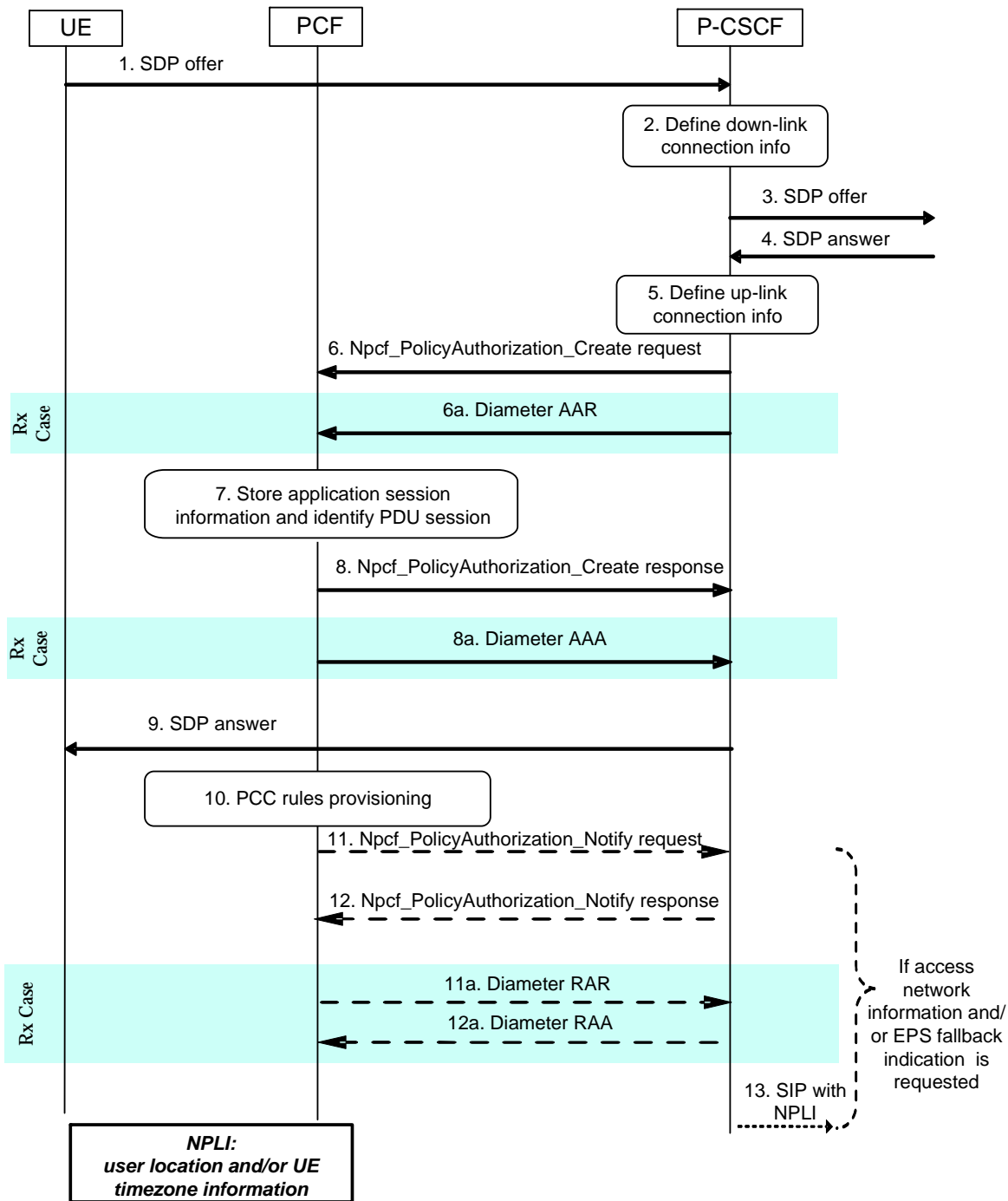


Figure B.2.1-1: PCC Procedures for IMS Session Establishment at originating P-CSCF and PCF

1. The P-CSCF receives the SDP parameters defined by the originator within an SDP offer in SIP signalling.
2. The P-CSCF identifies the connection information needed (IP address of the down link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
3. The P-CSCF forwards the SDP offer in SIP signalling.
4. The P-CSCF gets the negotiated SDP parameters from the terminating side through SIP signalling interaction.
5. The P-CSCF identifies the connection information needed (IP address of the up-link media IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).

6. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to forward the derived session information to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.
 - 6a. The P-CSCF provides session information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for a new Rx Diameter session.
7. The PCF stores application session information and performs session binding. For N5 interface, the PCF creates an "Individual Application Session Context" resource to store the received application session information.
8. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "201 Created" response and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
 - 8a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA to the P-CSCF.
9. Upon reception of the acknowledgement from the PCF, the SDP parameters are passed to the UE in SIP signalling.
10. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2-1. This step implies provisioning of PCC rules and is executed in parallel with steps 8 and 9 (steps 8a and 9a for Rx case).
11. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 6, the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 10, and/or the access network information received in step 10 in an HTTP POST request sent to the Notification URI received in step 6.
 - 11a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 6a, the PCF forwards the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 10, and the access network information received in step 10 in a Diameter RAR.
12. If step 11 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
 - 12a. If step 11a occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
13. If step 11 occurs (step 11a for Rx case), the P-CSCF forwards the network provided location information in a subsequent SIP message to IMS core network. The P-CSCF, based on local configuration, may also include the EPS fallback indication, if received.

Optionally, the provisioning of service information may be derived already from the SDP offer:

- to enable a possible rejection of the service information by the PCF, obtained by the P-CSCF in time to reject the service with appropriate SIP signalling;
- to allow the P-CSCF to request network provided location information for inclusion in the SDP offer;
- to support authentication of roaming users in deployments with no IMS-level roaming interfaces; or
- to support PSAP callback functionality for anonymous IMS emergency sessions.

This is described in figure B.2.1-2.

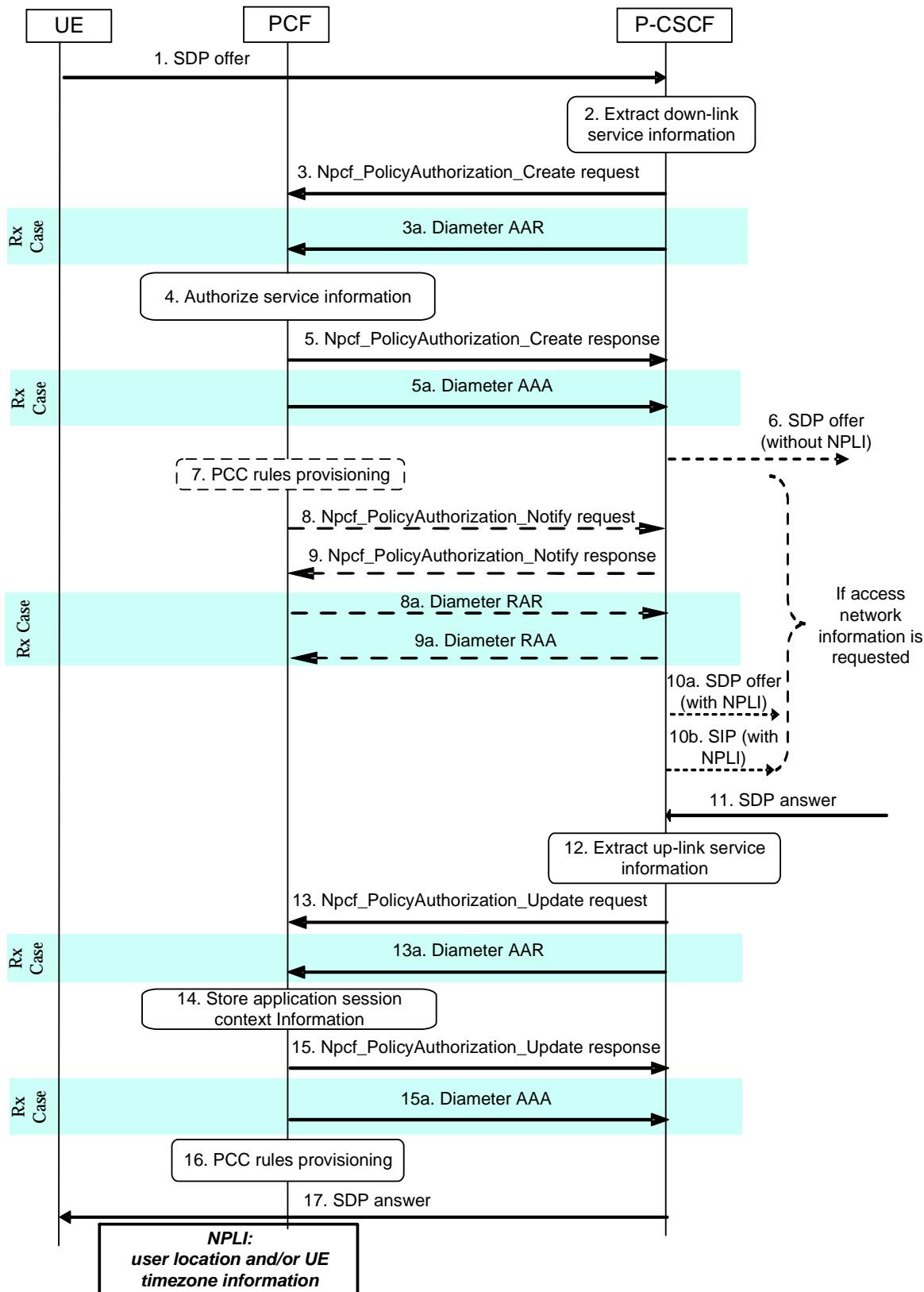


Figure B.2.1-2: PCC Procedures for IMS Session Establishment at originating P-CSCF and PCF, provisioning of service information derived from SDP offer and answer

1. The P-CSCF receives the first SDP offer for a new SIP dialogue within a SIP INVITE request.

2. The P-CSCF extracts service information from the SDP offer (IP address of the down link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
3. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to forward the derived service information to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource. It indicates that only an authorization check of the service information is requested.
 - 3a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for a new Rx Diameter session. It indicates that only an authorization check of the service information is requested.
4. The PCF checks and authorizes the service information, stores session information, performs session binding, but does not provision PCC rules at this stage. In case of N5 interface, the PCF creates an "Individual Application Session Context" resource to store the application session information.
5. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with an HTTP "201 Created" response and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
 - 5a. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a Diameter AAA.
6. If the P-CSCF did not request access network information in step 3 (or step 3a for Rx case), or if the P-CSCF requested access network information but does not require the access network information for inclusion in the SDP offer, or the P-CSCF requested user information in step 3 (or step 3a for Rx case) the P-CSCF forwards the SDP offer in SIP signalling.
7. If the P-CSCF requested access network information in step 3 (or step 3a for Rx case), the PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2-1. This step implies provisioning of PCC rules.
8. If the P-CSCF requested access network information in step 3, the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the access network information received in step 7 in an HTTP POST request sent to the Notification URI received in step 3.
 - 8a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information in step 3a, the PCF forwards the access network information received in step 7 in a Diameter RAR.
9. If step 8 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
 - 9a. If step 8a occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
- 10a. If step 8 occurs (or step 8a for Rx case), and if the P-CSCF requires to send the access network information and the SDP offer together, the P-CSCF includes the SDP offer and the network provided location information in the next SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network.
- 10b. If step 8 occurs (or step 8a for Rx case), and if it is allowed for the P-CSCF to handle the access network information independently of the SDP offer, the P-CSCF includes the network provided location information in a subsequent SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network. Typically, network provided information is sent after step 17 rather than at step 10.
11. The P-CSCF receives the negotiated SDP parameters from the terminating side within a SDP answer in SIP signalling.
12. The P-CSCF extracts service information from the SDP answer (IP address of the up-link media IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
13. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation to modify the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the PCF by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the derived service information. Access network information is not requested if done in step 7.
 - 13a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR over the existing Rx Diameter session. Access network information is not requested if done in step 7.
14. The PCF stores the received information. In case of N5 interface, the PCF updates the "Individual Application Session Context" with the received application session information.
15. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with an HTTP "204 No Content" response.

- 15a. The PCF replies the P-CSCF with a Diameter AAA.
16. The PCF authorizes the session information. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2-1. This step implies provisioning of PCC rules and authorized QoS.
17. Upon successful authorization of the session, the SDP parameters are passed to the UE in SIP signalling. This step is executed in parallel with step 16.

B.2.2 Provisioning of service information at terminating P-CSCF and PCF

This clause covers the PCC procedures for the provisioning of service information, the retrieval of network provided location information (UE location and/or time zone) and the report of EPS fallback indication at the terminating P-CSCF and PCF at IMS session establishment.

In figure B.2.2-1 the P-CSCF derives the provisioning of service information to the PCF from the SDP offer/answer exchange.

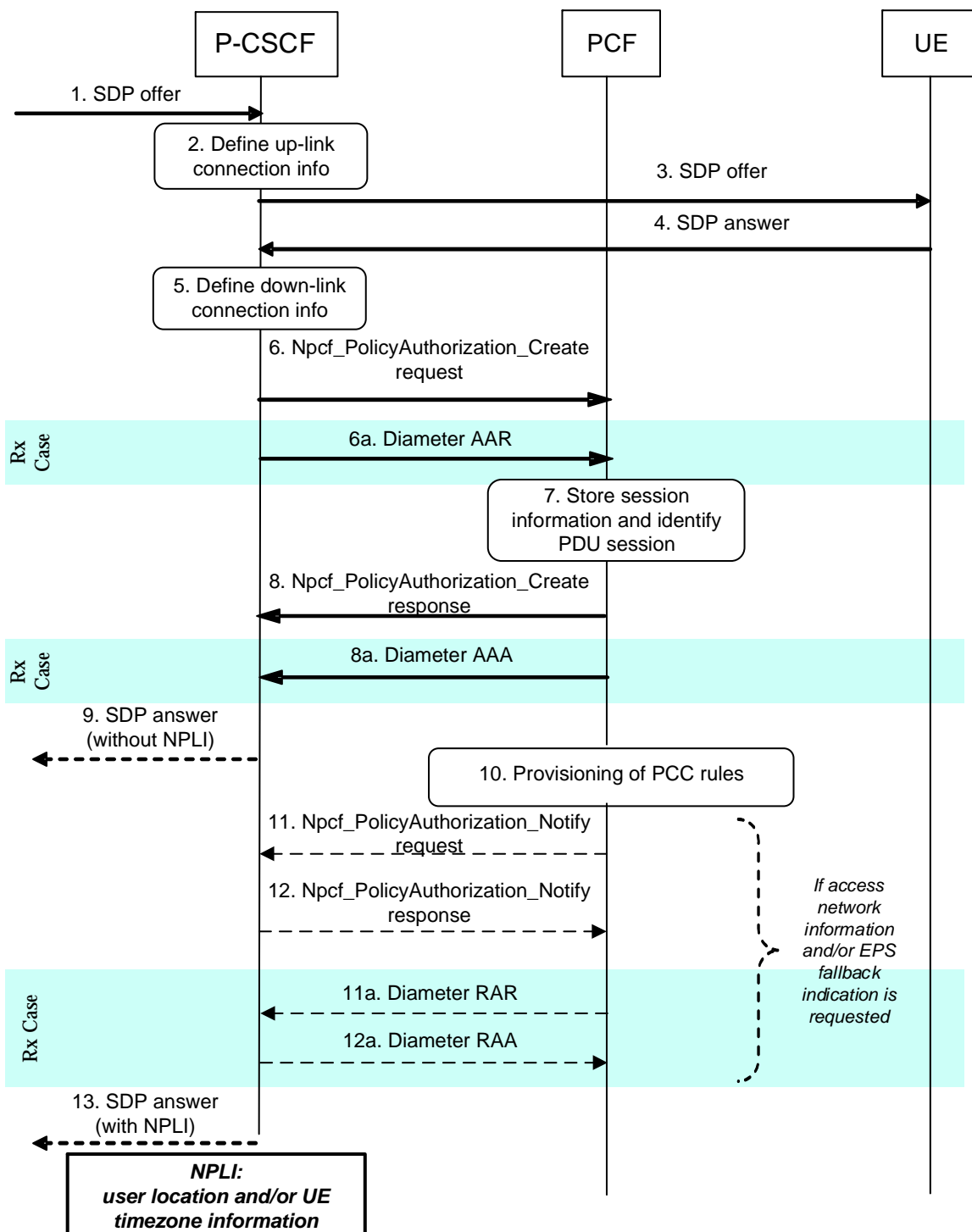


Figure B.2.2-1: PCC Procedures for IMS Session Establishment at terminating P-CSCF and PCF

1. The P-CSCF receives the SDP parameters defined by the originator.
2. The P-CSCF identifies the connection information needed (IP address of the up-link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
3. The P-CSCF sends the SDP offer to the UE.

4. The P-CSCF receives the negotiated SDP parameters from the UE.
5. The P-CSCF identifies the connection information needed (IP address of the down-link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
6. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to forward the derived service information to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.
 - 6a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for a new Rx Diameter session.
7. The PCF stores the received session information, and performs session binding. For the N5 interface, the PCF creates an "Individual Application Session Context" resource to store the received application session information.
8. The PCF sends an HTTP "201 Created" response to the P-CSCF and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
 - 8a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA to the P-CSCF.
9. If the P-CSCF did not request access network information in step 6 (or step 6a for the Rx case), upon reception of the acknowledgement from the PCF, the SDP parameters in the SDP answer are passed to the originator.
10. The PCF executes interactions according to clause 5.2.2.2.1 This step implies provisioning of PCC rules and is executed in parallel with steps 8 (or step 8a for the Rx case) and 9.
11. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 6, the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward EPS fallback indication, if received in step 10, and/or the access network information received in step 10 by sending an HTTP POST request to the Notification URI received in step 6.
 - 11a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback in step 6a, the PCF forwards the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 10, and/or the access network information received in step 10 in a Diameter RAR.
12. If step 11 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response.
 - 12a. If step 11a occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
13. If step 11 occurs (or step 11a for the Rx case), the P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer and includes the network provided location information in the next SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network. The P-CSCF, based on local configuration, may include the EPS fallback indication in outgoing SIP messages towards other IMS nodes, if received.

Optionally, the provisioning of service information may be derived already from the SDP offer:

- to enable that a possible rejection of the service information by the PCF is obtained by the P-CSCF in time to reject the service with appropriate SIP signalling; or
- to enable pre-authorization for a UE terminated IMS session establishment with UE initiated resource reservation.

This is described in figure B.2.2-2.

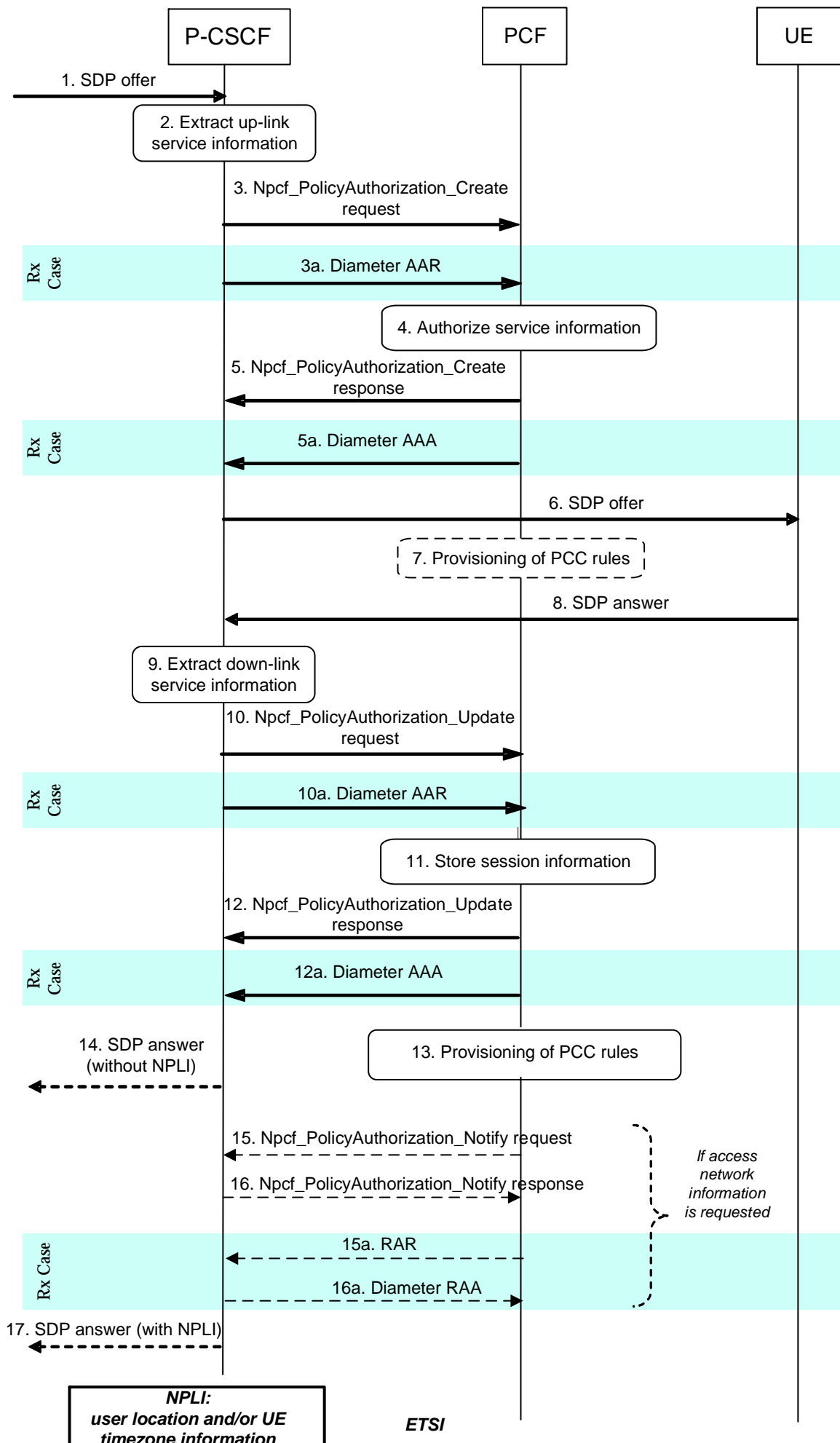


Figure B.2.2-2: PCC Procedures for IMS Session Establishment at terminating P-CSCF and PCF, provisioning of service information derived from SDP offer and answer

1. The P-CSCF receives the first SDP offer for a new SIP dialogue within SIP signalling, e.g. within a SIP INVITE request.
2. The P-CSCF extracts the service information from the SDP offer (IP address of the up-link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
3. The P-CSCF invokes the `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create` service operation to forward the derived session information to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.
 - 3a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR for a new Rx Diameter session.

The P-CSCF indicates to the PCF that the service information that the AF has provided to the PCF is preliminary and needs to be further negotiated between the two ends. The P-CSCF may request access network information and/or EPS fallback indication.

4. The PCF checks and authorizes the session information, performs session binding, but does not provision PCC rules at this stage. In case of N5 interface, the PCF creates an "Individual Application Session Context" resource,
5. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with an HTTP "201 Created" response and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
 - 5a. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a Diameter AAA.
6. The P-CSCF sends the SDP offer to the UE.
7. If the UE initiates a QoS flow modification request, the PCF provides the SMF with PCC rules according to figure 5.2.2.2-1 based on the SDP offer.

NOTE: Step 7 is not applicable for IMS Emergency Sessions.

8. The P-CSCF receives the negotiated SDP parameters from the UE within an SDP answer in SIP signalling.
9. The P-CSCF extracts service information from the SDP answer (IP address of the down-link IP flow(s), port numbers to be used, etc.).
10. The P-CSCF invokes the `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update` service operation to modify the "Individual Application Session Context" resource by sending to the PCF an HTTP PATCH request to the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the derived service information. The P-CSCF may request access network information and/or EPS fallback information if not requested in step 3.
 - 10a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR over the existing Rx Diameter session. The P-CSCF may request access network information and/or EPS fallback information if not requested in step 3a.
11. The PCF stores the received session information. In case of N5 interface, the updates the "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the received session information.
12. The PCF sends an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the P-CSCF.
 - 12a. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a Diameter AAA.
13. The PCF authorizes the session information. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2-1. This step implies provisioning of PCC rules and authorized QoS.
14. If the P-CSCF did not request access network information in step 3 or 10 (step 3a or 10a for Rx case), upon successful authorization of the session the SDP parameters in the SDP answer are passed to the originator. This step is executed in parallel with step 12 (step 12a for Rx case).
15. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 3 or 10, the PCF invokes the `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify` service operation to forward the EPS fallback indication, if

received in step 13, and the access network information received in step 13 in an HTTP POST request to the Notification URI received in in step 3 or 10.

15a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 3a or 10a, the PCF forwards the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 13, and the access network information received in step 13 in a Diameter RAR.

16. If step 15 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

16a. If step 15a occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.

17. If step 15 occurs (step 15a for Rx case), the P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer and includes the network provided location information in the next SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network. The P-CSCF, based on local configuration, may include the EPS fallback indication in outgoing SIP messages towards other IMS nodes, if received.

B.3 IMS Session Modification

B.3.1 Provisioning of service information

This clause covers the provisioning of service information and the retrieval of network provided location information (UE location and/or time zone), and for the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization service, the report of EPS fallback indication, at IMS session modification both at the originating and terminating side.

In figure B.3.1-1 the P-CSCF derives the provisioning of service information to the PCF from the SDP offer/answer exchange.

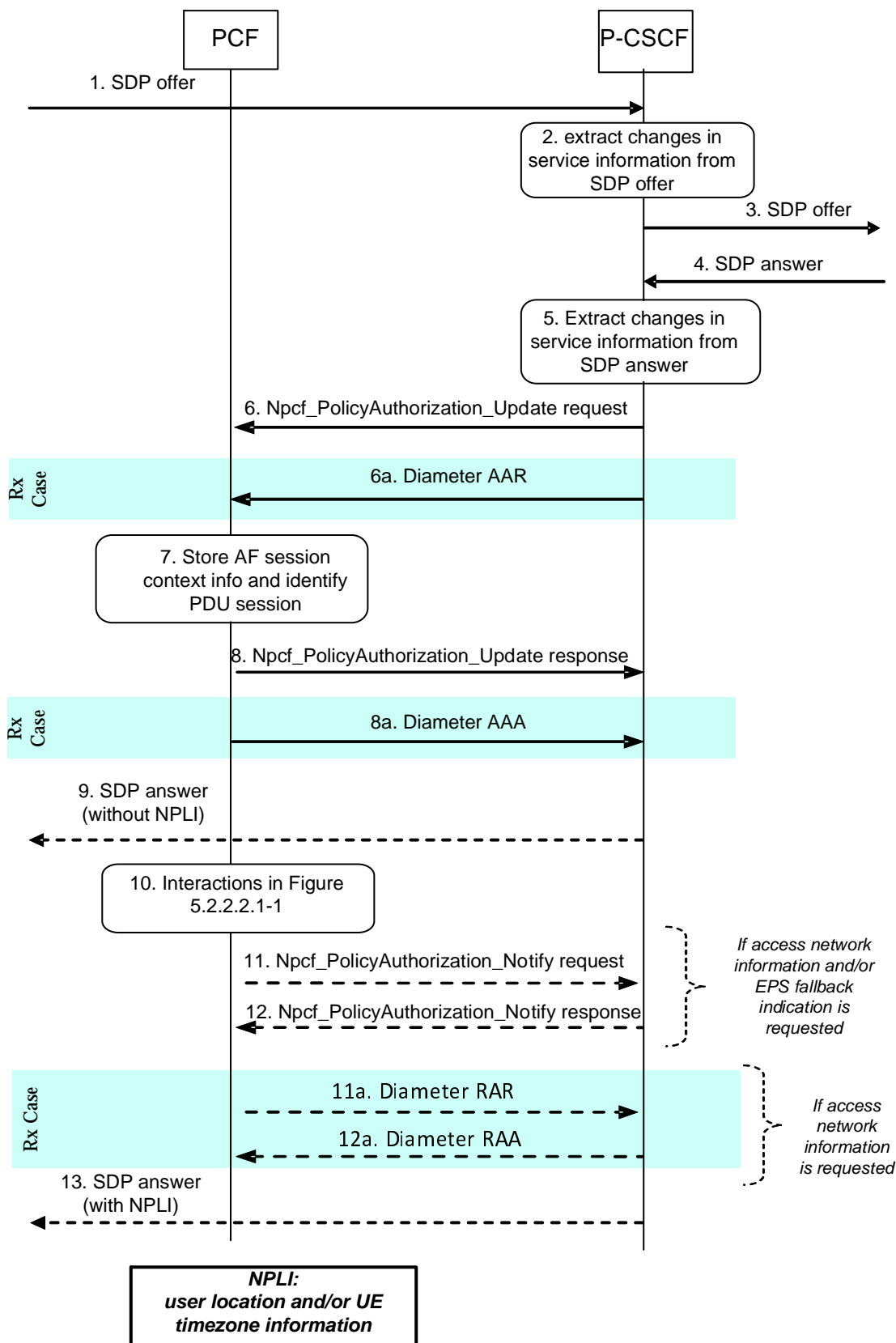


Figure B.3.1-1: Provisioning of service information at IMS session modification

1. The P-CSCF receives the SDP parameters defined by the originator within an SDP offer in SIP signalling.
2. The P-CSCF identifies the relevant changes in the SDP.

3. The P-CSCF forwards the SDP offer in SIP signalling.
4. The P-CSCF gets the negotiated SDP parameters from the terminating side through SIP signalling interaction.
5. The P-CSCF identifies the relevant changes in the SDP.
6. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource, and includes the derived updated information.
 - 6a. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR for an existing Diameter session and includes the derived updated service information.
7. The PCF stores the received updated session information and identifies the affected established PDU Session. For N5 interface, the PCF updates the "Individual Application Session Context" resource.
8. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response.
 - 8a. The PCF answers with a Diameter AAA.
9. If the P-CSCF did not request access network information in step 6 (step 6a for Rx case), the P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer in SIP signalling.
10. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2.1-1. Due to the updated service information, this step may imply provisioning of PCC rules or the need to enable or disable IP Flows (see clauses B.3.2 and B.3.3, respectively).
11. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 6, the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 10, and/or the access network information received in step 10 in an HTTP POST request sent to the Notification URI received in step 6
 - 11a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information in step 6a, the PCF forwards the access network information received in step 10 in a Diameter RAR.
12. If step 11 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
 - 12a. If step 11 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
13. If step 11 occurs (step 11a for Rx case), the P-CSCF includes the SDP answer and the network provided location information in the next SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network.

Optionally, the provisioning of service information may be derived already from the SDP offer to:

- enable that a possible rejection of the service information by the PCF is obtained by the P-CSCF in time to reject the service with appropriate SIP signalling; or
- enable pre-authorization for a UE terminated IMS session establishment with UE initiated resource reservation.

This is described in figure B.3.1-2.

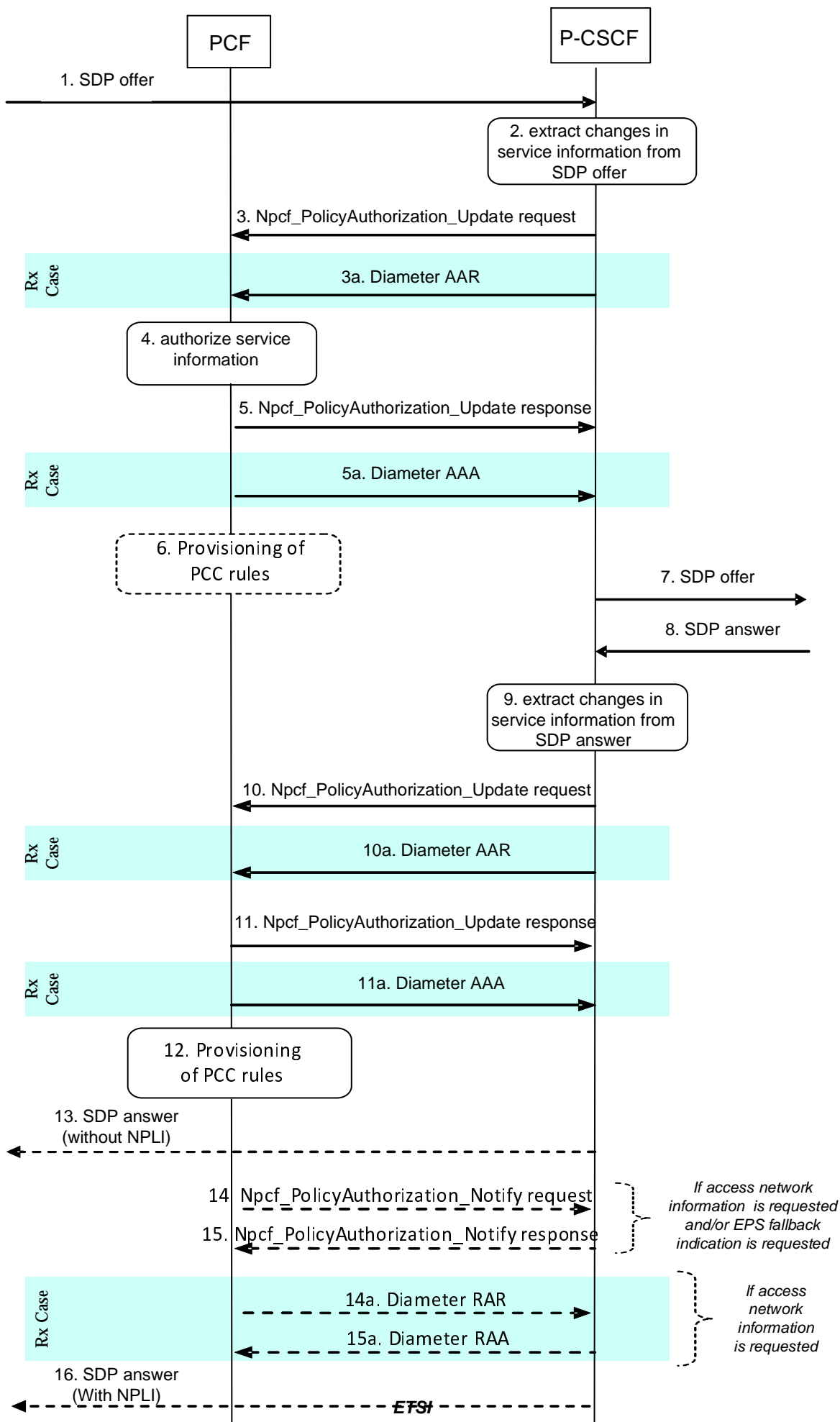


Figure B.3.1-2: Provisioning of service information derived from SDP offer and answer at IMS session modification

1. The P-CSCF receives an SDP offer in SIP signalling for an exiting SIP dialogue.
2. The P-CSCF identifies the relevant changes in the SDP and extracts the corresponding service information.
3. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource created for the corresponding SIP session, and updates the PCF with the derived updated information.
 - 3a. The P-CSCF forwards the derived service information to the PCF by sending a Diameter AAR over the existing Rx Diameter session for the corresponding SIP session.

The P-CSCF request indicates that the service information that the AF has provided to the PCF is preliminary and needs to be further negotiated between the two ends.

4. The PCF checks and authorizes the session information, but does not provision PCC rules at this stage.
5. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response
 - 5a. The PCF answers with a Diameter AAA.
6. If the UE initiates a QoS flow resource modification request, the PCF provides the SMF with PCC rules according to figure 5.2.2.3-1 based on the SDP offer.

NOTE: Step 6 is not applicable for IMS Emergency Sessions.

7. The P-CSCF forwards the SDP offer in SIP signalling.
8. The P-CSCF receives the negotiated SDP parameters within an SDP answer in SIP signalling from the terminating side.
9. The P-CSCF identifies the relevant changes in the SDP and extracts the corresponding service information.
10. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource, and includes the derived updated information.
 - 10a. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR for an existing Diameter session and includes the derived updated service information.
11. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response
 - 11a. The PCF answers with a Diameter AAA.
12. The PCF interacts with the SMF according to figure 5.2.2.2.2-1. This step may imply provisioning of PCC rules and authorized QoS. The PCF may need to enable or disable IP Flows (see clauses B.3.2 and B.3.3, respectively) due to the updated service information.
13. If the P-CSCF did not request access network information in step 3 (step 3a for the Rx case) or step 10 (step 10a for the Rx case), the P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer in SIP signalling. This step is executed in parallel with step 12.
14. If the P-CSCF requested access network information and/or EPS fallback indication in step 3 or 10, the PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the EPS fallback indication, if received in step 12, and/or the access network information received in step 12.
 - 14a. If the P-CSCF requested access network information in step 3a or 10a, the PCF forwards the access network information received in step 12 in a Diameter RAR.
15. If step 14 occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the notification with a HTTP "204 No Content" response.
 - 15a. If step 14a occurs, the P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
16. If step 14 occurs (or step 14a for the Rx case), the P-CSCF includes the SDP answer and the network provided location information in the next SIP message the P-CSCF sends towards the IMS core network.

B.3.2 Enabling of IP Flows

The PCF makes a final decision to enable the allocated QoS resource for the authorized IP flows of the media component(s) if the QoS resources are not enabled at the time they are authorized by the PCF (e.g. because of gate control of early media) or if the media IP flow(s) previously placed on hold are resumed, i.e. the media IP flow(s) of the media component that was placed on hold at the time of the resource authorization or at a later stage is reactivated (with SDP direction sendrecv, sendonly, recvonly or none direction).

The Enabling of IP Flows procedure is triggered during the early dialog by the P-CSCF receiving the SIP message (e.g. 18x response on initial INVITE request) with the P-Early-Media header field indicating request for authorization of early media as described in clause B.2.2 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

NOTE: Enabling of IP Flows is also possible as part of preliminary responses in order to support SIP Forking scenarios. See clause B.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

The Enabling of IP Flows procedure is triggered during the confirmed dialog by the P-CSCF receiving SIP 2xx response to an INVITE request or a 2xx response to an in-dialog UPDATE request in an established dialog (in both cases a 200 OK response is usually received). When receiving such responses, the P-CSCF shall take the SDP direction attribute in the latest received SDP (either within the 2xx response or a previous SIP message) into account when deciding, which gates shall be opened:

- For a unidirectional SDP media component, IP flows in the opposite direction shall not be enabled.
- For an inactive SDP media component, no IP flows shall be enabled.

Figure B.3.2-1 is applicable to the originating and terminating sides for a confirmed dialog.

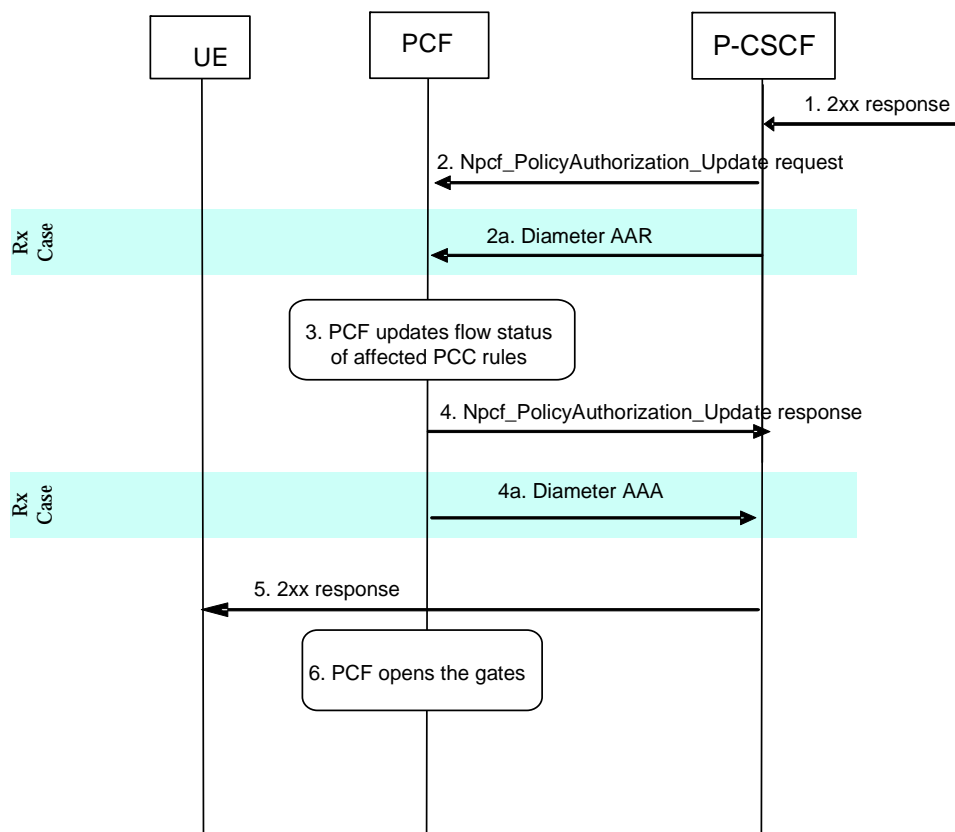


Figure B.3.2-1: Enabling of IP Flows

1. The P-CSCF receives the SIP 2xx response complying with the conditions specified in the paragraphs above.

2. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource to the PCF requesting that gates shall be opened.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR message to the PCF, requesting that gates shall be opened.
3. The PCF approves the enabling of IP flows and PCF updates flow status of affected PCC rules.
4. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response.
 - 4a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA to the P-CSCF.
5. The P-CSCF forwards the SIP 2xx response to the UE.
6. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2.2.2-1. This step implies opening the "gates" by updating the flow status of PCC rules.

B.3.3 Disabling of IP Flows

The Disabling of IP Flows procedure is used when media IP flow(s) of a session are put on hold (e.g. in case of a media re-negotiation or call hold).

NOTE 1: Disabling of IP Flows is also possible as part of preliminary responses in order to support SIP Forking scenarios. See clause B.3.1 of 3GPP TS 29.514 [10].

Media is placed on hold as specified in IETF RFC 3264 [43]. Media modified to become inactive (SDP direction attribute) shall also be considered to be put on hold.

If a bidirectional media component is placed on hold by making it unidirectional, the IP flows shall only be disabled in the deactivated direction. If a media component is placed on hold by making it inactive, the IP flows shall be disabled in both directions.

Figure B.3.3-1 presents the Disabling of IP Flows procedure at media on hold for both the originating and terminating sides.

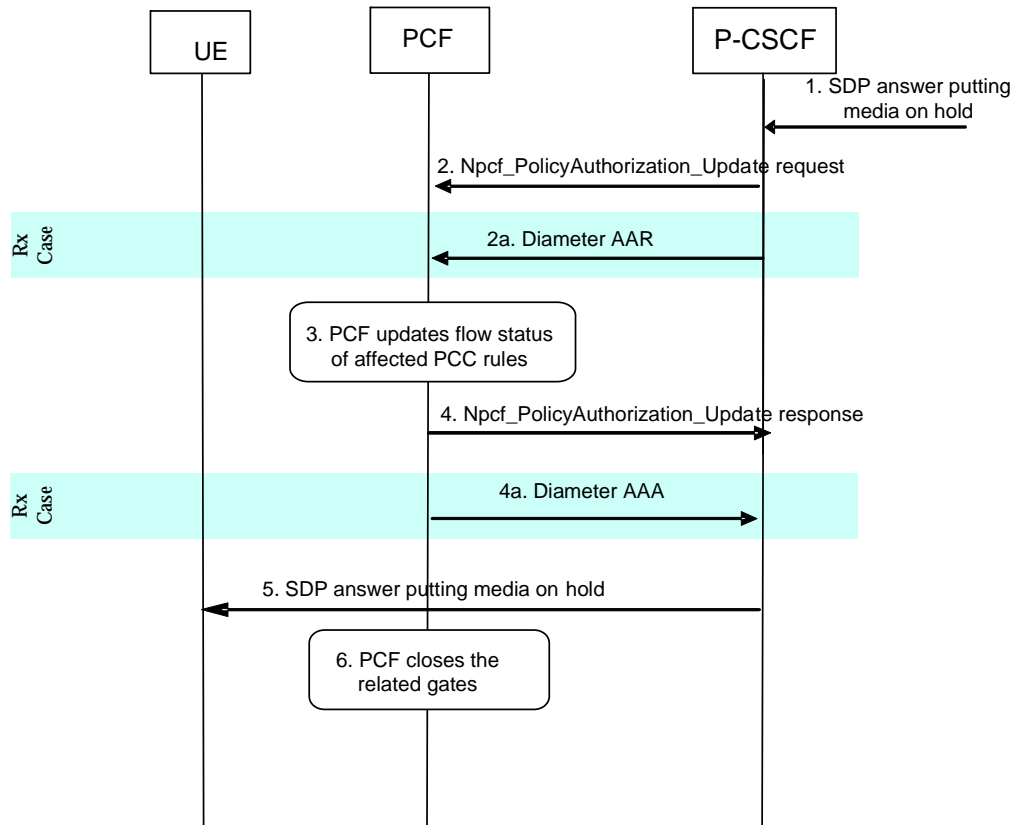


Figure B.3.3-1: Disabling of IP Flows at Media on Hold

1. The P-CSCF receives an SDP answer putting media on hold within a SIP message. (NOTE 2)
2. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource to the PCF requesting that gates shall be closed.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR request to the PCF, requesting that gates shall be closed.
3. The PCF updates flow status of affected PCC rules for the media on hold.
4. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response.
 - 4a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA message back to the P-CSCF.
5. The P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer putting media on hold within a SIP message.
6. The PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2.2.2-1. This step implies closing the relevant media IP flow gate(s), leaving the possible related RTCP gate(s) open to keep the connection alive.

NOTE 2: This procedure occurs whenever a bidirectional media is made unidirectional or when a media is changed to inactive.

B.3.4 Media Component Removal

Figure B.3.4-1 presents the flows of PCC procedures at the removal of media component(s) from an IMS session which is not being released for both the originating and terminating sides.

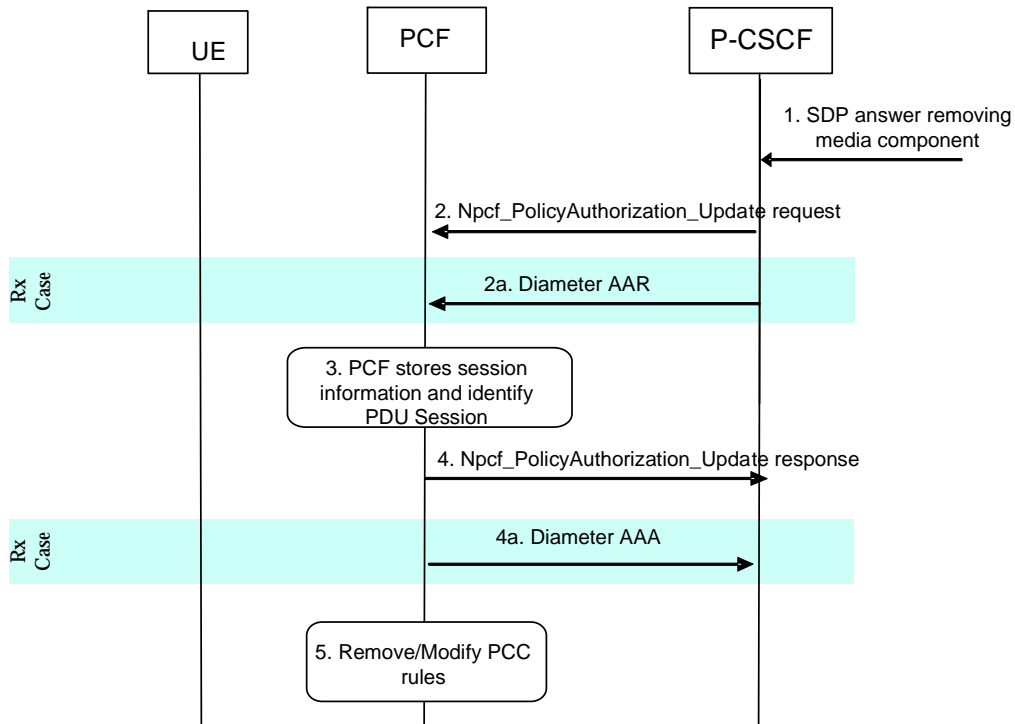


Figure B.3.4-1: Revoke authorization for IP resources at media component removal for both originating and terminating sides

1. A SIP message containing SDP indicating the removal of media component(s) is received by the P-CSCF.
2. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Update service operation by sending an HTTP PATCH request to the "Individual Application Session Context" resource to the PCF with modified service information.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF sends Diameter AAR to the PCF with modified service information.
3. The PCF stores the AF session information and identifies the affected PDU session.
4. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "200 OK" response.
 - 4a. The PCF sends a Diameter AAA message back to the P-CSCF.
5. The P-CSCF forwards the SDP answer removing a media component.
6. The PCF makes a decision on what PCC rules need to be modified or removed and executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2.2.2-1.

B.4 IMS Session Termination

B.4.1 Mobile initiated session release / Network initiated session release

Figure B.4.1-1 represents the mobile or network initiated IMS session release without access network information retrieval. The session release may be signalled by a SIP BYE request, or any SIP 3xx redirect response, or any 4xx, 5xx, or 6xx SIP final error response to an initial INVITE request. If any 4xx, 5xx, or 6xx SIP final error response to Re-INVITE or UPDATE request just terminates the transaction, then the session is not released, otherwise if the error response terminates the dialog then the session is released.

Figures B.4.1-2 and B.4.1-3 presents the network initiated and the mobile initiated IMS session release with access network information retrieval, respectively.

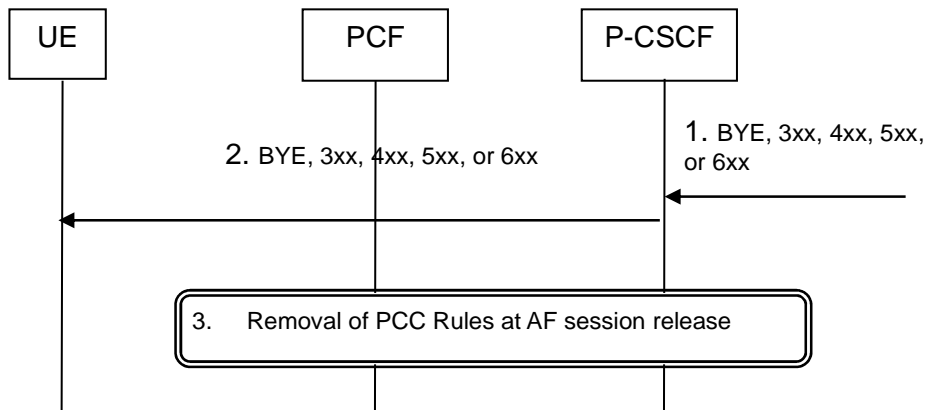


Figure B.4.1-1: IMS session termination without access network information retrieval

1. SIP BYE request, a SIP 3xx redirect response, or any 4xx, 5xx, or 6xx SIP final error response to an initial INVITE or any 4xx, 5xx, or 6xx SIP final error response to Re-INVITE or UPDATE which terminates the dialog is received by the P-CSCF.
2. P-CSCF forwards the BYE request, or the SIP 3xx redirect response, or any 4xx, 5xx, or 6xx SIP final error response.
3. The interactions in Figure 5.2.2.2.3-1 are applicable.

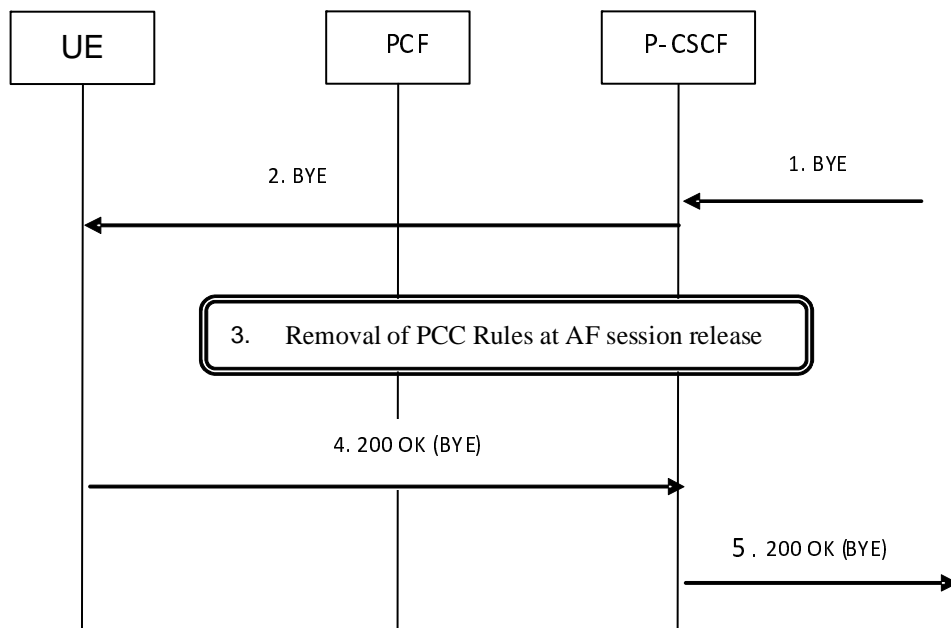


Figure B.4.1-2: network initiated IMS session termination with access network information retrieval

1. SIP BYE request is received by the P-CSCF.
2. The P-CSCF forwards the BYE request.
3. In parallel to step 2, the interactions in Figure 5.2.2.2.3-1 take place. Within those interactions, the P-CSCF requests and receives the access network information.
4. The P-CSCF receives the SIP 200 OK (BYE) response.
5. The P-CSCF forwards the SIP 200 OK (BYE) response. It includes the access networking information obtained in step 3 as the network provided location information.

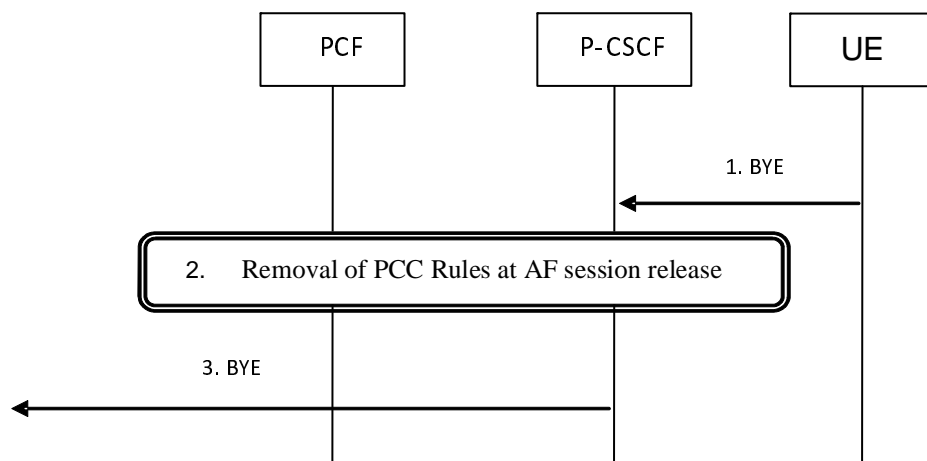


Figure B.4.1-3: mobile initiated IMS session termination with access network information retrieval

1. SIP BYE request is received by the P-CSCF.
2. The interactions in Figure 5.2.2.2.3-1 are applicable. Within those interactions, the P-CSCF requests and receives the access network information.
3. The P-CSCF forwards the BYE request. It includes the access network information obtained in step 2 as the network provided location information.

B.4.2 QoS Flow Release/Loss

A QoS flow release may affect all IP-Flows within an IMS Session. Flows in Figure 5.2.2.3-1 apply.

B.5 Subscription to Notification of Signalling Path Status at IMS Registration

This clause covers the optional Subscription to Notifications of IMS Signalling Path Status upon an initial successful IMS Registration procedure.

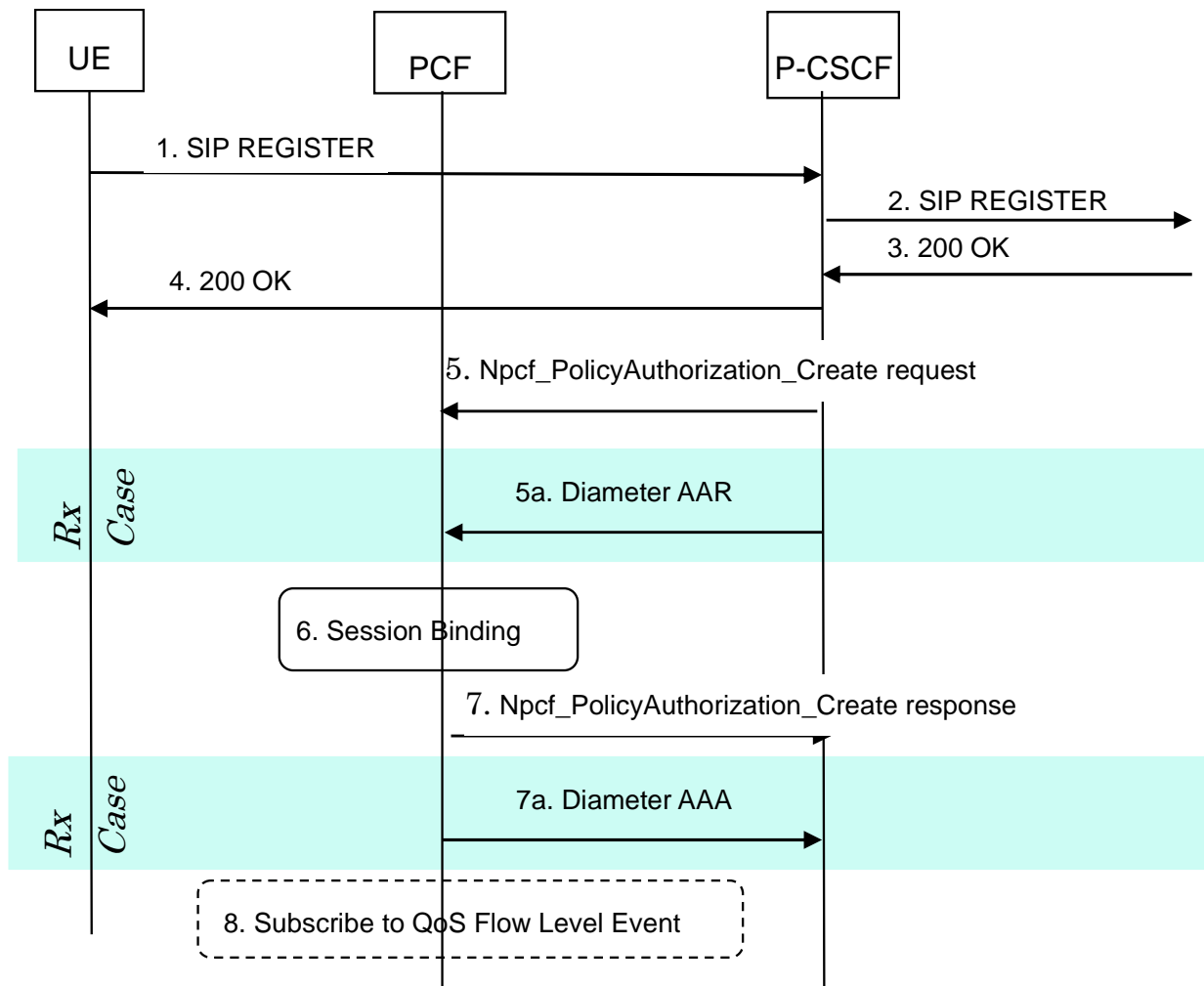


Figure B.5-1: Subscription to Notification of IMS Signaling Path Status at initial IMS Registration

- 1-4. The user initiates an initial SIP Registration procedure. The SIP Registration procedure is completed successfully (user has been authenticated and registered within the IMS Core NW).
5. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention to subscribe to the status of the IMS Signaling path. The P-CSCF sends an HTTP POST request message to the PCF.
- 5a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention to subscribe to the status of the IMS Signaling path. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.
6. The PCF performs session binding and identifies corresponding PCC Rules related to IMS Signalling.
7. The PCF confirms the subscription to IMS Signaling path status and replies with an HTTP "201 Created" message back to the P-CSCF.
- 7a. The PCF confirms the subscription to IMS Signaling path status and replies with a Diameter AAA command back to the P-CSCF.
8. If the PCF had not previously subscribed to the required QoS level events from the PDU session for the affected PCC Rules, then the PCF shall do so now. The PCR initiates procedures according to figure 5.2.2.2.1-1.

B.6 Provisioning of SIP signalling flow information at IMS Registration

This clause covers the optional Provisioning of SIP signalling flow information upon an initial successful IMS Registration procedure.

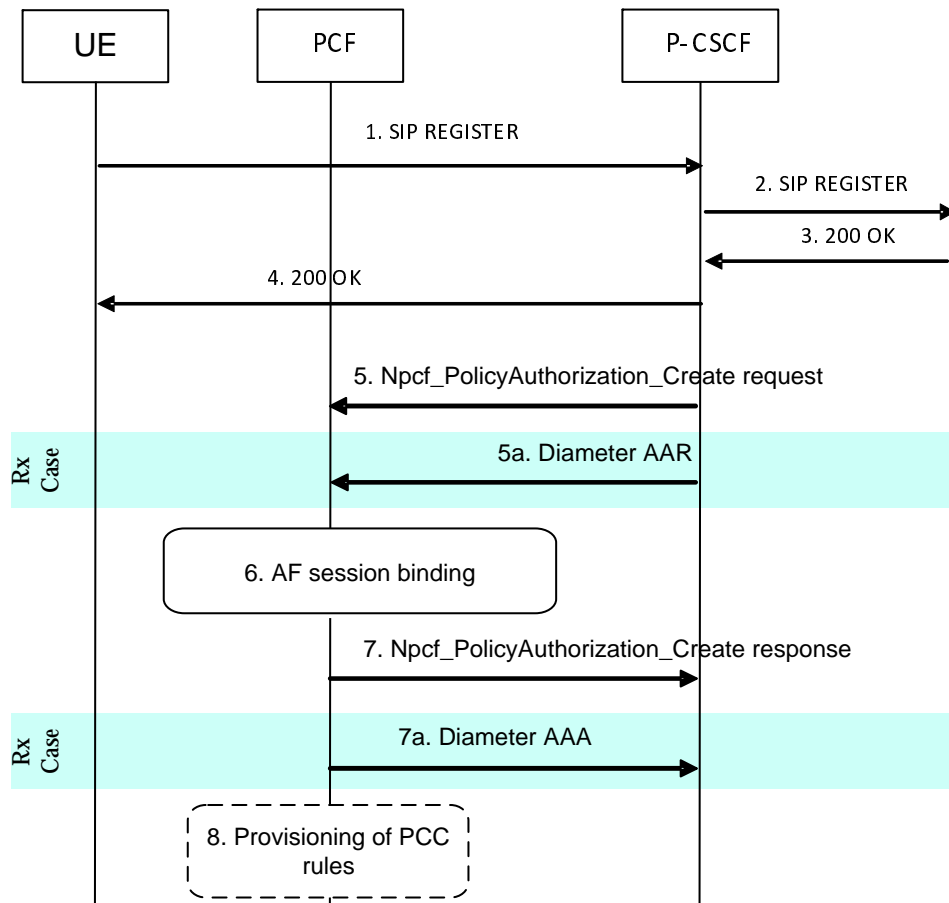


Figure B.6-1: Provisioning of SIP Signalling Flow Information at initial IMS Registration

- 1-4. The user initiates an initial SIP Registration procedure. The SIP Registration procedure is completed successfully (user has been authenticated and registered within the IMS Core NW).
5. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention to provision the information about the SIP signalling flows established between the UE and the P-CSCF. The P-CSCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation to the PCF by sending an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.
- 5a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention to provision the information about the SIP signalling flows established between the UE and the P-CSCF. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.
6. The PCF performs session binding and identifies corresponding PCC Rules related to IMS Signalling.
7. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "201 Created" response and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
- 7a. The PCF replies to the P-CSCF with a Diameter AAA.
8. If the PCF had not previously provisioned PCC rules corresponding to the received SIP signalling flows, then the PCF executes interactions according to figure 5.2.2.2.2.1-1. This step implies provisioning of PCC rules.

B.7 Subscription to Notification of Change of Access Type at IMS Registration

This clause covers the optional Subscription to Notifications of change in the access type upon an initial IMS Registration procedure.

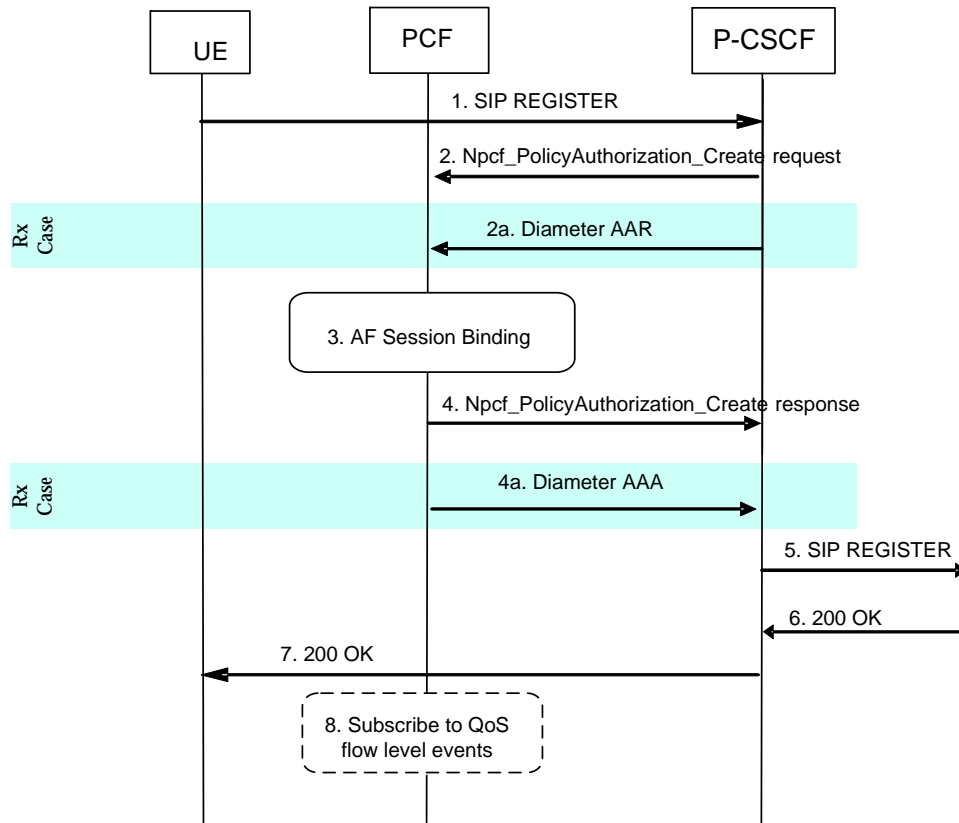


Figure B.7-1: Subscription to Notification of change of IP-CAN Type at initial IMS Registration

- 1.- The user initiates an initial SIP Registration procedure.
2. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention to subscribe to the notification of access type change by invoking the `Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create` service operation to the PCF. The P-CSCF sends an HTTP POST request to the "Application Sessions" resource.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention to subscribe to the notification of access type change. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.

NOTE: It should be possible for the P-CSCF to request the subscription to notification of IMS Signalling path status and PLMN changes also in this step.

3. The PCF performs session binding and identifies corresponding PCC Rules related to IMS Signalling.
4. The PCF confirms the subscription to notification of access type change and replies to the P-CSCF with a HTTP "201 Created" response and includes the URI of the "Individual Application Session Context" resource in the Location header field.
 - 4a. The PCF confirms the subscription to notification of change of access type and replies with a Diameter AAA command back to the P-CSCF.

The PCF includes in the response the type of access type currently in use.

- 5-7. The SIP Registration procedure is completed successfully (user has been authenticated and registered within the IMS Core NW).
- 8. If the PCF had not previously subscribed to the required QoS flow level event from the access type (i.e. access type change and RAT type change, if applicable), then the PCF shall do so now. The PCF initiates procedures according to figure 5.2.2.2.2.1-1.

B.8 Subscription to Notification of Change of PLMN Identifier at IMS Registration

This clause covers the optional Subscription to Notifications of change in the PLMN identifier upon an initial IMS Registration procedure. The PLMN identifier or SNPN identifier where the UE is currently located is provided within the Notification of change in the PLMN identifier. n2

NOTE 1: The SNPN identifier consists of the PLMN identifier and the NID.

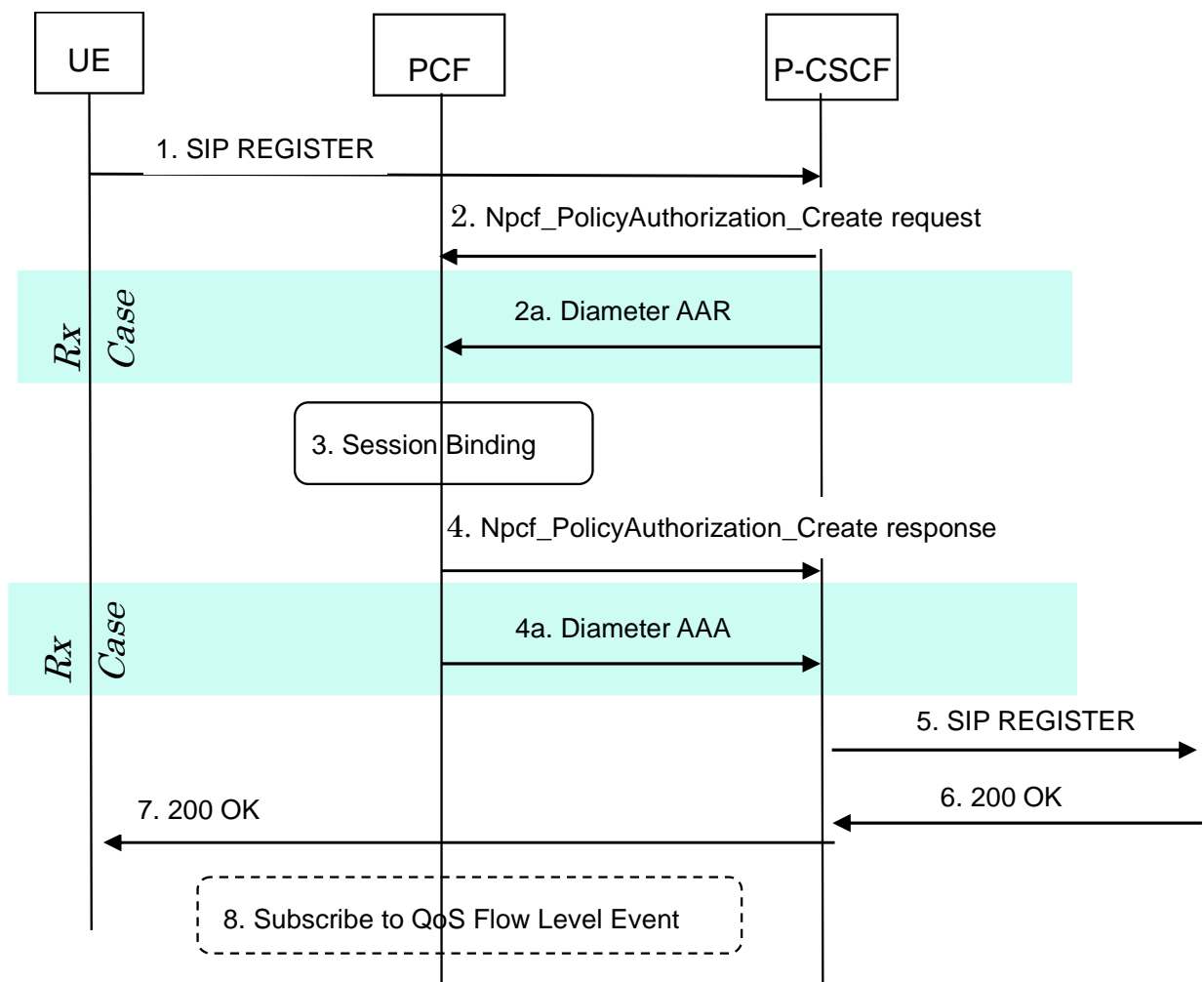


Figure B.8-1: Subscription to Notification of change of PLMN Identifier at initial IMS Registration

- 1. The user initiates an initial SIP Registration procedure.
- 2. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention to subscribe to notification of PLMN Identifier Change. The P-CSCF sends an HTTP POST request message to the PCF.

2a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention to subscribe to notification of PLMN Identifier Change. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.

NOTE 2: It should be possible for the P-CSCF to request the subscription to notification of IMS Signalling path status and IP-CAN Type changes also in this step.

3. The PCF performs session binding and identifies corresponding PCC Rules related to IMS Signalling.

4. The PCF confirms the subscription to notification of PLMN Identifier Change and replies with an HTTP "201 Created" message back to the P-CSCF.

4a. The PCF confirms the subscription to notification of PLMN Identifier Change and replies with a Diameter AAA command back to the P-CSCF.

5-7. The SIP Registration procedure is completed successfully (user has been authenticated and registered within the IMS Core NW).

8. If the PCF had not previously subscribed to the required QoS level events from the PDU session for the affected PCC Rules, then the PCF shall do so now. The PCRF initiates procedures according to figure 5.2.2.2.1-1.

NOTE 3: If the PLMN identifier is not available in step 4 (step 4a for Rx case), the P-CSCF will wait to get it in step 8 before progressing the SIP Register, i.e. steps 5, 6 and 7 will occur after step 8.

B.9 P-CSCF Restoration

This clause is applicable if P-CSCF Restoration is to be performed.

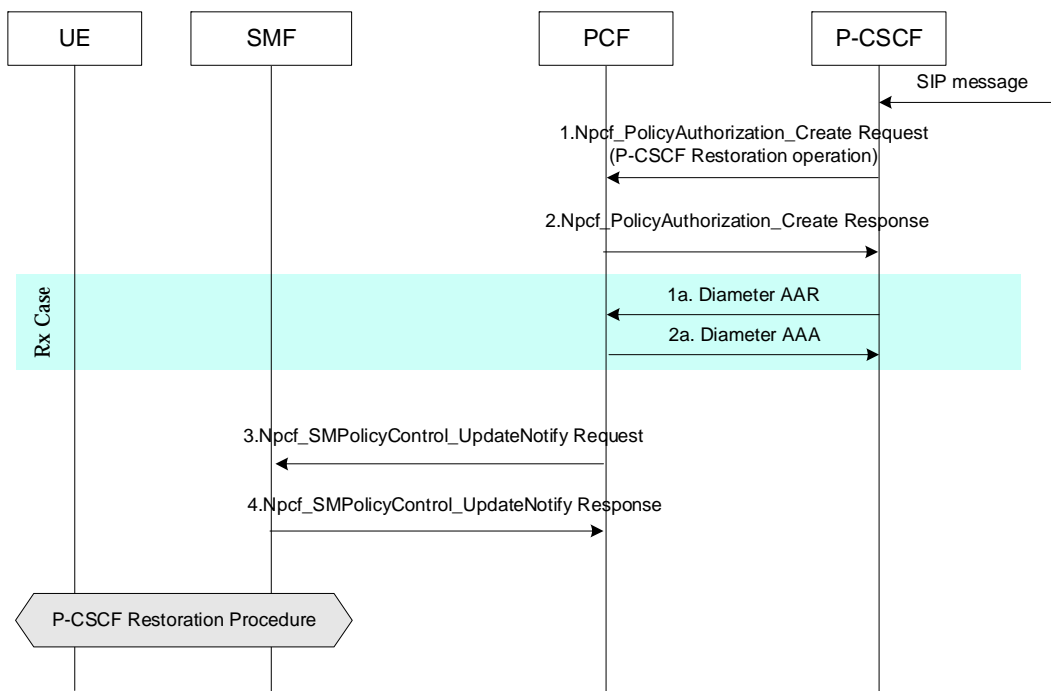


Figure B.9-1: P-CSCF Restoration

1. The P-CSCF invokes the "P-CSCF restoration" custom operation to initiate a P-CSCF Restoration procedure, as defined in 3GPP TS 23.380 [45], by sending an HTTP POST request to the ".../pcscf-restoration" URI, which can contain the IP address of the UE within the "ueIpv4" attribute or "ueIpv6" attribute, and, if required to solve private IPv4 case, the "ipDomain" attribute or the "sliceInfo" attribute if available, The SUPI in the "supi"

attribute and the DNN in the "dnn" attribute are provided if the UE IP address is not available, or if available, IP address is not unique and the ipDomain" attribute and/or the "sliceInfo" attribute are not available.

- 1a. sends an AAR command to PCF to initiate a P-CSCF Restoration procedure, as defined in the 3GPP TS 23.380 [45]. The AAR command contains a Rx-Request-Type AVP with value set to PCSCF_RESTORE and can contain the IP address of the UE within Framed-IP-Address AVP (if available) or the Framed-Ipv6-Prefix AVP (if available), IMSI (if available) within the Subscription-Id AVP, the IMS DNN (if available) within the Called-Station-Id AVP and/or the IP address domain (if available) within the IP-Domain-Id AVP.
2. The PCF acknowledges the received HTTP POST request with a HTTP "204 No content" response.
 - 2a. When receiving the AAR command for P-CSCF Restoration from the P-CSCF, the PCF acknowledges the AAR by sending an AAA command to the P-CSCF.
3. When receiving the request for the "P-CSCF restoration" custom operation via N5 interface, or the AAR command from the Rx interface, the PCF finds the corresponding PDU session according to the received information from the P-CSCF, and invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_UpdateNotify to indicate the SMF the request of P-CSCF restoration for the corresponding PDU session by sending an HTTP POST request to the SMF notification URI and including in body the SmPolicyDecision data type the "pcscfRestIndication" attribute set to true.
4. When receiving the HTTP POST request indicating P-CSCF Restoration, the SMF acknowledges the request by sending an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF and performs the subsequent P-CSCF Restoration procedure as specified in 3GPP TS 23.380 [45].

NOTE: If the PDU session is terminated as result of P-CSCF Restoration, the SMF invokes the Npcf_SMPolicyControl_Delete service operation to terminate the SM Policy Association and delete the corresponding "Individual SM Policy" resource in the PCF.

B.10 IMS Restricted Local Operator Services

RLOS may be supported as described in clause B.1 with the following differences:

- Only RLOS requests over E-UTRAN are supported in this release of the specification
- emergency service is replaced by RLOS;
- emergency indication is replaced by RLOS indication;
- emergency session is replaced by RLOS session;
- emergency DNN is replaced by RLOS DNN; and
- the call back functionality is not applicable to RLOS.

NOTE: Clause B.2.2 is not supported for RLOS, because only UE originated RLOS requests over E-UTRAN are supported and there is no support for mobile terminated services as specified in 3GPP TS 23.221 [46].

B.11 Retrieval of Network Provided Location Information for SMS over IP at Originating side

This clause covers the optional request of access network information for SMS over IP.

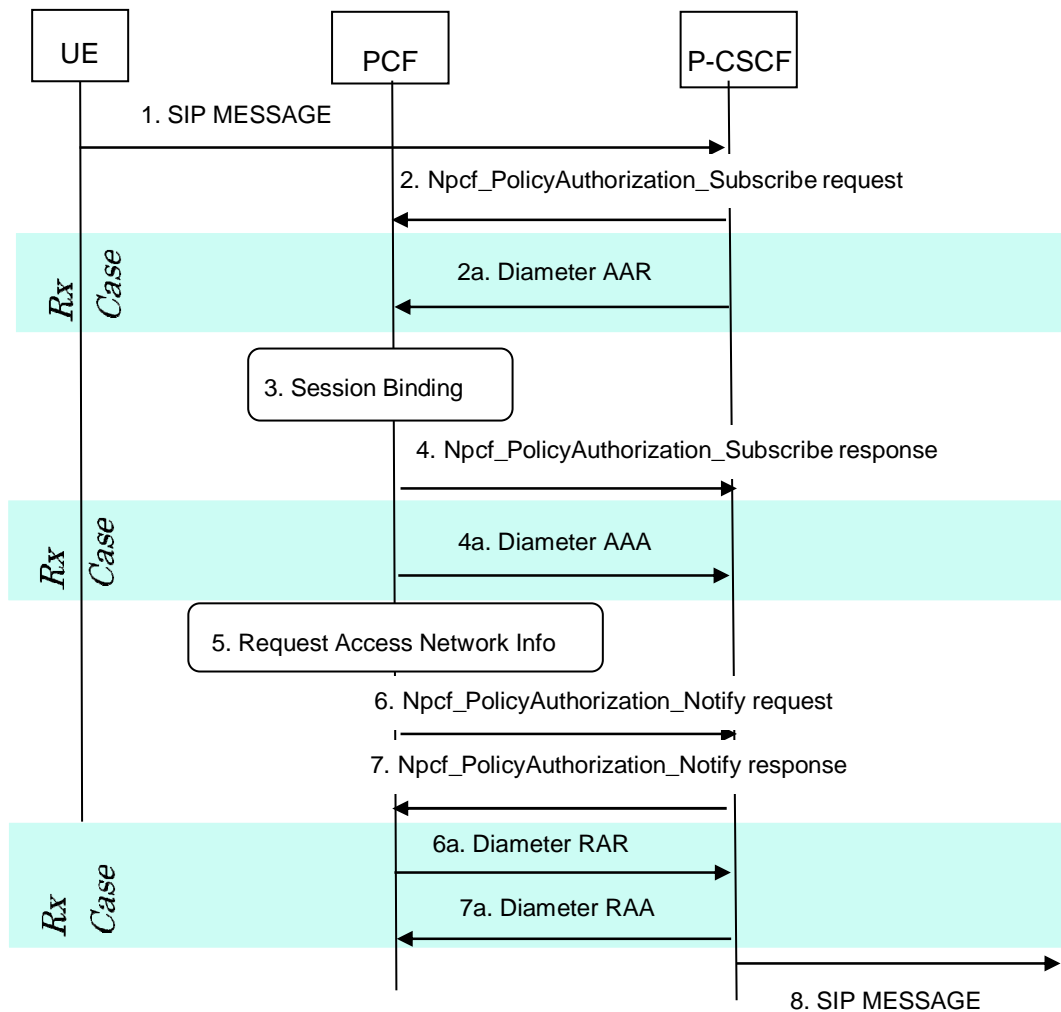


Figure B.11.1: Retrieval of Access Network Information for SMS over IP at originating side

- 1.- The UE sends a SIP MESSAGE request to IMS.
2. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention of retrieval the access network information. The P-CSCF sends an HTTP POST request message to the PCF.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention of retrieval the access network information. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.
3. The PCF performs session binding.
4. The PCF replies with an HTTP "201 Created" message back to the P-CSCF.
 - 4a. The PCF replies with a Diameter AAA command back to the P-CSCF.
5. The PCF requires access network information according to figure 5.2.2.2.1-1.
6. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the access network information received in step 5 in an HTTP POST request sent to the Notification URI received in step 4.
 - 6a. The PCF forwards the access network information received in step 5 in a Diameter RAR.
7. The P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.
 - 7a. The P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.
8. IMS sends a SIP MESSAGE to the terminating side including the network provided location information.

After, the P-CSCF terminates the AF session as described in clause 5.2.2.2.3.

B.12 Retrieval of Network Provided Location Information for SMS over IP at Terminating side

This clause covers the optional request of access network information for SMS over IP.

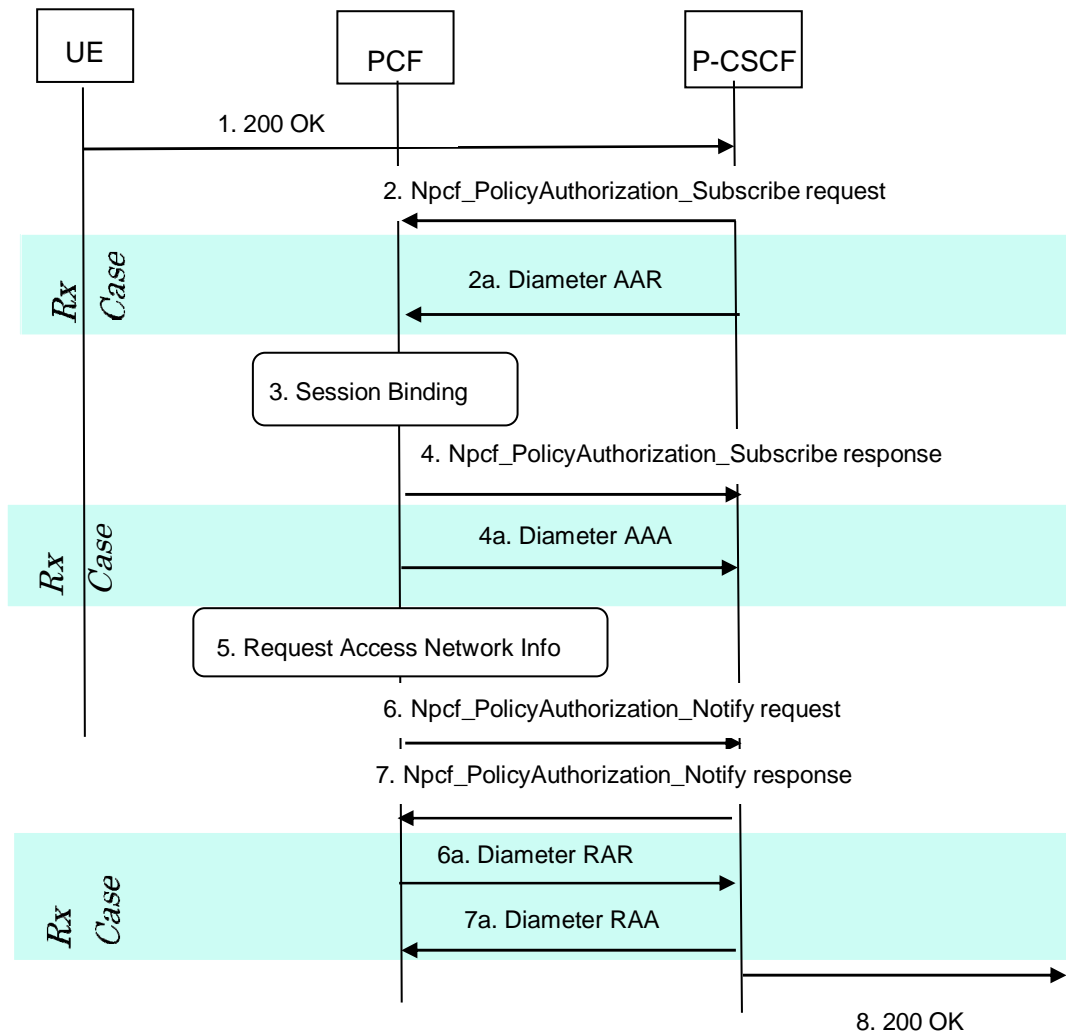


Figure B.12.1: Retrieval of Access Network Information for SMS over IP at terminating side

- 1.- The P-CSCF receives the 200 OK message on SIP MESSAGE request.
2. The P-CSCF requests the creation of a new "Individual Application Session Context" resource with the intention of retrieval the access network information. The P-CSCF sends an HTTP POST request message to the PCF.
 - 2a. The P-CSCF requests the establishment of a new Diameter Rx session with the intention of retrieval the access network information. The P-CSCF sends a Diameter AAR command to the PCF.
3. The PCF performs session binding.
4. The PCF replies with an HTTP "201 Created" message back to the P-CSCF.
 - 4a. The PCF replies with a Diameter AAA command back to the P-CSCF.
5. The PCF requires access network information according to figure 5.2.2.2.1-1.

6. The PCF invokes the Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Notify service operation to forward the access network information received in step 5 in an HTTP POST request sent to the Notification URI received in step 4.

6a. The PCF forwards the access network information received in step 5 in a Diameter RAR.

7. The P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of the notification request with an HTTP "204 No Content" response to the PCF.

7a. The P-CSCF acknowledges the receipt of Diameter RAR.

8. The P-CSCF forwards the 200 OK including the network provided location information.

After, the P-CSCF terminates the AF session as described in clause 5.2.2.2.3

Annex C (informative): Guidance for underlay network to support QoS differentiation for User Plane IPsec Child SA

C.1 Access to PLMN services via SNPN and access to SNPN services via PLMN

To access PLMN services, a UE in SNPN access mode that has successfully registered with a SNPN may perform another registration via the SNPN User Plane with the PLMN, discovering and establishing connectivity to an N3IWF in the PLMN.

In these scenarios, the PLMN is the overlay network and the SNPN is the underlay network.

Equivalently, to access SNPN services, a UE that has successfully registered with a PLMN over 3GPP access may perform another registration via the PLMN User Plane with a SNPN, discovering and establishing connectivity to an N3IWF in the SNPN.

In these scenarios, the SNPN is the overlay network and the PLMN is the underlay network.

C.2 QoS differentiation support in the underlay network for overlay services

When an overlay network service has specific QoS requirements that need to be fulfilled by the underlay network, an SLA needs to be determined between the two networks.

The SLA covers the selective services of the overlay network that require QoS support in the underlay network. The rest of the overlay network traffic could be handled in best effort basis by the underlay network.

The SLA includes a mapping between the DSCP value(s) of the User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) and the QoS requirement of the overlay network service(s). The QoS requirement includes the QoS parameters (defined in 3GPP TS 23.501 [2], clause 5.7.2) that are necessary (e.g. 5QI, ARP, etc.). The SLA also includes the N3IWF IP address of the overlay network.

Based on the SLA, the N3IWF in the overlay network derives DSCP value(s) of the User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) from the QoS requirements of the service(s), and the SMF/PCF in the underlay network derives the QoS requirements for the User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) from the DSCP value(s) of the traffic. The description of the PCC procedures for the underlay network support of QoS differentiation for User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) for network initiated QoS and UE initiated QoS modification are described in clauses C.4 and C.5 respectively.

In order to facilitate the SLA, the clause C.3 below provides a guidance for details of the possible mapping table between DSCP value(s) of the User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) and the QoS parameters of the overlay network service(s). The QoS parameters that the underlay network may need to determine based on the DSCP value (e.g. ARP, 5QI, GBR, MBR, ...) should be described in the SLA, and configured in the underlay network SMF and/or PCF and in the N3IWF in the overlay network.

C.3 Guidelines for QoS requirements to/from DSCP mapping

The mapping guidelines in this clause represent an example of how the DSCP values can be used to reference a combination of QoS parameters.

In these scenarios, where it is pursued to determine the applicable QoS in the underlay network based on the QoS handling of the service in the overlay network, the DSCP values represent a tool for the underlay network to reproduce the combination of QoS parameters determined by the overlay network.

To achieve this goal, it is assumed that the DSCP marking(s) done by the N3IWF remain unaltered in the underlay network. The non-alteration of the DSCP values on NWu interface should be governed and ensured by the SLA and by transport level agreements.

The mapping guidelines in the tables below are only examples and are not expected to fit every possible deployment. E.g., a deployment may use DSCP 44 and DSCP EF for conversational voice, 5QI 1, indicating the different DSCP values different GBR UL/DL values while another one may use only DSCP 44 and estimate the GBR/MBR parameters that would best fit with a set of possible different GBR/MBR requirements. The DSCP to/from QoS parameter mapping is determined by network administrators, as needed.

Table C.3-1: Example of QoS parameters to/from DSCP mapping for conversational voice

DSCP	QoS parameter					
	5QI	ARP PL	ARP PC	ARP PV	GBR UL/DL	MBR UL/DL
46	1	10	NO	YES	31 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 39 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)	31 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 39 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)
44	1	10	NO	YES	25 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 33 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)	31 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 39 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)
45	1	10	NO	YES	32 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 40 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)	32 kbps UL/DL (IPv4 case) 40 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)

Table C.3-2: Example of QoS parameters to/from DSCP mapping for conversational video

DSCP	QoS parameter					
	5QI	ARP PL	ARP PC	ARP PV	GBR UL/DL	MBR UL/DL
34	2	11	NO	YES	64 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)	704 kbps UL/DL (IPv6 case)

C.4 Network initiated QoS modification

The mapping agreed in SLA is configured at N3IWF of the overlay network (QoS parameters to DSCP mapping) and at the SMF/PCF of the underlay network (DSCP to QoS parameters). If a dedicated DNN/S-NSSAI is used in the underlay network for providing access to the N3IWF in the overlay network, the SMF/PCF in the underlay network can be configured to enable packet detection (based on N3IWF IP address and DSCP value) for PDU sessions associated with the dedicated DNN/S-NSSAI.

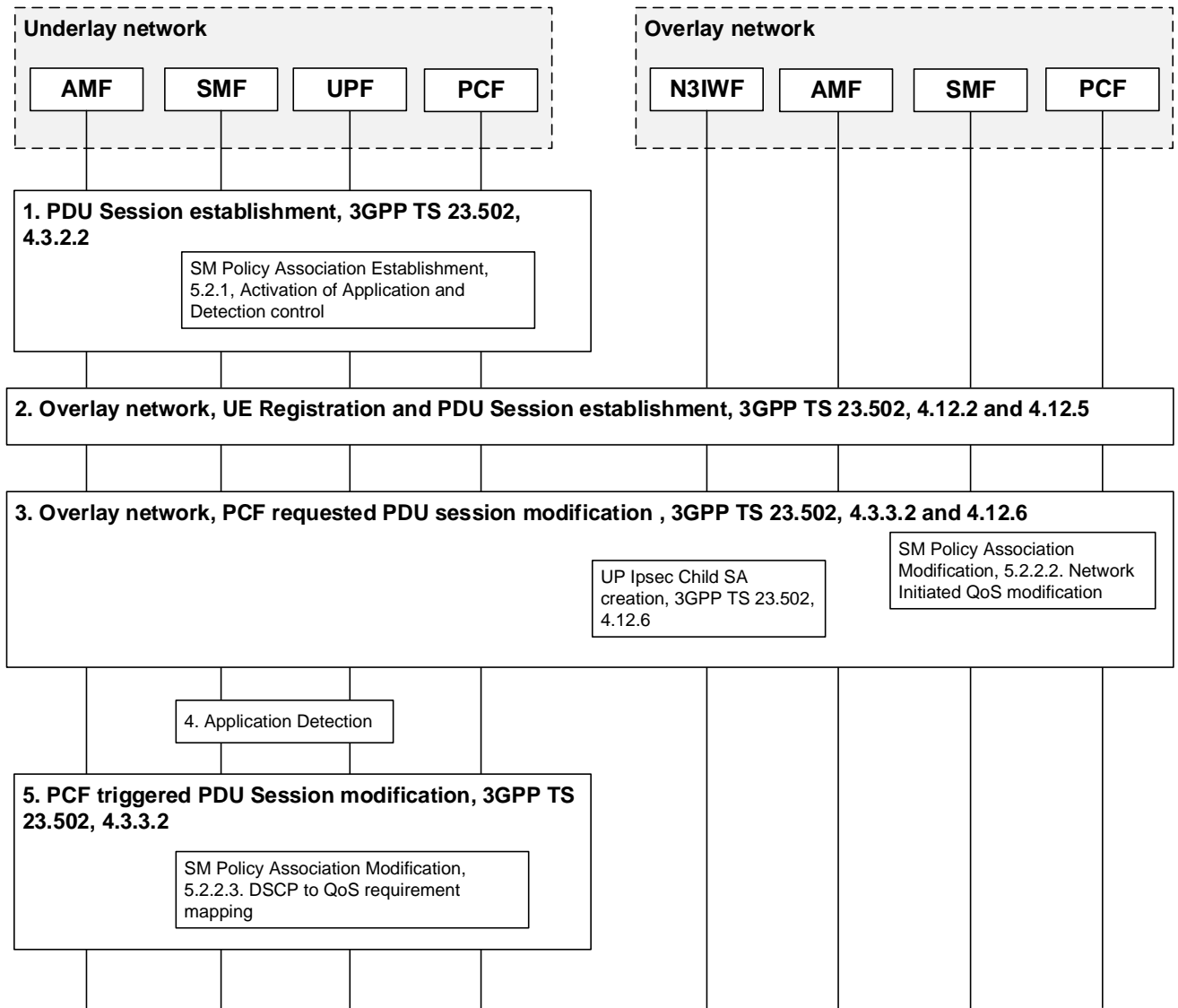


Figure C.4-1: Example of network initiated QoS procedure

1. When the UE establishes a PDU Session in underlay network, the SMF creates a SM Policy Association with the PCF (clause 5.2.1), which determines the PCC rules to install based on UE subscription information and local configuration (which takes into account the SLA). The PCF in the underlay network installs in the SMF PCC rule(s) that contain an application identifier (see 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.2.7) that refer to the N3IWF IP address and the DSCP value(s) of the User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) of the overlay network that require QoS differentiation by the underlay network.
2. The UE registers (see 3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.2) and establishes PDU Session (3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.5) in the overlay network via the User Plane connectivity established in the underlay network.
3. When the UE is accessing a specific service of the overlay network, the service can e.g. request via the PCF a specific QoS treatment to the overlay network. The PCF then invokes the SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.2), which triggers the creation of the corresponding QoS Flow in the overlay network. The N3IWF is configured to allocate different dedicated User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) for each overlay network QoS Flow(s) (3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.6).

The N3IWF uses the QoS Flow level QoS parameters it receives from SMF in overlay network along with the mapping agreed in the SLA to derive a specific DSCP value for the User Plane IPsec Child SA (e.g. QoS parameters to DSCP mapping table described in clause C.3). The N3IWF can provide to the UE the DSCP value

for the User Plane IPsec Child SA (clause 4.12.5, step 4a and 4c of TS 23.502 [3]) mapped to QoS Flow for the specific network service.

The UE receives the QoS Flow level QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, GBR, MFBR, as specified in TS 24.501 [33]) from SMF/PCF in overlay network for the QoS Flow which is created for the specific overlay network service.

The N3IWF (for DL) and the UE (for UL) will set the DSCP marking in the outer IP header of the User Plane IPsec Child SA.

When the service requests the termination of the specific QoS treatment to the overlay network, the PCF invokes the SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.2), which triggers the termination of the corresponding QoS Flow(s) in the overlay network. The N3IWF terminates the dedicated User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) for each terminated overlay network QoS Flow(s).

4. The overlay network traffic between UE and N3IWF using the specific DSCP marking will be detected by the UPF/SMF in the underlay network based on the previously installed PCC rules.

When the N3IWF terminates the dedicated User Plane IPsec Child SA(s), the termination of the traffic with the specific DSCP marking will be detected by the UPF/SMF in the underlay network based on the previously installed PCC rules.

5. The UE and N3IWF detected traffic are reported by the SMF to the PCF as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.6, using the SM Policy Association Modification procedure described in clause 5.2.2.3. The PCF, based on the DSCP value of the detected traffic, derives the QoS requirements for the related service and installs new PCC rules on the SMF including the QoS parameters (5QI, ARP, GBR, etc., as described in the DSCP to QoS parameters mapping of the SLA) for handling the packets corresponding to the specific User Plane IPsec Child SA. The SMF in the underlay network may generate a separate QoS Flow, as described in clause 4.3.3 of TS 23.502 [3], for the traffic of the User Plane IPsec Child SA, which will receive the same QoS treatment as the QoS treatment of the overlay network for the service traffic.

The detection of the termination of the UE and N3IWF traffic is reported by the SMF to the PCF as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.6, using the SM Policy Association Modification procedure described in clause 5.2.2.3. The PCF, based on the identification of the traffic, removes the previously provided PCC rules that handle the packets corresponding to the specific User Plane IPsec Child SA. The SMF in the underlay network may terminate the corresponding QoS Flow.

C.5 UE initiated QoS modification

To support QoS differentiation in the underlay network with UE-requested QoS modification, the UE can request for an IPsec SA the same QoS parameters from the underlay network as the QoS parameters provided by the overlay network for the related service. It is assumed that UE-requested QoS modification is used only when the 5QIs used by the overlay network are from the range of standardized 5QIs. The packet filter in the UE-requested QoS rule can be based on the N3IWF address and the SPI associated with the IPsec SA.

The mapping (DSCP to QoS requirements) agreed in SLA is configured at the SMF/PCF of the underlay network and in the N3IWF of the overlay network.

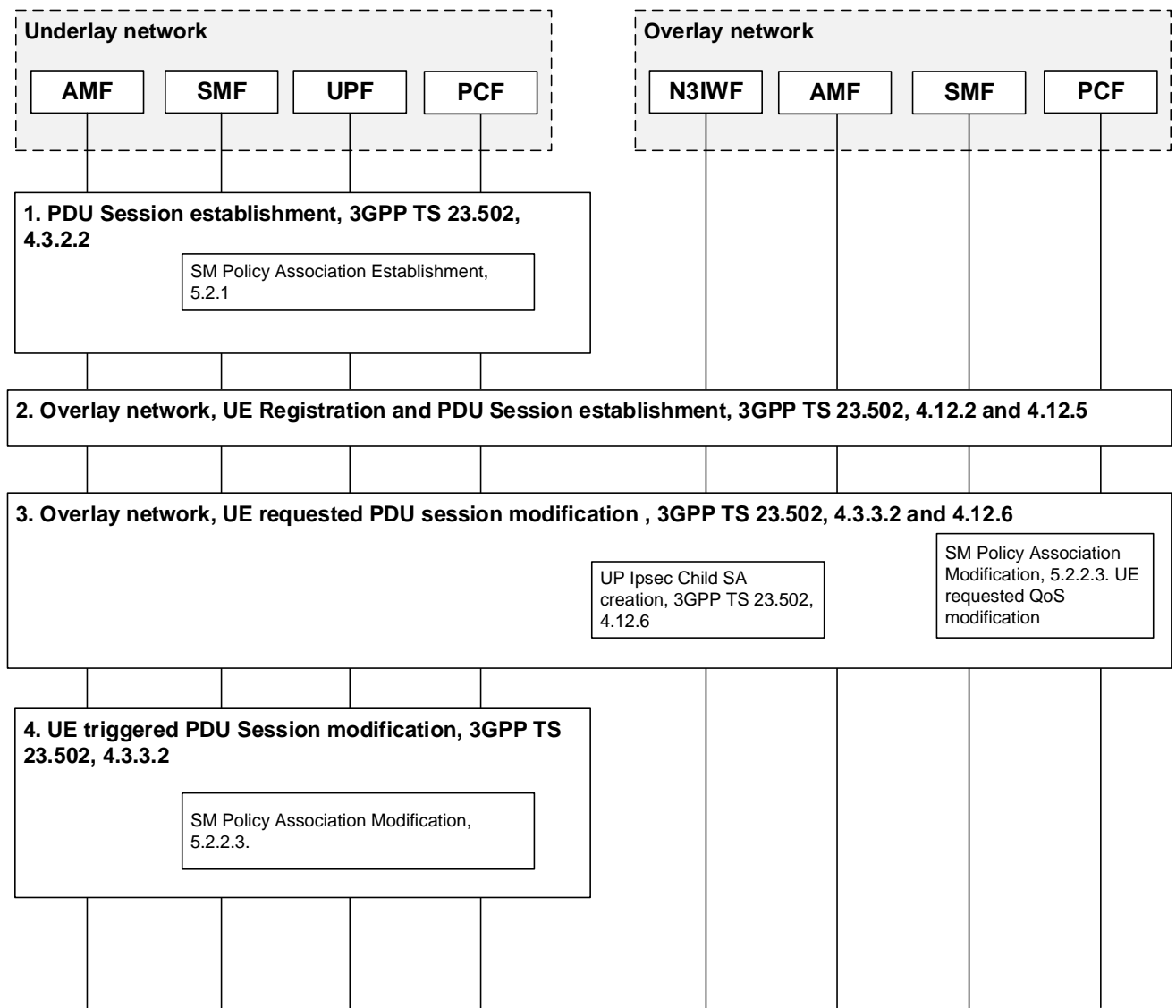


Figure C.5-1: Example of UE initiated QoS procedure

1. When the UE establishes a PDU Session in underlay network, the SMF creates a SM Policy Association with the PCF (clause 5.2.1).
2. UE registers (3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.2) and establishes PDU Session (3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.5) in the overlay network via the User Plane connectivity established in the underlay network.
3. When UE is accessing a specific service of the overlay network, the UE e.g. can request to the overlay network a specific QoS treatment for this service. The SMF in the overlay network invokes the SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.3) and includes the UE-requested QoS as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.17. The PCF in the overlay network responds to the SMF with the PCC rule(s) with the QoS requirements as per the UE-requested QoS. The SMF creates the corresponding QoS Flow in the overlay network (see clause 4.3.3 of TS 23.502 [3]).

The N3IWF is configured to allocate different dedicated User Plane IPsec Child SA(s) for each overlay network QoS Flow(s) (3GPP TS 23.502 [3], clause 4.12.6) that requires underlay network QoS support. The UE receives the QoS Flow level QoS parameters (e.g. 5QI, GFBR, MFBR, as specified in TS 24.501 [33]) from SMF/PCF in overlay network for the QoS Flow which is created for the specific overlay network service.

If an SLA exists, the SLA is configured in the N3IWF in the overlay network, and the N3IWF can provide to the UE the DSCP value for the User Plane IPsec Child SA (clause 4.12.5, step 4a and 4c of TS 23.502 [3]).

When the UE requests the termination of the UE-requested QoS in the overlay network as described in 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.17, the PCF in the overlay network responds to the SMF with the removal of the corresponding PCC rule(s). The SMF terminates the corresponding QoS Flow in the overlay network

- 4 In order to ensure the underlay network handles the traffic of the overlay network service with the desired QoS, the UE can request a new QoS Flow for the PDU session in the underlay network for the concerned User Plane IPsec Child SA(s). The UE triggers a PDU session modification procedure and derives the UE-requested QoS for the underlay network from the QoS Flow level QoS parameters the UE received from the overlay network. The Packet Filter in the QoS rule of the request includes the overlay network N3IWF IP address and SPI associated with the User Plane IPsec Child SA.

The SMF in the underlay network, after receiving the PDU Session Modification Request, invokes the SM Policy Association Modification procedure (see clause 5.2.2.3) to notify to the PCF that the UE has initiated a resource modification (see 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.17). The PCF in the underlay network determines if the request can be authorized based on UE subscription and local policy which can take into account the SLA between overlay network and underlay network. If the request is authorized, the PCF generates a new PCC rule with the UE-requested QoS, and includes it in the response to the SMF in order to create new QoS Flow in underlay network using the QoS Flow level QoS parameters from the overlay network. The generated SDF refers to the N3IWF IP address and the SPI (provided by the UE in Traffic filter in PDU Session Modification request) to enable filtering and mapping of DL traffic towards the right PDU Session/QoS Flow within the underlay network.

- If the SLA exists, and the N3IWF in overlay network provides to the UE the DSCP value for the User Plane IPsec Child SA as described in step 3, the UE can include the DSCP value in the Packet Filter of the PDU Session Modification procedure including the UE requested QoS in the underlay network. The PCF in the underlay network performs QoS authorization of the UE QoS request considering the UE subscription and local configuration which takes into account the mapping of DSCP to QoS requirements in the SLA.

In order to ensure the underlay network terminates the QoS handling of the traffic of the overlay network when the UE requested the termination of the UE-requested QoS in the overlay network, the UE triggers the termination of the UE requested QoS in the underlay network. The SMF in the underlay network, notifies to the PCF that the UE has initiated a resource modification to terminate the requested QoS (see 3GPP TS 29.512 [9], clause 4.2.4.17), and the PCF removes the concerned PCC rule(s). The SMF terminates the corresponding QoS Flow in the underlay network.

Annex D (informative): Change history

Change history							
Date	Meeting	TDoc	CR	Rev	Cat	Subject/Comment	New version
2017-10						TS skeleton of policy and charging signalling and QoS parameters mapping	0.0.0
2017-10	CT3#92	C3-175378				Inclusion of C3-175332, C3-175355.	0.1.0
2017-12	CT3#93	C3-176398				Inclusion of C3-176258, C3-176372	0.2.0
2018-01	CT3#94	C3-180363				Inclusion of C3-180069, C3-180246, C3-180277, C3-180317	0.3.0
2018-03	CT3#95	C3-181369				Inclusion of C3-181250, C3-181251, C3-181252	0.4.0
2018-04	CT3#96	C3-182517				Inclusion of C3-182222, C3-182340, C3-182341, C3-182342, C3-182343, C3-182374, C3-182375, C3-182376, C3-182377, C3-182378.	0.5.0
2018-05	CT3#97	C3-183901				Inclusion of C3-183385, C3-183387, C3-183388, C3-183495, C3-183496, C3-183497, C3-183503, C3-183527, C3-183528, C3-183529, C3-183530, C3-183823, C3-183828	0.6.0
2018-06	CT#80	CP-181035				TS sent to plenary for approval	1.0.0
2018-06	CT#80	CP-181035				TS approved by plenary	15.0.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0001	2	F	AF traffic routing procedure	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0002	3	F	BSF procedures over Rx	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0003	2	F	Clarification on PCF discovery and selection	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0004	4	F	QoS mapping at AF and PCF	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0005	2	F	remove EN of PCC rule authorization for non-IP cases	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0006	2	F	slice info considered in session binding and PCF selection	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0007	1	B	Solution to IPv4 overlapping	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0008		F	Remove the editor's note for Ethernet	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0009		F	5QI derivation in PCF QoS mapping	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182015	0010		B	SMF QoS mapping	15.1.0
2018-09	CT#81	CP-182035	0011	2	F	Resolving EN for PFD Management	15.1.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0012	1	F	Architecture of interworking with AFs supporting Rx interface	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0014	5	F	Correction to AM Policy association procedure	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0015		F	Correction to the PFD retrieval	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0016	1	F	Correction to the PCF discovery and selection	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0017	2	F	Correction to the QoS flow binding	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0018	1	F	PCF Derivation of QoS Parameters	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0019	1	F	Consolidation of Initial Spending Limit Report request	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0020	1	F	Consolidation of Intermediate Spending Limit Report request	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0021	1	F	Consolidation of Spending Limit Report notification	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0022	1	F	Introduction of the subclause "subscription termination request"	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0025	4	F	UE Policy Association procedures	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0026	1	F	updates in clause 5.2 to detail UDR interaction	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0027	3	F	corrections to AF traffic routing procedures	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0028	1	F	BSF only stores binding info locally	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0029	3	F	Correction on BSF and DRA coexistence scenario	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183108	0031	2	F	Correction of SM Policy Establishment and Termination Flows to Include Calls to the BSF	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0032	1	F	Correction of SM Policy Modification Flows to Include Calls to the BSF	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0033		F	Using resource name instead of resoure URI in BSF procedure	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0034	1	F	corrections on PFD management procedure	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0035		F	corrections on NWDA procedure	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0036		F	http details in BDT procedure	15.2.0
2018-12	CT#82	CP-183205	0037		F	Correction to architecture figures	15.2.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0039		F	GPSI in AF session establishment	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190134	0040	1	F	SEPPs in roaming architecture	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0041	3	F	Correct PCF-initiated AM policy association termination	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0044		F	Invocation of Nudr_DataRepository_Update service operation for BDT	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0045	1	F	PFD management in the SMF	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0046		F	Invocations of the Nbsf_Management service operations	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0047		F	Corrections on UE policy association procedure	15.3.0
2019-03	CT#83	CP-190115	0051		F	Corrections on AF TrafficRouting procedure	15.3.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0052	1	F	Correction on PCF discovery	15.4.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0053	1	F	Correction to the QoS flow binding	15.4.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0056	2	F	Corrections to AM policy control procedure and UE policy control procedure	15.4.0

2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0057	1	F	multiple MANAGE UE POLICY COMMAND messages sent by H-PCF	15.4.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0059		F	Remove NSI ID	15.4.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191075	0064	1	F	Correction to AM Policy Association Establishment Flow	15.4.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191089	0060	1	F	DN Authorization data for Policy Control	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191089	0061	1	B	Npcf_AMPolicyControl support of Allowed NSSAI	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191089	0062	2	B	Race condition handling	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191089	0065	2	B	BSF binding update	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191109	0066	1	B	PCF selection for ATSSS	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191085	0068	1	B	Session binding of 5WWC	16.0.0
2019-06	CT#84	CP-191089	0069	2	F	Clarifications to UE Policy Delivery, Roaming	16.0.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192143	0072	1	A	Session binding for IPv6 addresses	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192143	0076	1	A	Alignment of notification URI name and HTTP reponse code	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192143	0078	1	A	Corrections on NWDA procedures	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192143	0080		A	Corrections on PFD procedure and SM policy procedure	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192157	0081	1	B	BDT notification procedure	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192157	0082	2	B	Update NWDA procedures for more Analytics	16.1.0
2019-09	CT#85	CP-192171	0083	2	B	xBDT procedure	16.1.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193185	0085	1	A	Correct AMF behaviour during PCF-initiated AM Policy Association Termination procedure	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193223	0086	1	B	Retrieval of BDT policy data for a set of BDT reference identifiers	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193185	0088	1	A	Correction to PCF selection	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193185	0090	1	A	Correction to QoS Mapping	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193202	0091	2	B	QoS Handling for V2X Communication	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193202	0092	2	B	QoS mapping for QoS Handling for V2X Communication	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193180	0093	1	B	Architecture clarification for eSBA	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193180	0094	2	B	PCF selection for eSBA	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193181	0097	1	B	Include AF relocation acknowledgement into Traffic influence procedures	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193215	0098	2	B	Coverage and Handover Enhancements for Media (CHEM)	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193197	0099	1	B	MCS Priority Level	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193223	0101		F	Remove EN related to BDT reference ID storage in SMPolicyData	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193217	0102	2	B	QoS Parameter mapping at AF, N5 interface	16.2.0
2019-12	CT#86	CP-193196	0103	4	B	Skeleton for Annex B, Signalling Flows for IMS	16.2.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200208	0100	2	B	BDT renegotiation upon the network conditions change	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200215	0105	1	F	Incorrect figure 5.2.3.1-1: SMF-initiated SM Policy Association Termination procedure	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200215	0106		B	Impacts on QoS mapping to support FLUS functionality	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200200	0108	1	B	PCF selection performed by the SMF	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200225	0109	1	B	Binding mechanism update for V2X	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200212	0110	1	B	QoS parameter mapping at PCF update for V2X	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200225	0111	1	B	QoS parameter mapping at SMF update for V2X	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200222	0112	1	B	Annex B, IMS Session Establishment	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200222	0113	1	B	Annex B, IMS Session Modification, provisioning of service information	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0114	1	B	Annex B, IMS Session Modification, gate control	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0115	1	B	Annex B, IMS Session Modification, media component removal	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0116	1	B	Annex B, IMS Session Termination	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0117	1	B	Annex B, Provisioning of SIP signalling flow information at IMS Registration	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0118	1	B	Annex B, Subscription to Notification of Change of Access Type	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0121		B	Annex B, P-CSCF Restoration	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200207	0122	1	B	DNN Replacement as PCF discovery factor for the AMF	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200218	0123		B	AF session binding to PDU session for TSN networks	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200201	0124		B	SRVCC impacts on QoS mapping	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200219	0125		F	Applying UE Policy Association Modification to all affected UEs	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0130	1	B	Subscription to Notification of Signalling Path Status at IMS Registration	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0133	1	B	Subscription to Notification of change of PLMN Identifier at initial IMS Registration	16.3.0
2020-03	CT#87e	CP-200206	0136		B	Annex B, IMS Restricted Local Operator Services	16.3.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201233	0137		B	Clarification of PCF selection by the AMF and SMF	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201268	0138	2	B	Correction on QoS Flow Binding for QoS Flow Behaviour	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201233	0139		B	Correction to PCC rule Authorization	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201233	0140	1	B	Correction to binding information procedures	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201233	0141	3	B	Same PCF selection support	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201259	0142	3	B	Update of PCF discovery by the AF for eSBA	16.4.0

2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201229	0143	3	B	QoS Flow Binding about ATSSS	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201252	0144	1	B	Correction to session binding for TSN	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201232	0146		B	Update for eIMS5G_SBA	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201234	0147		F	Corrections on Network data analytics subscribe procedure	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201212	0148	3	B	Binding information: PCF set ID and PCF instance ID	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201234	0149	1	F	Removal of not valid BDT policy from UDR	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201252	0150	1	B	Binding of PCC rules to a QoS flow considering TSCAI information	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201246	0151		B	Support of applications with specific QoS hints	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201260	0154	1	F	Correction on QoS Flow Binding for CN PDB	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201256	0155	1	F	URI correction on Npcf_SMPolicyControl	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201228	0157	1	B	Framed Routing Support	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201266	0158	1	B	Support of ATSSS	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201218	0176	1	A	Correction to PCC call flows	16.4.0
2020-06	CT#88e	CP-201238	0179	1	B	Procedure of N2 PC5 Policy	16.4.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202053	0181		A	Application data change triggers PCF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202059	0182	1	F	Procedure for IPTV configuration	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202069	0183	1	F	Procedure of AF-based service parameter provisioning for V2X	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202209	0184	1	F	GPSI used for PCF selection	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202081	0185		F	Correction to QoS flow binding	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202053	0189	1	A	Corrections on AF-initiated PFD management procedure	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202049	0190	1	F	Correction to PCF discovery and selection	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202049	0191	1	F	Correction to selection of the same PCF	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202081	0192		F	Update the call flows to support TSN	16.5.0
2020-09	CT#89e	CP-202079	0186	1	F	Correction to the SM policy association procedure	17.0.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203157	0194	1	A	Usage of PCF Group ID for PCF selection when delegated discovery is used	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203146	0199		F	Correction to Notification response receiver	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203148	0200		F	Correction to pending transactions	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203147	0201	1	F	Correction to SM policy association modification procedure	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203115	0204		A	Correction to PFD retrieval in PULL mode	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203135	0205	1	B	Procedure of PUSH notification	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203115	0208		A	Correction to traffic influence procedures	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203156	0212	1	A	Correction to Alternative QoS as binding parameter	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203132	0210		A	Correction to Alternative QoS parameter mapping	17.1.0
2020-12	CT#90e	CP-203150	0214	1	A	Modification of UE Policy related clauses to support URSP rules for 5G VN Group	17.1.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210215	0219	4	B	Procedure of notification push update	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210215	0220	3	B	Procedure of partial pull	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210202	0222	1	A	Correction to AM Policy Control for Wireline and Wireless Convergence feature	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210210	0226	1	A	Correction to N2 PC5 policy provision procedure	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210193	0228	3	A	QoS monitoring procedure	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210226	0229	1	F	Clean up TS references	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210206	0231		A	Alignment of BDT policy re-negotiation	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210237	0233	1	A	Correction to TSN scenarios.	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210219	0234	1	F	Removal of resource URI from Notify service operations	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210196	0239	1	A	Determination of the default QoS flow	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210229	0242	1	F	Correction to table 7.4.1	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210196	0245		A	Correction to Notification URI	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210227	0250	1	F	Correction to Network data analytics Unsubscribe procedure	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210222	0252		A	PFD change subscription modification procedure	17.2.0
2021-03	CT#91e	CP-210205	0254	1	A	Correction to SamePcf Feature	17.2.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211226	0257	1	B	PCF control of MPS for DTS	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211201	0258	3	B	5G ProSe related updates to PCC procedures	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211268	0262	1	A	QoS flow binding for QoS monitoring	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211259	0263	1	B	Selecting the same PCF for AMF and SMF	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211221	0264	1	F	Clean up of Network Data Analytics procedures	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211273	0265	1	B	Support Time Sensitive Communication other than TSN	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211276	0266	1	B	Support of Network Exposure to EAS via Local NEF	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211211	0269	1	F	Correction of missing interaction for updating UDR data based on usage report	17.3.0
2021-06	CT#92e	CP-211218	0270	1	B	Updates of PCC procedures related to AF influence on URSP	17.3.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212212	0272	1	B	29.513 MPS for DTS note fix	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212225	0273	1	B	AM Influence procedure for DCAMP	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212225	0274	1	B	AM Policy Authorization procedure for DCAMP	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212225	0275	1	B	AM Policy association procedure updates to support DCAMP	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212225	0276	1	B	DCAMP impact on PCC architecture	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212205	0277	-	B	DCAMP impact on PCC architecture	17.4.0

2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212225	0278	1	F	BSF enhancement on PCF Discovery and Selection for DCAMP	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212206	0279	1	B	Npcf_AMPolicyControl support of UE-Slice-MBR	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212211	0280	1	F	Correction to abbreviations for TSC	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212224	0281	-	F	Correction of resource name used in xBDT	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212193	0284	1	B	5QI value for services carried over satellite access/backhaul	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212208	0286	1	A	Correction to V2X Policy Provisioning Request	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212188	0287	1	F	Correction to ProSe Policy Provisioning Request	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212188	0288	-	B	Architecture updates to support ProSe	17.4.0
2021-09	CT#93e	CP-212188	0289	-	B	BSF support for the PCF notification of PDUID changes	17.4.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213234	0291	1	B	Updates for TSC networks other than TSN	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213229	0292		B	PCC Support of restricted PDU Session for remote provisioning of UE using User Plane	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213225	0294	1	B	Handling of Session Management Policy Data per PLMN	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213222	0295	1	B	Notification on the outcome of UE Policies delivery due to service specific parameter provisioning	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213194	0296	1	F	Updates on DCAMP related BSF services	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213227	0297	1	B	NWDAF discovery by the PCF	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213237	0298		F	Correction to PFD procedures	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213243	0299	1	F	Correction to SM Policy Association Establishment procedure	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213194	0300	1	B	Completion of PCF discovery mechanisms	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213194	0301	1	B	Alternative mechanism for PCF for a UE discovery	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213213	0302		B	Completion of the PCF for a UE registration in the BSF	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213230	0293	2	B	Support of monitoring the data rate per Network Slice	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213223	0303	1	B	Update the procedure to support AF preference for the user plane latency	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213225	0304	1	B	Architectures for interworking with EPS	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213200	0305	1	F	Updates on DCAMP related BSF procedures	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213200	0306		F	Corrections to DCAMP	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213213	0307	1	F	Correction of PCF registration in the BSF at UE policy association creation	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213225	0308	1	F	cancel subscription to UDR at SM policy association termination	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213244	0309		F	cancel subscription to UDR at UE policy association termination	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213244	0312	1	F	Correction to PFD retrieval procedure	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213228	0313	2	B	Policy decisions based on Network Analytics	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213230	0314	1	B	Same PCF discovery for the control of data rate per network slice	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213200	0315	1	B	Management of AM Policies depending on the application in use	17.5.0
2021-12	CT#94-e	CP-213223	0316	1	B	AF Request for Simultaneous Connectivity over Source and Target PSA at Edge Relocation	17.5.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220198	0317	2	B	Resolution of DCAMP open issues such as applicable filters and immediate reporting	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220197	0318	2	F	Correction to the BSF procedure	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220197	0319	1	F	PCF for a PDU session discovery by PCF a UE	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220183	0320	1	B	TSCTSF discovery	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220196	0322	1	F	Handling of VN Group data during UE Policy Association Termination procedure	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220187	0323	2	F	Correction on the UE-Slice-MBR sent to PCF	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220197	0324	2	B	Reporting requested service area coverage change, clarification	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220182	0325	1	B	Informative guideline for mapping between QoS parameters and DSCP marking	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220182	0326	1	B	Clarification to PCC Support of restricted PDU Session for remote provisioning of UE using User Plane	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220186	0327	1	B	Adding service specific authorization in the service parameter provisioning procedure	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220195	0328	1	F	Collision in SMF during UpdateNotify procedure	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220186	0329	1	B	Support of AF triggered EAS rediscovery	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220186	0330	1	B	Support of EAS IP replacement	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220186	0331	1	B	Support of uplink buffering indication for Application Relocation	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220202	0332	1	B	QoS Mapping at SMF+PGW-C for interworking scenario	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220202	0333	1	B	Signalling flows for interworking scenario	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220195	0335	1	F	Correction to enable retrieval of Network Provided Location information in a MESSAGE request	17.6.0
2022-03	CT#95e	CP-220183	0336	1	B	Deferred invocation of Npcf_PolicyAuthorization_Create service operation	17.6.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221116	0337		F	Incorrect step number referenced in UE Policy Association Modification procedures	17.7.0

2022-06	CT#96	CP-221129	0338		F	Correction to PCF subscription on USER_DATA_CONGESTION	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221126	0339		F	Correction of wrong features in the flow procedures for Edge Computing	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221129	0340		F	PCF behaviour for Data Dispersion and WLAN performance	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221129	0341		B	PCF behaviour for Service Experience analytics	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221138	0342	1	F	Completion of User Plane Remote Provisioning	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0343	1	F	Correction to AM Policy Association Modification procedure	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0344	1	F	Correction to AM Policy Association Termination procedure	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0345	1	B	Notification of PDU session establishment or PDU session termination	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0346	1	B	Update of AF requests to influence AM policies procedure	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0347	1	B	Update of binding information subscription procedure	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0348	1	B	Update of PCF for a PDU session discovery and selection by the PCF for a UE	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0350	1	F	Session binding for TSC	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221144	0351		F	Correction to SM policy association establishment	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0352	1	F	Correction to SM policy association modification by the PCF	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0353	1	F	Correction to SM policy association modification initiated by the SMF	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0354	1	F	BSF storage information for TSC	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221126	0355	1	F	Correction to the procedure of maximum allowed user plane latency	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221126	0356	1	F	Correction to the SMF behaviour of IP replacement	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0359	1	B	Introduction of 5MBS in PCC architecture	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0360	1	B	Structure to introduce MBS flows	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0361	1	B	PCF Discovery in MBS PCC deployments	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0362	1	B	QoS mapping in MBS PCC deployments	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0363	2	B	Redefining the scope of TS 29.513	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0364	1	B	Specification of PCC MBS Session Creation	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0365	1	B	Specification of PCC MBS Session Modification	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221120	0366	1	B	Specification of PCC MBS Session Termination	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221126	0367		F	Handling of UE Policy delivery notifications	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221157	0368		F	Corrections in AF session procedures	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221157	0369	1	F	VPLMN QoS constraints in QoS mapping procedures	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221126	0370	1	F	Correction to QoS monitoring report	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221141	0371	1	A	Request of V2XP/ProSeP during NAS Transport procedure	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221157	0374		F	PCF selection for V2XP and ProSe	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0375	1	F	Handling of individual alternative QoS	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221145	0376	1	F	Discovery of TSCTS notification URI	17.7.0
2022-06	CT#96	CP-221159	0377	1	F	Wrong reference allocation	17.7.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222091	0382	1	A	Attribute name correction for QoS monitoring	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222127	0383	1	F	Correction to SMF-initiated SM Policy Association Modification procedure	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222099	0384	1	F	User plane latency requirement support	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222099	0385	1	F	Incorrect attribute names used in QoS monitoring procedure	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222125	0386	1	F	Correction to ANDSP/URSP rules Determination	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222123	0388	1	F	PCF selection based on Same PCF indication	17.8.0
2022-09	CT#97e	CP-222099	0390		F	Service parameter data retrieval	17.8.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0396		F	Handling of QoS mapping procedures in PCF and MB-SMF.	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0397		F	Removal of EN related to the impacts in 5MBS PCC architecture.	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0398		F	Introduction of MBS Discovery procedures	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223167	0399	1	F	Completion of MBS Policy Session Modification procedure	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0403		F	Binding mechanism for MBS	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0404		F	Resolves the editor's note in the create service operation	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223166	0405		F	Resolves the editor's note in the delete service operation	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223162	0409		F	Session binding to support 5G ProSe Layer-3 UE-to-Network Relay without N3IWF	17.9.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223201	0391	1	B	Feature awareness during UE mobility with AMF change	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223198	0392		F	Clarification on usage of N30 and N5 reference points	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223199	0393	1	F	Support of UE Policy delivery in AMF-initiated UE Policy Association modification	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223198	0394		F	Corrections on QoS mapping tables	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223199	0395	1	F	Corrections on the RFSP Index handling	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223200	0402	2	F	Correction to the attribute name for QoS parameters calculation	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223199	0406	1	F	Correction to provisioning of service information	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223198	0407		B	PLMN to PLMN inter-AMF mobility	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223198	0408		F	Correction to PCC rule authorization for AF requests with Alternative Service Requirements	18.0.0
2022-12	CT#98e	CP-223178	0410		B	SNPN to SNPN inter-AMF mobility	18.0.0

2023-03	CT#99	CP-230133	0412	1	B	Considering UE Policy Control inputs for ANDSP determination	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230176	0413	1	F	Clarification about the parameter matching in session binding	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230174	0414		F	Clarification about the order of steps in UE Policy Association procedures	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230137	0418	1	B	Update Traffic Influence procedures.	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230137	0423	1	B	Support for AF traffic influence for common EAS, DNAI selection	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230127	0425	1	A	Removal of V2XP/ProSeP during registration	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230174	0426		F	Correct API name for Nbsf_Management_Discovery API	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230140	0429		A	Correction on the feature support for implicit subscriptions	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230140	0430	1	A	Correction in the handling of QoS monitoring report	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230147	0431	1	B	NWDAF-assisted for URSP rules determination	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230170	0432	1	B	Service Function Chaining support in the Traffic Influence procedures	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230174	0433		F	Missing edge computing functionality for AF request to influence traffic routing procedures	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230179	0435	1	B	Procedures for Time Synchronization Exposure	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230136	0436	1	B	Support of integration with IETF Deterministic Networking	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230176	0437	1	F	ANDSP and/or OSId support indication to V-PCF	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230175	0438	1	F	Complete description for Onboarding Indication	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230177	0439		B	Support of IPv6 prefix delegation	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230179	0440	1	B	Enhancement of Time Sensitive Communication	18.1.0
2023-03	CT#99	CP-230181	0441	1	B	Feature negotiation in roaming scenarios	18.1.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231165	0443		B	UE Policy Association procedure updates for ANDSP determination and delivery	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231145	0444	3	B	URSP provisioning in EPS	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231177	0445		B	PCF triggered UE mobility from 5GS to EPS	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231151	0446	1	B	Clarification to subscription to UMIC and PMIC changes	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231151	0447		B	Clarification and correction to the report of extra UE addresses	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231133	0448	1	F	Update the description with references.	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231156	0450	1	B	Support for A2X service parameters and policy provisioning during UE Policy association establishment.	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231133	0451		F	Correction to BSF procedures	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231143	0452	1	F	Update of 5.5.1	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231158	0453	1	D	Correction to AF influence on Service Function Chaining	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231124	0454	1	D	Corrections for the reference number	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231124	0455		B	NWDAF assisted decision on E2E redundant transmission	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231136	0456	4	B	Support of VPLMN Specific Offloading Policy for HR-SBO	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231151	0457	1	F	Corrections on DetNet node information reporting	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231127	0458	1	B	Support of PDTQ Policy Negotiation procedure	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231127	0459	1	B	Support of PDTQ warning notification procedure	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231156	0461	1	B	Enhancements to AF-based service parameter provisioning for A2X communication	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231147	0464		A	Removal of QoS monitoring control at PDU session release	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231162	0465	1	B	Support of application detection event exposure	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231135	0466	1	B	Complete description for the AF request on PDU session supporting HR-SBO	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231171	0467		B	Support of dynamically changing AM policies for inbound roamers using LBO	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231145	0468	1	B	URSP Enforcement analytics ID for policy decision	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231133	0470		F	misplaced 5G DDNMF in 8.4.1	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231151	0471	1	B	Update of TSCTSF mapping of DetNet configuration	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231151	0472	1	B	Support of 3GPP extensions for DetNet	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231145	0473		B	Completion of URSP provisioning in EPS	18.2.0
2023-06	CT#100	CP-231130	0474	1	B	Policy Control for L4S	18.2.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232101	0475	1	B	Retrieving home TNAPs for policy decisions	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232158	0476	1	B	Packet delay variation monitoring enhancement	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232127	0477	1	B	Data channel update for N5 interface	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232086	0480	1	F	Corrections to 5MBS signalling procedures	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232094	0482	1	A	Essential corrections to 5MBS signalling procedures	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232104	0483	1	F	EN resolution for A2X subscription	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232102	0486	1	D	Correction on SFC abbreviation	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232087	0487	1	B	Update the procedures for PDTQ policy negotiation and warning notification	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232257	0488	1	B	Update the processing of AF requests on PDU Sessions supporting HR-SBO	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232257	0489	1	B	Impacts in AF influence on traffic procedures due to HR-SBO scenarios	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232108	0490		B	Handling of Packet Delay Budget for PIN scenarios	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232086	0491	2	F	Clarification on BDT negotiation data modification	18.3.0

2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232099	0492	1	B	Spending Limits for AM Policy and UE Policy	18.3.0
2023-09	CT3#101	CP-232103	0494	3	B	Add RSLPP in call flows of Policy Control	18.3.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233279	0495		B	Removal of EN on A2X and V2X parameter provisioning	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233274	0496	1	F	Correction on description of rfspValTime	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233244	0497	2	B	Procedure of Awareness of URSP Rule Enforcement	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233247	0498	2	F	Correction in warning notification procedures.	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233235	0499	4	F	Correction in warning notification procedures and related data types.	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233275	0500	1	B	IMS Data channel QoS update	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233235	0501	1	B	AF QoS Timing info addition	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233245	0502	1	B	Policy Authorization for AF requested QoS for a UE or group of UEs not identified by a UE address	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233244	0503	1	B	Support of VPLMN specific URSP rules	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233248	0504		B	Update to the report of time synchronization status changes	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233248	0505		B	Subscription checks during Time Synchronization Exposure	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233256	0506		B	UE Policy Association for 3GPP and non-3GPP accesses	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233250	0507	1	F	Include Partially Allowed NSSAI in the AM Policy association procedure	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233257	0508		D	resource name correction	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233268	0509	1	F	Removal of Editor's Note related to the Npcf_UEPolicyControl support	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233255	0511	1	A	Correction to PCC procedures for location dependent MBS service	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233249	0512	1	B	Support of QoS monitoring subscription from the NWDAF	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233234	0513	1	B	Update the QoS flow binding procedure	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233266	0514	1	B	Solving Editor's Note about QoS mapping	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233244	0515	1	B	Completion of LBO roaming information	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233245	0516	1	B	Skipping the checking of policy subscription data	18.4.0
2023-12	CT#102	CP-233256	0517		B	Solving Editor's Note about Feature re-negotiation	18.4.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240158	0518		B	Completion of PDU Set handling functionality	18.5.0

2024-03	CT#103	CP-240208	0519	1	F	Alignment of the term of RFSP Index in Use Validity Time	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240191	0523	3	A	Updated Clause 7.3.3 for missing PCF N5 Algorithm	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240174	0524	1	B	Resolve the Editor's Note for PDTQ warning notification procedure	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240188	0525	1	F	Correction related to FeatureRenegotiation	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240173	0526	1	D	Correction to MBS Policy Association Establishment procedure	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240176	0528	1	B	Various GMEC related updates	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240179	0529	1	F	Various corrections and alignments	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240178	0530	1	B	Completion of Network Slice Replacement procedures	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240173	0531		F	Correction on the support of emergency services for SNPN	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240181	0533	1	B	AF-based service parameter provisioning for TNAP ID	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240204	0534	1	B	PCF mapping of PER received in altSerReqsData	18.5.0
2024-03	CT#103	CP-240160	0535		B	Update the QoS monitoring procedure	18.5.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241122	0520	2	F	Policy decisions based on spending limits	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241102	0536	1	B	Procedures update for checking mechanism of clock quality information received from UDM and AF	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241087	0537	1	B	UP path change notification for HR-SBO	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241095	0538	1	F	Correction of the procedure for AF requests to influence AM policies	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241087	0539	1	F	Corrections for AF requesting to influence traffic routing for HR-SBO session	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241097	0541	1	F	URSP rule enforcement reports in roaming	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241097	0542		F	Network analytics for URSP rule enforcement corrections	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241077	0543	1	F	Support of updating restricted status in UDR	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241095	0544	1	F	Clarifications on BDT service	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241102	0545	1	F	Clean up of subscription control and time synchronization services status monitoring	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241097	0546	1	B	URSP provisioning over EPS support	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241087	0547	1	B	Completion of HR-SBO functionality in the flows	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241113	0548		F	Correct a reference.	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241078	0549	1	F	Procedure for PFD management based on NWDAF analytics	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241113	0550	1	F	Provisioning of UE policy information	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241098	0551	1	F	PCF for a UE discovery and selection by the PCF for the PDU session	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241095	0552	1	F	Correction to PCF discovery and selection procedure	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241128	0553	1	F	Corrections to the conditions for reporting of the MTU size	18.6.0
2024-06	CT#104	CP-241107	0554		F	Ranging policy clarification	18.6.0
2024-09	CT#105	CP-242145	0557	1	F	Spending limit report retrieval before policy decision	18.7.0
2024-09	CT#105	CP-242139	0560		F	Framed Routing and Prefix Delegation in DetNet	18.7.0
2024-12	CT#106	CP-243103	0567	1	F	Providing H-PCF URI and H-PCF set identifier for H-PCF reselection.	18.8.0
2024-12	CT#106	CP-243120	0577		F	Updating the IETF HTTP RFC for DetNet	18.8.0

History

Document history		
V18.5.0	May 2024	Publication
V18.6.0	July 2024	Publication
V18.7.0	September 2024	Publication
V18.8.0	January 2025	Publication